DOE/BC/14447-8
Distribution Category UC-122

FLUID DIVERSION AND SWEEP IMPROVEMENT WITH CHEMICAL GELS IN OIL RECOVERY PROCESSES

Annual Report for the Period
May 1, 1989 -- April 30, 1990

DOE/BC/14447--8

DE91 002233

By
Frank S. Seright
F. David Martin

April 1991

Work Performed Under Contract No. DE-FG22-89BC14447

Prepared for
U.S. Department of Energy
Assistant Secretary for Fossil Energy

Jerry Casteel, Project Manager
Bartlesville Project Manager
P. O. Box 1398
Bartlesville, OK 74005

Prepared by
New Mexico Institute of Mining and Technology
New Mexico Petroleum Recovery Research Center
Socorro, New Mexico

MASTER

DISTRIBUTION OF THIS DOCUMENT IS UNLIMITED

ABSTRACT

This report describes progress made during the first year of the three-year project, "Fluid Diversion and Sweep Improvement with Chemical Gels in Oil Recovery Processes." The objectives of this project are to identify the mechanisms by which gel treatments divert fluids in reservoirs and to establish where and how gel treatments are best applied. Several different types of gelants are being examined, including a monomer-based gelant, several polymer-based gelants, and a colloidal silica gelant.

A resorcinol-formaldehyde gel was studied extensively. Insights obtained by studying this relatively simple gel system may be valuable when assessing the performance of more complicated gels in fluid diversion. During core experiments, residual resistance factors (F_{rr}) were very high (10^3-10^4) for gelants buffered and formed at pH=9. As pH was decreased during core experiments, the gelation reaction was inhibited. In particular, as gelation pH decreased from 7 to 6, F_{rr} values decreased sharply from high to low values (e.g., from ≈1000 to 1). Tracer studies show that the fraction of the pore volume occupied by the gel generally decreases over this pH range. In general, F_{rr} values increased with decreased permeability. However, F_{rr} values can be significantly higher in sandstones than in less-permeable carbonate cores. A simple mathematical model was used to assess whether pH effects can be exploited to optimize gel placement in injection wells. Some preliminary studies were also performed to examine the effects of a resorcinol-formaldehyde gel on the flow of oil and CO_2 in Berea sandstone.

Experiments were performed to probe the rheology of chromium(III)-xanthan gels and gelants in porous media. For a large fraction of the time prior to gelation, the presence of 90-ppm Cr^{3+} was found not to significantly affect the rheology in porous media of a 3000-ppm xanthan solution. Residual resistance factors provided by these gels were quite low. Much larger F_{rr} values were obtained using gels with 4000-ppm xanthan and 154-ppm Cr^{3+}. For these gels, F_{rr} values decreased significantly with increased fluid flux and could be described by a power-law relation over the flux range from 0.025 to 16 ft/d. The importance of this apparent "shear-thinning" nature of residual resistance factors is discussed.

Existing theories were applied to explore the influence of diffusion, dispersion, and viscous fingering during placement of gels to modify injection profiles. This work reveals that diffusion and dispersion usually will not eliminate the need for zone isolation during gel placement in unfractured injection wells. During gel placement in parallel laboratory corefloods, diffusion and dispersion can mislead one to conclude that zone isolation is not needed in field applications. The role of a water postflush during gel placement was also investigated.

A mathematical study was performed to characterize gel placement in production wells. This work demonstrates that gelling agents can penetrate to a significant degree into <u>all</u> open zones--not just those with high water saturations. The damage caused by gel in oil-productive zones will depend greatly on (1) the flow geometry (linear or radial), (2) hysteresis of water-oil relative permeability curves, (3) the extent to which gels disproportionately reduce relative permeability to water more than that to oil, and (4) fluid saturations. The impact of each of these factors is discussed.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABSTRACT iii

LIST OF FIGURES viii

LIST OF TABLES xi

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS xiii

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY xiv

1. INTRODUCTION 1
   - Project Objectives and Scope 1
   - Project Task Areas 2

2. GEL SCREENING STUDIES 4
   - Gels Studied 4
   - Experimental Procedures 5
   - Gelation at Neutral pH 7
   - pH of Brine in Contact With Compressed CO_2 8
   - Summary 9

3. IMPACT OF GELATION pH, ROCK PERMEABILITY, AND LITHOLOGY ON THE PERFORMANCE OF A MONOMER-BASED GEL 10
   - pH Dependence of Gelation 10
   - Chemical Transport in Porous Media Prior to Gelation 12
   - Coreflood Procedures 14
   - Permeability Reduction After Gelation 14
   - Exploiting pH to Optimize Gel Placement 19
   - Conclusions 25

4. A PRELIMINARY STUDY OF PERMEABILITY REDUCTION FOR CO_2 AND WATER USING A RESORCINOL-FORMALDEHYDE GEL 26
   - Flow of Brine and CO_2 Through Berea Prior to Gel Placement 26
   - Flow of Brine and CO_2 Through Berea After Gel Placement 27
   - Summary 29

5. A PRELIMINARY STUDY OF PERMEABILITY REDUCTION FOR OIL AND WATER USING A RESORCINOL-FORMALDEHYDE GEL 30
   - Effect of Flow-Direction Reversal on End-Point Permeabilities Prior to Gel Placement 30
   - Permeability Reduction After Gel Treatment 33
   - Summary 33

6. RHEOLOGY OF CHROMIUM(III)-XANTHAN GELS AND GELANTS IN POROUS MEDIA 34
   - Gelant Rheology in Porous Media Prior to Gelation 34
   - Rheology During Gelation 44
   - Effect of Flow Through Porous Media on Gelation Time 44

Rheology During Brine Injection After Gelation 45
Example Calculations for an Unfractured Injection Well 51
Conclusions 54

7. IMPACT OF DIFFUSION, DISPERSION, AND VISCOUS FINGERING ON GEL PLACEMENT IN INJECTION WELLS 56
Gelant Penetration in Oil-Productive Strata 56
Dilution by Diffusion 59
Dilution by Dispersion 60
Effect of a Water Postflush on Water-Like Gelant Banks 65
Viscous Fingering: Theoretical 69
Viscous Fingering: Experimental Verification 76
Conclusions 79

8. AN EXAMINATION OF FLOW-PROFILE CHANGES FOR FIELD APPLICATIONS OF GEL TREATMENTS IN INJECTION WELLS 80
Analysis Example 81
Analysis Summary for 43 Pairs of Injection Profiles 83
Field Work Needed to Resolve the Issue 85
Summary 86

9. PLACEMENT OF GELS IN PRODUCTION WELLS 87
Theoretical Model 87
Basic Assumptions 87
Linear Flow 88
Radial Flow 90
Linear vs. Radial Corefloods 91
Flow in Reservoirs 95
Numerical Model 95
Relative Permeability Changes After Treatment 97
Productivity Loss After Treatment 101
Hysteresis of Oil and Water Relative Permeability Curves 101
Productivity Loss After Gelation 103
Fractured Systems 103
Effects of Crossflow 106
Control of Water Coning 106
Conclusions 109

NOMENCLATURE 110

REFERENCES 113

APPENDICES
A - PROCEDURE FOR FABRICATION OF TWO-DIMENSIONAL GLASS MICROMODELS 121

B - GELATION STUDIES AT THE OPTIMUM REACTION pH 131

C - GELATION STUDIES AT pH=7 141

D - RESULTS FROM CORE EXPERIMENTS WITH RESORCINOL-FORMALDEHYDE GELANTS 151

E - DATA FROM VISCOUS FINGERING EXPERIMENTS 159

F -FORTRAN CODING FOR THEORETICAL MODEL: RADIAL FLOW 163

G -FORTRAN CODING FOR THEORETICAL MODEL: LINEAR FLOW 185

H - FORMULATIONS FOR NUMERICAL MODEL 207

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1 Compositions of Resorcinol and Formaldehyde 11

Figure 2 Reaction of Resorcinol with Formaldehyde 11

Figure 3 Buffer Capacities of Resorcinol and Formaldehyde 13

Figure 4 F_{rr} Value at 0.025 ft/d After Injecting Brine at the Maximum Flux Specified on the Abscissa 17

Figure 5 Tracer Results during Brine Injection Before vs. After Gel Placement in 57-md Berea. No buffer. Initial Gelant pH=7 20

Figure 6 Tracer Results during Brine Injection Before vs. After Gel Placement in 63-md Berea. Phosphate buffer. Gelant pH=7 20

Figure 7 Tracer Results during Brine Injection Before vs. After Gel Placement in 7-md Limestone. Phosphate buffer. Gelant pH=7 20

Figure 8 Best-Case Profile Improvement in Radial Flow with a Weak Gel (F_{rr}=10) 24

Figure 9 Best-Case Profile Improvement in Radial Flow with a Strong Gel (F_{rr}=1000) . . . 24

Figure 10 Results from Tracer Studies during CO_2 Experiments 28

Figure 11 Tracer Breakthrough Curves from Tracer Studies during Oil/Water Experiments 32

Figure 12 Tracer Breakthrough Curves with/without Residual Oil Present 32

Figure 13 Effect of Cr^{3+} and Flow through 293-md Berea on the Viscosity of 3000-ppm Xanthan 35

Figure 14 Effect of Cr^{3+} on Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan in 293-md Berea 35

Figure 15 Effect of Cr^{3+} and Flow through 164-md Berea on the Viscosity of 3000-ppm Xanthan 38

Figure 16 Effect of Cr^{3+} on Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan in 164-md Berea 39

Figure 17 Effect of Cr^{3+} on Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan in 531-md Berea with S_{or}=0.31 39

Figure 18 Residual Resistance Factor vs. Flux in 77-md Berea. Initial Gelant pH=4 47

Figure 19 Residual Resistance Factor vs. Flux in 66-md Berea. Initial Gelant pH=7 47

Figure 20 Residual Resistance Factor vs. Flux in 483-md Berea. Initial Gelant pH=7 47

Figure 21 Tracer Effluent Curves During Brine Injection Before vs. After Gel Placement in 77-md Berea. Initial Gelant pH=4 50

Figure 22 Tracer Effluent Curves During Brine Injection Before vs. After Gel Placement in 66-md Berea. Initial Gelant pH=7 50

Figure 23 Tracer Effluent Curves During Brine Injection Before vs. After Gel Placement in 483-md Berea. Initial Gelant pH=7 50

Figure 24 Relative Penetration of Fluids in an Unfractured Injection Well with Multiple, Noncommunicating Layers 57

Figure 25a Illustration of Mixing Zones 61

Figure 25b Concentration Profile at the Interface Between the Water Bank and the Gelling-Agent Bank 61

Figure 26 Length of Mixing Zone Due to Diffusion 62

Figure 27 Effect of Dispersion on Bank Size 62

Figure 28 Impact of Diffusion and Dispersion on Gel in Unfractured Injection Wells 66

Figure 29 Exploiting Diffusion and Dispersion to Prevent Gelation in Layer 2 67

Figure 30 Impact of Diffusion and Dispersion during Parallel Linear Corefloods 67

Figure 31 Illustration of a Water Postflush 68

Figure 32 Thinning of the Gelant Bank during a Water Postflush in Radial Flow 68

Figure 33 Effect of a Water Postflush on Injectivity 70

Figure 34 Illustration of Viscous Fingering 72

Figure 35 Quantifying Distances During Viscous Fingering 72

Figure 36 Sensitivity of Finger Breakthrough to Assumed Resistance Factor in the Fingered Zone: Radial Flow 74

Figure 37 Sensitivity of Finger Breakthrough to Resistance Factor of the Viscous Fluid: Radial Flow 74

Figure 38 Sensitivity of Finger Breakthrough to Assumed Resistance Factor in the Fingered Zone: Linear Flow 75

Figure 39 Sensitivity of Finger Breakthrough to Resistance Factor of the Viscous Fluid: Linear Flow 75

Figure 40 Important Measurements during Viscous Fingering Experiments 77

Figure 41 Injection Profiles from Chang *et al* 82

Figure 42 Injection Profiles with Flow Percentages 82

Figure 43 Saturation Profile in Layer i during the Placement Process 89

Figure 44 Radial vs. Linear Parallel Corefloods; Degree of Penetration into Core i 93

Figure 45 Effect of Oil/Water Viscosity Ratio on Degree of Penetration into Core i 94

Figure 46 Degree of Penetration into Core i; Effects of End-Point Permeability to Water and S_{w1} 94

Figure 47 Effect of Ψ_i Variations on Degree of Penetration into Layer i 96

Figure 48 Theoretical Model vs. Numerical Model; Degree of Penetration into Core i: Radial Flow 98

Figure 49 Oil and Water Relative Permeability Curves Before and After Gel Treatment . . 99

Figure 50 Water Fractional Flow Curves Before and After Gel Treatment 99

Figure 51 Oil and Water Relative Permeability Curves with/without Hysteresis 102

Figure 52 Effect of Hysteresis of Relative Permeability Curves on Productivity Loss . . . 102

Figure 53a Effects of Depth of Penetration and S_{wi} on Productivity Retained after Gel Treatment 104

Figure 53b Productivity Retained after Gel Treatment with Hysteresis of Relative Permeability Curves 104

Figure 54 Effect of Ψ_i Variations on Degree of Penetration in Vertically Fractured Zones 105

Figure 55a Effects of Degree of Penetration and S_{wi} on Productivity Loss after Gel Treatment in Vertically Fractured Zones 107

Figure 55b Productivity Retained after Gel Treatment with Hysteresis of Relative Permeability Curves in Vertically Fractured Zones 107

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1 Summary of Gelation Results at Optimum pH 6

Table 2 Gel Strength Codes 6

Table 3 Summary of Gelation Results at pH=7 8

Table 4 pH Values of 0.5% KCl Brine in Contact with Rock and Compressed CO_2 9

Table 5 Results from Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 63-md Berea Sandstone . . 15

Table 6 Results from Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 49-md Berea Sandstone . . 16

Table 7 Summary of Results from Brine Injection After Gelation 18

Table 8 Summary of CO_2 Coreflood, 105°F 27

Table 9 Rock and Fluid Properties for Oil/Water Experiments 30

Table 10 Effect of Flow-Direction Reversal on End-Point Permeabilities Prior to Gel Treatment 31

Table 11 Summary of the Results of Tracer Studies During Oil/Water Experiments 31

Table 12 Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan (without Cr^{3+}) in 293-md Berea Sandstone . . . 36

Table 13 Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan with 90-ppm Cr^{3+} in 293-md Berea Sandstone 37

Table 14 Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan (without Cr^{3+}) in 164-md Berea Sandstone . . . 40

Table 15 Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan with 90-ppm Cr^{3+} in 164-md Berea Sandstone 41

Table 16 Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan (without Cr^{3+}) in Berea Sandstone with a Residual Oil (n-dodecane) Saturation 42

Table 17 Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan with 90-ppm Cr^{3+} in Berea Sandstone with a Residual Oil (n-dodecane) Saturation 43

Table 18 Gelation Onset for Cr^{3+}-Xanthan Gelants 45

Table 19 Residual Resistance Factors After Placement and Gelation in 77-md Berea Sandstone. Initial gelant pH=4. 46

Table 20 Residual Resistance Factors After Placement and Gelation in 66-md Berea Sandstone. Initial gelant pH=7. 49

Table 21 Residual Resistance Factors After Placement and Gelation in 483-md Berea Sandstone. Initial gelant pH=7. 49

Table 22 Results from Parallel Linear Floods 58

Table 23 Comparison of Dispersion Predictions for Linear and Radial Flow 64

Table 24 Mixing-Zone Limits 64

Table 25 Summary of Viscous-Fingering Results 78

Table 26 Published Injection Profiles: Before versus After Gel Treatments 84

Table 27 Parameters for Coreflood Cases 92

Table 28 Parameters for Unfractured 5-Spot Cases 92

Table 29 Parameters Used When Comparing the Theoretical and Numerical Models 92

Table 30 Parameters After Gelation 100

Table 31 Parameters for Hysteresis Cases 100

Table 32 Parameters for Productivity Loss Calculations 100

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This work was financially supported by the U.S. Department of Energy, the New Mexico Research and Development Institute, Amoco, Conoco, Elf Aquitaine, Marathon, Oryx Energy Co., OXY USA, Phillips Petroleum, Shell Development Co., and Texaco. This support is gratefully acknowledged. The mathematical modeling portions of this work were partially supported by NCSA-TRA890079N and utilized the CRAY X-MP/48 system at the National Center for Supercomputing Applications at the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign. Richard Schrader performed most of the corefloods, was instrumental in the design and construction portions of the project, and also participated in much of the other experimental work. His contributions are greatly appreciated. We also appreciate the efforts of Michael Carr, who performed the parallel beadpack floods and who developed the improved procedures for fabricating micromodels. We acknowledge helpful discussions with Dr. Norman Morrow, Jill Buckley, Mary Graham, John Oelfke, and Sean French when developing the micromodel techniques. Dr. Jenn-Tai Liang was principally responsible for performing and reporting the experimental and theoretical work with gel treatments in production wells (Sections 5 and 9). Professor Robert L. Lee performed the simulation of gel treatments in production wells and also participated in many helpful discussions. We also thank Jeff Albers, John Hagstrom, Peter Lewis, Tommy Morris and Dennis Newell for their help during some of the experiments. The authors thank the staff of the New Mexico Petroleum Recovery Research Center (notably, Karen Bohlender, Toni Johnson, and Dawn Anderson) for their help in preparing and reviewing this report. We especially appreciate the thorough review of the manuscript that was provided by Julie Ruff.

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The objectives of this project are to identify the mechanisms by which gel treatments divert fluids in reservoirs and to establish where and how gel treatments are best applied. Several different types of gelants are being examined. This research is directed at gel applications in water injection wells, in production wells, and in high-pressure gas floods. The work will establish how the flow properties of gels and gelling agents are influenced by permeability, lithology, and wettability. Other goals include determining the proper placement of gelants, the stability of in-place gels, and the types of gels required for the various oil recovery processes and for different scales of reservoir heterogeneity.

This report describes progress made during the first year of this three-year study.

Screening Studies

Screening tests were performed to establish gelation times, gel strengths, and gel stabilities for the gel systems that are being studied in the project. Several different types of gelants were examined, including a monomer-based gelant, several polymer-based gelants, and two colloidal silica gelants. Gel stabilities were determined over a 30-day period as a function of temperature (room temperature to 200°F) and pH of water in contact with the gel (water pH values of 3, 7, and 12.5). For each gelant, one set of studies was performed on gels that were allowed to form at the optimum pH for the gelation reaction (i.e., the pH specified by the gelant supplier). A second set of studies was performed on gels that were formed at pH=7. These latter studies were initiated because reservoir rocks may force in-situ gelation reactions to occur at neutral pH, even though the gelant was injected at some other pH.

Some cursory experiments were performed to determine the pH of brine in contact with rock and compressed CO_2. The results indicate that the pH of a 0.5% KCl brine in contact with CO_2 at 1500 psi and 105°F will be in the range from 4.4 to 5.1. This pH is fairly insensitive to the presence or absence of rock (Berea sandstone, Indiana limestone, or San Andres dolomite).

Studies Using a Resorcinol-Formaldehyde Gel

For many of the gels that are currently used in enhanced oil recovery, the gelation reaction is very sensitive to pH. Often, an optimum pH exists at which the strongest gels form. At other pH values, weak gels may form, or gelation may not occur at all. Commonly, the optimum pH for gelation is not near neutral pH. Also, most gel formulations have very little buffering capacity (i.e., their pH may be changed very easily). On the other hand, clays and other minerals in reservoir rocks usually have a tremendous capacity to buffer aqueous solutions near neutral pH. Thus, even though a gelant is injected at the optimum pH for gelation, the rock may quickly change the pH to a less optimum value.

We performed an experimental investigation of the effects of gelation pH on the performance of a resorcinol-formaldehyde gel. This gel has been used in field applications and was chosen for study because its placement in porous media is not complicated by some of the factors that influence placement of polymeric gelling agents (i.e., permeability- and lithology-dependent retention of polymers and metallic crosslinkers).

Beaker studies and core experiments were performed using both unbuffered gelants and gelants that were buffered at a variety of pH values. The product formed by the reaction of resorcinol with formaldehyde depends on pH. During studies of gelation in beakers, the strongest resorcinol-formaldehyde gels are formed at pH=9. At pH=9, a strong gel is formed that is clear and red. The inherent permeability to water for this gel (no rock) was found to be 6 μD. As the initial pH is decreased, gel formation becomes less perfect. With an initial pH of 7, an opaque orange-white gel is formed during beaker tests, and some free water remains after the reaction. As initial pH value is decreased below 7, the final ratio of free water to gel increases.

During core experiments, residual resistance factors are very high (10^3-10^4) for gelants buffered and formed at pH=9. Tracer studies reveal that these gels occupy 87% to 99% of the available pore volume. As pH is decreased during core experiments, the gelation reaction is inhibited. In particular, as gelation pH decreases from 7 to 6, residual resistance factors decrease sharply from high to low values (e.g., from $\approx$1000 to 1). Tracer studies show that the fraction of the pore volume occupied by the gel generally decreases over this pH range. In many core experiments, the results suggest that upon first exposure to a given fluid velocity, a certain amount of gel breaks down to allow a flow path through the porous medium. Flow of brine through this porous medium then appears more or less Newtonian until the previous maximum in fluid velocity is exceeded.

In general, residual resistance factors (F_{rr}) increased with decreased permeability. However, F_{rr} values can be significantly higher in sandstones than in less-permeable carbonate cores. A simple mathematical model was used to assess whether pH effects can be exploited to optimize gel placement in injection wells. Our results suggest that pH effects usually will not help much in eliminating the need for zone isolation during gel placement in radial flow (unfractured injection wells). Insights obtained by studying this relatively simple gel system may be valuable when assessing the performance of more complicated gels in fluid diversion.

Some preliminary studies have also been performed to examine the effects of a resorcinol-formaldehyde gel on the flow of oil and CO_2 in Berea sandstone. The main value of these studies is in establishing procedures that will be used in future experiments.

Rheology of Chromium(III)-Xanthan Gels and Gelants in Porous Media

Experiments were performed to probe the rheology of chromium(III)-xanthan gels and gelants in porous media. For a large fraction of the time prior to gelation, the presence of 90-ppm Cr^{3+} was found not to significantly affect the rheology in porous media of a 3000-ppm xanthan solution.

For gel formulations containing 3000-ppm xanthan and 90-ppm Cr^{3+}, residual resistance factors in Berea sandstone were not much greater than those for xanthan solutions without Cr^{3+}. We suspect that clay and carbonate minerals in Berea forced the gelation reaction to occur near neutral pH rather than at the injection pH (3.8). In beaker tests, rigid gels are formed from Cr^{3+}-xanthan gelants at pH$\approx$4, but gelation is not apparent for the same formulation at pH=7. Previous researchers reported large residual resistance factors for more dilute Cr^{3+}-xanthan gels in clean sandpacks. The discrepancy between our results and those of previous researchers may be explained in that the lack of clay and carbonate minerals in sandpacks may have allowed gelation to occur at low pH values rather than at neutral pH. Thus, the buffering action of reservoir rocks should be considered when evaluating gel performance in the laboratory.

Additional studies were performed with a gelant that contained 4000-ppm xanthan and 154-ppm Cr^{3+}. With this composition, a rigid gel was formed in a beaker at pH=4, but gelation was not evident at pH=7. Even so, the composition injected at pH=7 provided substantial residual resistance

factors (30-714) in Berea sandstone. Tracer studies indicated that the gel occupied between 0% and 45% of the original pore volume, depending on the initial pH of the gelant and the core permeability. Tracer studies also revealed that the gel increased dispersivity values in Berea by factors ranging from 5.5 to 17.8. For this gel in 483-md Berea, residual resistance factors were quite high (50-714) even though tracer studies indicated that the pore volume occupied by the gel was near zero. Perhaps small gel particles lodge in pore throats—thereby dramatically reducing brine permeability without occupying much volume. Residual resistance factors provided by these gels decreased significantly with increased fluid flux and could be described by a power-law relation over the flux range from 0.025 to 16 ft/d.

Laboratory measurements of gel properties in 66-md Berea and in 483-md Berea were used during example calculations to show that the apparent "shear-thinning" nature of residual resistance factors will not eliminate the need for zone isolation during gel placement in unfractured injection wells.

Impact of Diffusion, Dispersion, and Viscous Fingering on Gel Placement in Injection Wells

A key issue in gel technology is how to place gels in "thief" zones without damaging oil-productive zones. Simple calculations using the Darcy equation indicate that gel treatments in unfractured injection wells are not likely to improve injection profiles unless zones are isolated during gel placement. We explored the influence of diffusion, dispersion, and viscous fingering during placement of gels to modify injection profiles. In particular, these phenomena are examined to determine whether they can be exploited to optimize gel placement. In concept, diffusion and dispersion could dilute gelling agents enough to prevent gelation in less-permeable, oil-productive zones while still allowing a gel plug to form in watered-out, high-permeability streaks. However, this study reveals that diffusion and dispersion usually will not eliminate the need for zone isolation during gel placement in unfractured injection wells. During gel placement in parallel laboratory corefloods, diffusion and dispersion can mislead one to conclude that zone isolation is not needed in field applications.

During this study, we also investigated the role of a water postflush during gel placement. A postflush can provide additional mixing and thinning of the gelant banks by displacing gelling agents away from the wellbore prior to gelation. One goal of this work was to determine whether viscous fingering from a water postflush could be exploited during placement of a viscous gelant. Both theory and experiments indicate that viscous fingers usually will break through the viscous bank in the most-permeable layer first. However, at the time of this breakthrough, the fingers will have traversed most of the viscous bank in a less-permeable layer. This finding is discussed with respect to its relevance to field applications of gel treatments and traditional polymer floods.

The analyses provided here and elsewhere suggest that zone isolation can significantly improve the performance of gel treatments in some applications. (These include unfractured injection wells with noncommunicating layers. Of course, cement squeezes can be equally effective in these applications.) If zone isolation is not feasible, then our analyses raise doubts that gel treatments can be effective in unfractured injection wells. Literature reports of field applications to date do not provide enough information to confirm or contradict these analyses. If gel treatments can be effective in unfractured wells without using zone isolation, then this success is due to some phenomenon that has yet to be identified.

Placement of Gels in Production Wells

Applications of near-wellbore gel treatments in production wells are intended to reduce water production without sacrificing oil production. During gel placement, much of the gel formulation will enter zones that are responsible for the excess water production. However, some of this fluid may penetrate into and damage oil-productive zones.

We performed a critical examination of gel placement in production wells. An analysis was developed using fractional flow concepts to determine the degree of penetration of gelling agents into oil-productive strata as well as into water-source zones. Variables examined include permeability contrast, oil/water viscosity ratio, initial oil saturations, relative permeability characteristics, and gelling-agent properties. A near-wellbore simulator was developed to confirm predictions that were made using the analytical model.

This work demonstrates that gelling agents can penetrate to a significant degree into all open zones--not just those with high water saturations. The damage caused by gel in oil-productive zones will depend greatly on (1) the flow geometry (linear or radial), (2) hysteresis of water-oil relative permeability curves, (3) the extent to which gels disproportionately reduce relative permeability to water more than that to oil, and (4) fluid saturations. The impact of each of these factors is discussed.

Particular attention is paid to the impact of gel treatments that reduce the relative permeability to water more than that to oil. Induced changes in the relative permeability curves near-wellbore will not necessarily enhance oil recovery from a particular zone. Depending on the steady-state fractional flows of fluid outside of the gel-treated region, oil production could be impaired even though the gel reduces water permeability without affecting oil permeability. The principal advantage of the disproportionate reduction of the water and oil relative permeabilities is in reducing the need for zone isolation during gel placement. Realizing this advantage generally requires high fractional oil flow from the zone(s) of interest.

Examples are provided to illustrate and contrast situations where gels are/are not expected to damage oil productivity. Cases considered include fractured and unfractured production wells and wells with and without water coning problems. The analysis provides an explanation for why some of the most successful applications of gels have been in fractured wells that are produced by bottom-water drive. With the right properties, these gels can significantly increase the critical rate for water coning.

1. INTRODUCTION

In any oil recovery process, large-scale heterogeneities, such as fractures, channels, or high-permeability streaks, can cause breakthrough of injected fluid which will reduce oil recovery efficiency. In enhanced recovery projects, this problem is particularly acute because of the cost of the injected fluids.

Crosslinked-polymer treatments (gel treatments) were developed to reduce channeling of fluids through fractures and streaks of very high permeability. These treatments have been successfully applied to both injection wells and production wells. The success in injection wells has been demonstrated in the North Stanley polymer flood.[1] Here, gel treatments were applied to plug fractures prior to implementing a traditional polymer flood. A large portion of the tertiary oil recovered in this project was attributed to the gel treatments rather than to the polymer flood. Gel treatments in production wells have worked particularly well in reducing water coning in the bottom-water-drive Arbuckle reservoirs of Kansas.[2] Gel treatments have also been applied to reduce channeling in miscible floods.[3,4]

Near-wellbore applications of crosslinked-polymer treatments in injection wells experienced explosive growth between 1980 and 1986. At the peak of activity, 35% of the enhanced oil recovery (EOR) projects in the United States were polymer projects.[5] A close examination of various literature sources (*Enhanced Recovery Week*, *Oil & Gas Journal*, and others) reveals that about 60% of these polymer projects were gel treatments rather than traditional polymer floods.[6] Although many projects have been very successful, many other gel projects have been technical failures. Even though 20% of all EOR projects were gel treatments, they have been responsible for less than two percent of the total EOR production in the United States.[5,6] One study conducted in 1985 revealed that less than 45% of near-wellbore gel treatments were successful.[7] A second study of over 100 well treatments within one company revealed a 48% success ratio.[7] In part, the success of gel projects has been sporadic because the science and technology base did not adequately complement the extensive field applications.

Project Objectives and Scope

The objectives of this project are to identify the mechanisms by which gel treatments divert fluids in reservoirs and to establish where and how gel treatments are best applied. Several different types of gelants are being examined, including polymer-based gelants, monomer-based gelants, and a colloidal silica gelant. This research is directed at gel applications in water injection wells, in production wells, and in high-pressure gasfloods. The work will examine how the flow properties of gels and gelling agents are influenced by permeability, lithology, and wettability. Other goals include determining the proper placement of gelants, the stability of in-place gels, and the types of gels required for the various oil recovery processes and for different scales of reservoir heterogeneity.

Several key features distinguish this research from previous work. First, results from basic reservoir engineering calculations are being used to guide the research. These calculations are being used to identify the most critical problem areas in gel technology. In contrast, a large fraction of previous research has focused on evaluating gelation chemistry, gelation kinetics, and retention of gelant components.[2,8-23] While these activities are important, our calculations[24-27] show that the most critical unanswered questions lie in the areas of 1) gel placement procedures, and 2) the dependence of gel properties on permeability, lithology, and fluid velocities. The calculations are also valuable in that they have revealed serious deficiencies in some of the laboratory methodologies that have previously been used to evaluate gel systems.

A second feature of this research is that it examines gel applications in production wells and in gasfloods. Most previous research[8-23] has been restricted to gel applications in water injection wells. Third, gel performance is being examined in carbonates as well as in sandstones. During the 1980's, 20% of gel treatments occurred in carbonate reservoirs,[6] and this percentage is growing. The performance of gels in carbonates is particularly relevant to gel applications in CO_2 floods. A fourth distinguishing feature of the proposed research is that micromodels are being used to visualize the mechanisms by which gels divert flow of water, oil, and gas when multiple phases are present.

Project Task Areas

Eight task areas are included in this project. They are as follows:

Task 1: Equipment Design and Construction
Task 2: Screening Tests
Task 3: Gels for Producing Well Applications
Task 4: Chemical Gels in Waterflooding
Task 5: Flow Properties of Gels and Gelling Agents
Task 6: Chemical Gels in High-Pressure Gasflooding
Task 7: Mathematical Modeling
Task 8: Coordination with Other Research Programs

All of the equipment design and construction has been completed (Task 1). We have acquired all equipment and techniques needed to produce both low-pressure and high-pressure micromodels. Many (≈60) glass micromodels with various etched patterns have been produced. These are being used in several subsequent tasks, including Tasks 3, 4, and 6. Procedures for fabricating the micromodels are described in Appendix A. Video equipment for recording flow visualization studies has been procured and installed. The original design and operation of the micromodel apparatus have been described in the literature.[28]

A constant-temperature chamber has been constructed for performing corefloods. Three such chambers are available for use in this project. One chamber is being used to examine gel applications in production wells (Task 3) and in water injection wells (Task 4). An existing chamber is being used primarily for gel applications in CO_2 floods (Task 6). The apparatus that is being used during CO_2 corefloods has been described earlier.[29,30] In this apparatus a back-pressure regulator allows floods to be conducted at elevated pressures (up to 3100 psi). A third chamber houses the coreflood apparatus that is being used to study the rheology of gels and gelling agents in porous media.

A coreflood apparatus has been constructed for determining the rheology of gels and gelling agents in porous media. This apparatus is dedicated to studying gel performance as a function of fluid velocity in porous media (Task 5). Using this apparatus, corefloods can be conducted using the full range of flow conditions expected in a reservoir, including fluid velocities from 0.01 ft/d to 1000 ft/d and pressure gradients from 0.1 psi/ft to 5000 psi/ft. In all corefloods, at least one internal pressure tap is being used to insure that observations are not dominated by face-plugging or end effects. This coreflood apparatus, as well as the two others described above, are interfaced with a data acquisition system and a computer.

Our gel screening studies (Task 2) are described in Section 2 of this report. Task 3 (gels for applications in producing wells) is addressed in Sections 5 and 9. Section 3 is primarily concerned with Task 4 (gels for waterflood applications). Task 5 (flow properties of gels and gelling agents) is discussed in Section 6 (and to some extent in Section 3). Preliminary studies for Task 6 (gels for

applications in high-pressure gas floods) are presented in Section 4. Activities for Task 7 are included in Sections 3, 6, 7, 8, and 9.

2. GEL SCREENING STUDIES

This section describes the results of screening tests that were performed under Task 2 of the project. These screening tests were used to establish gelation times, gel strengths, and gel stabilities for the gel systems that are being studied in other portions of the project. Several different types of gelants were examined, including a monomer-based gelant, several polymer-based gelants, and two colloidal silica gelants. By studying a variety of types of gelants, we hope 1) to compare different mechanisms of fluid diversion, and 2) to identify the types of gels that are needed for the various EOR applications (waterflood injectors, production wells, CO_2 injectors, etc.)

Gels Studied

The following gels were examined:

1. A covalently crosslinked, phenolic-based gelant (Floperm 325®)[31,32]
2. Chromium(III)-xanthan (Flocon 4800® with X-Link 2000®)[33]
3. Chromium(VI→III)-polyacrylamide (Cyanagel 100®)
4. Chromium(III)-carboxylate-complexed polyacrylamide (MARCIT®)[9,34]
5. A covalently crosslinked, vinyl-based gelant (Floperm 465®)[35]
6. Colloidal silica (Ludox®)[36]

Pfizer provided the Flocon 4800, X-link 2000, Floperm 325, and Floperm 465 products. American Cyanamid provided the Cyanagel 100 polyacrylamide. Marathon provided the MARCIT polymer and crosslinker. Conoco (Dupont) provided the Ludox product. Floperm 325 is a monomer-based gelant. Ludox is a colloidal silica. The other products (listings 2 through 5 above) are polymer-based gelants.

The following gel compositions were prepared and studied:

1. 6% Floperm 325 (3% Floperm 325R, 3% Floperm 325F), 0.5% KCl;

2. 0.4% xanthan (Flocon 4800), 73 ppm Cr^{3+} (X-link 2000), 100 ppm HCHO, 0.5% KCl;

3. 0.4% xanthan (Flocon 4800), 154 ppm Cr^{3+} (X-link 2000), 100 ppm HCHO, 0.5% KCl;

4. 2.8% polyacrylamide (Cyanagel 100), 500 ppm $Na_2Cr_2O_7$, 1500 ppm $Na_2S_2O_4$, 0.5% KCl;

5. 0.994% polyacrylamide (MARCIT), 150 ppm Cr^{3+}, 1% NaCl;

6. 1.39% polyacrylamide (MARCIT), 212 ppm Cr^{3+}, 1% NaCl;

7. 2.5% Floperm 465P, 3% Floperm 465 B_2, 0.25% Floperm 465X, 0.5% KCl;

8. 10% colloidal silica (Ludox HS-40), 2.1% NaCl; and

9. 10% colloidal silica (Ludox SM), 0.7% NaCl.

Three criteria were used in selecting these compositions. First, the gel times should be long enough to allow placement in cores prior to the onset of gelation. Second, the gels should be relatively strong. Third, the gel compositions should be somewhat representative of those used in field applications.

For most of the formulations, the brine contained 0.5% KCl. Different NaCl brines were used with the colloidal silica because the gelation process is very sensitive to salinity for these gelants. In general, salinity will not be a major variable of study in our research.

Experimental Procedures

For each of the above gelant systems, gels were prepared using mixing procedures that were specified by the supplier of the gel. Table 1 lists the pH of each formulation immediately after completion of the mixing procedure. Twenty milliliters of a given gelant were placed in a 50 ml glass vial. The vials were placed in an air bath at 105°F for three days. The gelation time was noted (visually) during this period. Also, the gel strength was recorded after three days at 105°F. These values are listed in Table 1. The system for assessing gel strength was taken from Ref. 9. The codes used in this system are listed in Table 2.

After three days at 105°F, 20 ml of a 0.5% KCl brine at neutral pH was placed on top of the 20 ml of gel in each vial of one set of vials. In a duplicate set of vials, 20 ml of a 0.5% KCl brine at pH 3 was placed in contact with the gel to simulate contact with brine/CO_2. In a third set of vials, 20 ml of a 1% NaOH solution (pH=12.5) was placed in contact with the gel to simulate conditions in alkaline floods. After brine addition, the vials were evacuated and then flame sealed. Vials were then placed in air baths or ovens at room temperature (≈70°F), 105°F, 160°F, and 200°F. These vials were monitored regularly for gel consistency, stability, color, and other visual changes. After 30 days at a given temperature, the vials were opened and the pH of the free water was measured (at room temperature). Tables B1 through B9 in Appendix B list important results of these experiments. These results include (1) the final code for gel strength after 30 days, (2) the final gel volume after 30 days relative to the initial volume of the gel, and (3) the final pH of the free water after 30 days. These results are reported as a function of temperature (≈70°F, 105°F, 160°F, and 200°F) and initial pH of the free water (pH: 3, 7, and 12.5). In part "a" of each Table in Appendix B, both the initial gel-strength code and the final code after 30 days are indicated. For example, a listing of I/B means that the initial gel-strength code was I, while the code after 30 days was B. Incidently, the assignment of a given gel-strength code can be somewhat subjective. Therefore, codes that differ by a single letter do not necessarily reflect significant differences in gel strength.

When in contact with neutral or acidic brines, many of the gels maintained most of their original gel strength after 30 days at 200°F. However, this does not necessarily mean that the gels will have sufficient stability for long-term applications.

Many of the gels experienced either syneresis or swelling, depending on the temperature and the pH of the free water in contact with the gel. In fractures, syneresis or swelling could have a significant impact on gel performance. However, in a rock matrix, the work of some researchers[37] suggests that syneresis or swelling may be less important.

The pH of the free water in contact with the gel was reported in part "c" of each table in Appendix B. Changes in the pH of the free water reflect leaching of certain acidic or alkaline components from the gel. We note that in several cases, the pH results were somewhat unexpected. For example, consider the chromium-xanthan gels that were placed in contact with water at pH=7 (Tables B2, B3, C2 and C3). In all of these cases, the pH of the brine after 30 days was lower than either the initial pH of the water or the pH of the gelant prior to gelation. Additional studies will be needed to determine why this occurred.

TABLE 1
Summary of Gelation Results at Optimum (or Supplier-Specified) pH

Gel	Initial pH	Gel Time (hours)	Initial Gel Strength (Gel Code[9])
Floperm 325	9.0	10	I
Xanthan (73 ppm Cr^{+})	4.2	8.5	I
Xanthan (154 ppm Cr^{3+})	3.9	6	I
Cyanagel 100 - Cr	5.0	13.5	H
MARCIT (0.994% PAM)	5.8	12.5	H
MARCIT (1.39% PAM)	5.8	11.5	I
Floperm 465	5.1	14.5	I
Ludox HS	8.25	9.5	J
Ludox SM	8.25	31	J

TABLE 2
Gel Strength Codes[9]

Code	
A	No detectable gel formed: The gel appears to have the same viscosity as the original polymer solution and no gel is visually detectable.
B	Highly flowing gel: The gel appears to be only slightly more viscous than the initial polymer solution.
C	Flowing gel: Most of the obviously detectable gel flows to the vial top upon inversion.
D	Moderately flowing gel: Only a small portion (about 5 to 15%) of the gel does not readily flow to the vial top upon inversion—usually characterized as a tonguing gel (i.e., after hanging out of jar, gel can be made to flow back into bottle by slowly turning bottle upright).
E	Barely flowing gel: The gel can barely flow to the vial top and/or a significant portion (>15%) of the gel does not flow upon inversion.
F	Highly deformable nonflowing gel: The gel does not flow to the vial top upon inversion.
G	Moderately deformable nonflowing gel: The gel flows about half way down the vial upon inversion.
H	Slightly deformable nonflowing gel: The gel surface only slightly deforms upon inversion.
I	Rigid gel: There is no gel-surface deformation upon inversion.
J	Ringing rigid gel: A tuning-fork-like mechanical vibration can be felt after tapping the bottle.

Gelation at Neutral pH

For many gelants, an optimum pH exists at which the strongest gels are formed. In the experiments described above, gelation was allowed to occur at or near the optimum pH for the particular gelant. (In all cases, the "optimum" pH was taken to be the pH specified by the supplier of the gelant.) Prior to gelation, many gelant formulations have very little buffering capacity (i.e., their pH can be changed significantly by adding relatively small amounts of acid or base). However, the minerals in reservoir rocks often have a large buffering capacity.[38] Thus, even if a gelant is injected at the optimum pH for the gelation reaction, the reservoir minerals can quickly change the pH of the formulation to a more neutral value.

With this in mind, we performed a parallel set of studies where the gelant formulations were adjusted to a pH value of 7 at the end of the gelant mixing procedure. All other steps in the mixing procedures were identical to those specified by the gelant supplier. All other experimental procedures were identical to those described in the previous section, except that only free water (0.5% KCl) at pH 7 was placed in contact with the gel (i.e., after the formulation was allowed to set 3 days at 105°F).

The results are tabulated in Tables C1 through C9 in Appendix C. These results include (1) the final code for gel strength after 30 days, (2) the final gel volume after 30 days relative to the initial volume of the gel, and (3) the final pH of the free water after 30 days. These results are reported as a function of temperature (≈70°F, 105°F, 160°F, and 200°F).

Table 3 lists gelation times for the gelants at pH=7. Also listed are the gel strengths that were measured after three days at 105°F. In most cases, the gelation time at pH=7 was less than that at the optimum (or gelant-supplier-specified) pH (compare Tables 1 and 3). In some cases, no gelation was observed. We should note that Floperm 465 has a substantial buffering capacity around pH=5. Thus, this gelant may contain enough buffer to maintain the pH at a value of 5 even after injection into porous rock. Of course, a buffer could be incorporated into any gelant to have the same effect.

In several cases, the gel strength was the same after gelation at pH=7 as that after gelation at the optimum reaction pH. In other cases, the gel strength was significantly less after gelation at pH=7.

During replicate experiments that were performed after completion of the above tests, we found some variability in the gelation results at pH=7 for two of the gelants. For the Floperm 325 gelant, a strong, opaque gel was formed in the experiments described above. However, during replicate experiments, gelation at pH=7 resulted in a sludge mixed with free water. Variable results were also found at pH=7 for the chrome-xanthan gelant (4000 ppm xanthan, 154 ppm Cr^{3+}). For the experiments described in Table 3 and in Appendix C, a strong xanthan gel was formed. However, during some subsequent replicate experiments, gelation was not observed at pH=7. We are investigating the reasons for the variability of results for these two gelants.

TABLE 3
Summary of Gelation Results at pH=7

Gel	Gel Time (hours)	Initial Gel Strength (Gel Code[9])
Floperm 325	6.5	I
Xanthan (73 ppm Cr^{3+})	7.25	E
Xanthan (154 ppm Cr^{3+})	4.25	I
Cyanagel 100 - Cr	No gelation	A
MARCIT (0.994% PAM)	11	H
MARCIT (1.39% PAM)	9.5	I
Floperm 465	No gelation	A
Ludox HS	6.5	J
Ludox SM	4.5	J

pH of Brine in Contact With Compressed CO_2

In our studies to this point, we have presumed that brine in contact with CO_2 and rock will have a pH value of 3. While there is no doubt that brine in contact with CO_2 alone should have a low pH, it is conceivable that minerals in rock may buffer the pH at a more neutral value. We are not aware that anyone has measured the pH of brine in contact with both compressed CO_2 and rock. This is an important issue with respect to the stability of chemicals (e.g., gels and foams) that may be used during CO_2 floods. Therefore, we obtained a high-pressure pH probe and have measured pH values for brine in contact with compressed CO_2 and rock (Berea sandstone, Indiana limestone, or San Andres dolomite). The results are listed in Table 4.

The pressure vessel that was used in these experiments consisted of a 6" length of 4130 Chrome-Moly tubing (1.5" inside diameter) that was fitted with 316 stainless steel end caps and a portal for the high-pressure pH probe (TBI-Bailey Controls Model #TB567 pH sensor with Model #540 pH indicator). The pH measurements were typically monitored over a 12-hour period to ensure that equilibrium was reached.

The results indicate that the pH of a 0.5% KCl brine in contact with CO_2 at 1500 psi and 105°F will be in the range from 4.4 to 5.1. The pH at 1500 psi is fairly insensitive to the presence or absence of rock. There are at least two unanswered questions concerning the data. First, why does brine in contact with compressed CO_2 have a pH value of 4.4 to 4.8 rather than 3? Second, in the first set of experiments, why does the pH of brine without CO_2 jump from 6.5 to 8.2 as the pressure is raised to 1500 psi? (We note that this behavior was not repeated in the replicate experiment.) These

These experiments were intended to be cursory in order to give a quick indication of the pH of brine in contact with rock and CO_2 at elevated pressure. A more thorough theoretical and experimental analysis may be needed.[39]

TABLE 4
pH Values of 0.5% KCl Brine in Contact with Rock and Compressed CO_2, 105°F
(50g. brine per 320g. crushed rock)

Experimental Conditions	pH 1st Run	pH 2nd Run
1. Brine only, ambient pressure	6.5	7.1
2. Brine only at 1500 psi	8.2	7.1
3. Brine and CO_2 at 1500 psi	4.4	4.8
4. Brine, CO_2, and crushed Berea sandstone at 1500 psi	4.5	5.0
5. Brine, CO_2, and crushed Indiana limestone at 1500 psi	4.8	5.1
6. Brine, CO_2, and crushed San Andres dolomite at 1500 psi	---	4.4

Summary

Screening tests were performed to establish gelation times, gel strengths, and gel stabilities for the gel systems that will be studied in the project, "Fluid Diversion and Sweep Improvement with Chemical Gels in Oil Recovery Processes." Several different types of gelants were examined, including a monomer-based gelant, several polymer-based gelants, and two colloidal silica gelants. Gel stabilities were determined over a 30-day period as a function of temperature (room temperature to 200°F) and pH of water in contact with the gel (water pH values of 3, 7, and 12.5). For each gelant, one set of studies was performed on gels that were allowed to form at the optimum pH for the gelation reaction (i.e., the pH specified by the gelant supplier). A second set of studies was performed on gels that were formed at pH=7. These latter studies were initiated because reservoir rocks may force in-situ gelation reactions to occur at neutral pH, even though the gelant was injected at some other pH. The performance of some gels may be very different when the gel is formed at neutral pH rather than at the optimum gelation pH.

Some cursory experiments were performed to determine the pH of brine in contact with rock and compressed CO_2. The results indicate that the pH of a 0.5% KCl brine in contact with CO_2 at 1500 psi and 105°F will be in the range from 4.4 to 5.1. This pH is fairly insensitive to the presence or absence of rock (Berea sandstone, Indiana limestone, or San Andres dolomite).

3. IMPACT OF GELATION pH, ROCK PERMEABILITY, AND LITHOLOGY ON THE PERFORMANCE OF A MONOMER-BASED GEL

Ideally, gel treatments should reduce channeling of fluids through high-permeability, watered-out flow paths without damaging oil-productive zones. However, in most applications, the gelant penetrates to some extent into low-permeability, oil-productive zones. A gel treatment can either enhance or harm oil production, depending on how the gel's performance in low-permeability rock compares with that in the high-permeability channel.[24-27]

This section reports results from an experimental investigation of the effects of gelation pH, rock permeability, and lithology on the performance of a resorcinol-formaldehyde gel. This gel was chosen for study because its placement in porous media is not complicated by some of the factors that influence placement of polymeric gelants. In particular, prior to gelation, aqueous resorcinol-formaldehyde solutions 1) are Newtonian, 2) exhibit nearly the same viscosity as water, and 3) can readily propagate through sandstone and carbonate porous media without experiencing any significant chemical retention. In contrast, polymeric gelants usually are viscous and non-Newtonian. More important, the components of polymeric gelants (i.e., polymers and metallic crosslinkers) exhibit permeability- and lithology-dependent retention.[40-43] Insights obtained by studying this relatively simple resorcinol-formaldehyde gel may be valuable when assessing the performance of more complex gels in fluid diversion.

Resorcinol and formaldehyde (see Fig. 1) are small molecules that are very soluble in water. Resorcinol and formaldehyde will polymerize to form gels, as shown in Fig. 2. These reactions are very similar to those that occur during the formation of phenol-formaldehyde resins (e.g., Bakelite®).[44] This class of gels has been used for fluid diversion in field applications.[31,32,45,46]

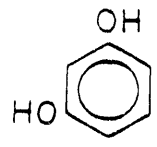
Several terms should be defined for the reader's benefit. The terms "gelant" and "gelling agent" here refer to the liquid formulation prior to gelation. Resistance factor, F_r, is defined as water mobility divided by mobility of the gelant. It is equivalent to the effective viscosity of the gelant in porous media relative to that of water. Residual resistance factor, F_{rr}, is defined as water mobility in the absence of gel divided by water mobility in the presence of gel. Residual resistance factor is a measure of the permeability reduction caused by gel.

pH Dependence of Gelation

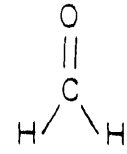
All gelant formulations throughout this study contained 3% (by weight) resorcinol (0.27 M), 3% formaldehyde (1 M), and 0.5% KCl (0.067 M). All chemicals used were reagent grade. Also, all core experiments and gelation studies were performed at 105°F (41°C).

The product formed by the reaction of resorcinol with formaldehyde depends on pH. At pH=9, a strong, ringing gel is formed that is clear and red. No free water remains after gelation. However, as the initial pH is decreased, gel formation becomes less perfect. With an initial pH of 7, an opaque orange-white gel is formed, and some free water remains after the reaction. The gelation time (at 105°F) is about four hours at pH=9 and is five to seven hours when the initial pH is 7. As initial pH value is decreased below 7, the gelation time increases, and the final ratio of free water to gel also increases.

As the reaction between resorcinol and formaldehyde proceeds, the pH tends to decrease. For example, for a gelant at an initial pH of 7, the pH gradually declines to a value of 5.1 over the course of five hours. Under similar conditions, the pH remains stable at a value of 7 for solutions of resorcinol without formaldehyde or of formaldehyde without resorcinol.



RESORCINOL
$C_6H_4(OH)_2$
$M_w = 110$



FORMALDEHYDE
HCHO
$M_w = 30$

Fig. 1. Compositions of Resorcinol and Formaldehyde.

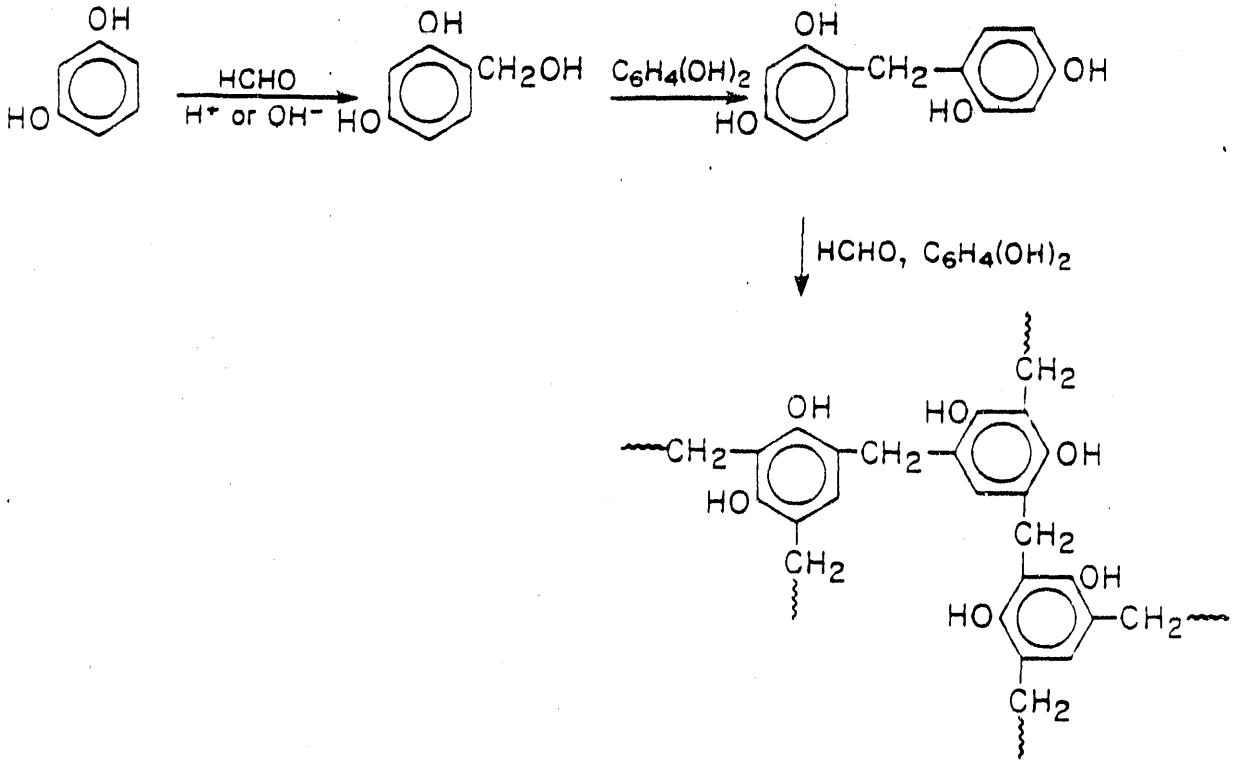


Fig. 2. Reaction of Resorcinol with Formaldehyde.

Resorcinol and formaldehyde have very little capacity to buffer the pH of a solution. This is shown in Fig. 3. Thus, acid generated during the resorcinol-formaldehyde reaction can decrease pH and affect the final nature of the product. Since gelation is sensitive to pH, all factors that affect the pH should be of concern when determining the nature and the performance of the gel. In addition to the reaction itself, several rock minerals can have an important influence on solution pH. For example, clay minerals can reversibly exchange metallic cations (e.g., Na^+, Ca^{2+}) with hydrogen ions in solution.[38] Clay minerals can also react irreversibly with hydrogen or hydroxide ions.[47] Dissolution and precipitation of minerals can also change pH.[48-50] This raises a concern that the reaction product formed in beaker tests may differ from those formed in porous media. Furthermore, during laboratory corefloods with unbuffered gelants, a gradient of pH values may exist in the core. Since the nature and performance of gels varies considerably with pH, coreflood results using unbuffered gelants may be difficult to scale to field applications.

With this in mind, we have examined the use of buffers to maintain constant pH values. A phosphate buffer was found to be effective at maintaining pH at 7; an acetate buffer was used at pH=5; and carbonate buffers were used at pH values of 6 and 9. In all cases, the buffer concentration was 0.05 M. With a sodium bicarbonate buffer at pH=9, the gelation time, gel strength, and appearance were identical to those without the carbonate buffer at pH=9.

At an initial pH of 7, the gelation time was five to seven hours either with or without the phosphate buffer. Also, the gel product had the same color (opaque orange-white) with or without phosphate. With phosphate, no free water remained after gelation, and the gel had a smooth, solid appearance. However, without the phosphate buffer, free water remained after the reaction, and the "gel" appeared as a grainy precipitate. Without phosphate, the final ratio of free water to "gel" ranged from 5:1 to 1:10 during several replicate experiments. Thus, there is variability that is not currently understood. In contrast, for cases where buffers were used, results were reproducible. This provides another argument in favor of using buffers during laboratory experiments.

For gelants buffered with bicarbonate at pH=6, no free water formed, but the gel was more grainy in appearance than that with phosphate at pH=7. For gelants buffered with acetate at pH=5, free water in contact with a grainy precipitate was formed (ratio of ≈3:1, respectively). We cannot eliminate the possibility that the buffers interfere with the resorcinol-formaldehyde reaction by some means other than by affecting pH. However, we suspect that pH alteration is the dominant factor.

We also determined the inherent permeability of gel formed at pH=9. Gel was allowed to form in a glass "micromodel" that had internal dimensions of 10.35 cm x 0.21 cm x 0.0178 cm. Before placing the gel, the effective "permeability" of the micromodel was 893 D. After allowing the gel to form, the permeability to brine was found to be 6.2 μD.

Chemical Transport in Porous Media Prior to Gelation

For an aqueous solution that contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, and 0.5% KCl, the viscosity at 105°F (prior to gelation) is 0.75 cp—nearly the same as that of a brine that contains 0.5% KCl (0.65 cp). During flow through cores, all resistance factors for resorcinol-formaldehyde solutions (again, prior to gelation) were observed to be near one. This was noted in both sandstone and carbonate cores having permeabilities ranging from 7 to 700 md.

Previous work has demonstrated that propagation of formaldehyde is not retarded during flow through reservoir rock.[51] In our work, corefloods were performed to assess retention of resorcinol in Berea. During injection of a continuous bank of 3% resorcinol to displace brine from 288-md Berea, the 50%-concentration level for resorcinol in the effluent (monitored spectrophotometrically)

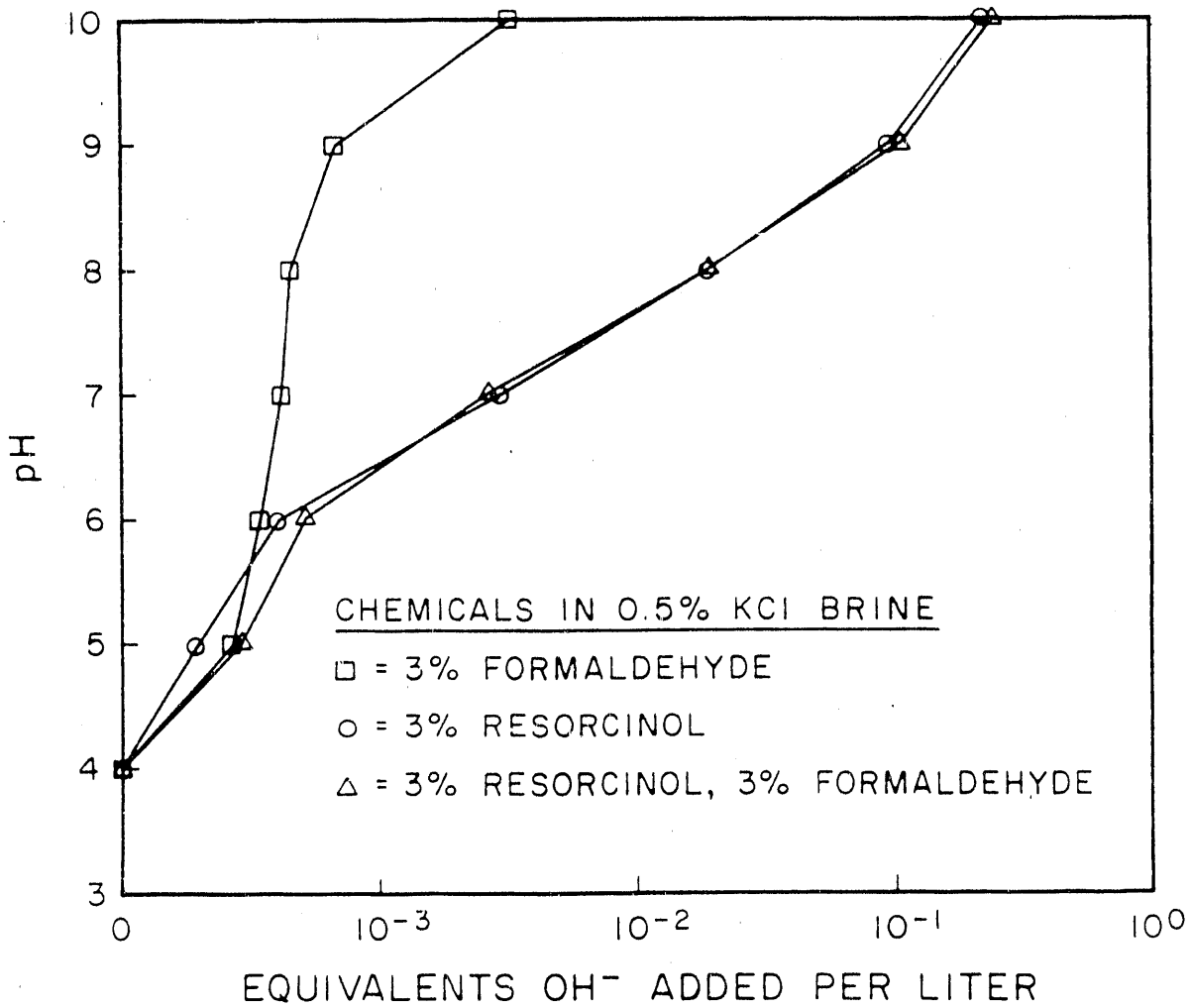


Fig. 3. Buffer Capacities of Resorcinol and Formaldehyde.

indicated that resorcinol was not adsorbed or retained by the porous media to any significant extent.

Coreflood Procedures

In each of the corefloods performed during this work, the porosity and permeability to brine were first determined. All cores were about 15-cm long and 3.6 cm in diameter. All cores had one internal pressure tap located 2.5 cm from the inlet rock face. The cores were not fired. Tracer studies were performed to determine the dispersivity of the core and to confirm the pore volume determination. These studies involved injecting a brine bank that contained potassium iodide as a tracer. The tracer concentration in the effluent was monitored spectrophotometrically at a wavelength of 230 nm.

Then, three pore volumes of resorcinol-formaldehyde gelant were injected using a flux of 15.7 ft/d. Resistance factors were monitored in the two core sections during this entire time. We also continuously monitored pH values in the effluent. Effluent samples were collected and monitored to determine whether the gelation characteristics of the effluent differed from those of gelant that had not been injected. After injection of the gelant, cores were shut-in for three to four days (at 105°F).

After shut-in, brine was injected to determine residual resistance factors (F_{rr}). Low injection rates were used first. The F_{rr} values reported here were measured using the second segment (≈12.5 cm) of the core. Note was made of how rapidly F_{rr} values stabilized and whether any gel was forced from the core along with the effluent. After stabilization, brine injection rates were increased, and the observations were repeated. Then, the injection rate was decreased to determine whether F_{rr} values at lower rates had changed. This process was repeated with successively higher rates. The objectives of this procedure were (1) to determine whether gel mobilization occurred at a given flow rate, and (2) to determine the apparent rheology of the gel in porous media.

After the F_{rr} values had been determined, additional tracer studies were performed to determine (1) the final pore volume that was occupied by the gel, and (2) the final dispersivity of the core.

Permeability Reduction After Gelation

In each of the core experiments, residual resistance factors were determined over a range of fluid velocities. In many cases, F_{rr} values decreased significantly upon exposure to successively higher brine flow rates. Table 5 lists F_{rr} data for a resorcinol-formaldehyde gel (that was buffered at pH=7) in 63-md Berea sandstone. Residual resistance factors decreased from 1735 after first exposure to a fluid flux of 0.025 ft/d (76.2 psi/ft) to 1120 after exposure to a flux of 0.393 ft/d (773 psi/ft). However, when flow rates were subsequently reduced, the F_{rr} values remained fairly constant. The results suggest that upon first exposure to a given fluid velocity, a certain amount of gel breaks down to allow a flow path through the porous medium. Flow of brine through this porous medium then appears more or less Newtonian until the previous maximum in fluid velocity is exceeded.

TABLE 5
Results from Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 63-md Berea Sandstone
(Gelant contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, 0.5% KCl, 0.05 M phosphate, pH=7)
ϕ=0.192, μ_w=0.70 cp, 105°F

Flux (ft/d)	Pressure Gradient (psi/ft)	Final k (md)	F_{rr}	
0.025	76.2	0.0363	1735	
0.050	140.5	0.0394	1600	$\bar{F}_{rr}$=1620
0.025	71.8	0.0385	1635	
0.100	259	0.0427	1475	$\bar{F}_{rr}$=1520
0.025	68.5	0.0404	1560	
0.201	494	0.0450	1400	
0.100	267	0.0414	1520	$\bar{F}_{rr}$=1420
0.025	58.4	0.0474	1330	
0.393	773	0.0563	1120	
0.202	415	0.0538	1170	$\bar{F}_{rr}$=1150
0.100	211	0.0525	1200	
0.025	48.3	0.0573	1100	

Table 6 provides another example for a gel that was buffered at pH=9 in 49-md Berea sandstone. With this gel, F_{rr} values experience a more dramatic decrease upon exposure to successively higher injection rates. This is also shown in Fig. 4. Upon subsequent reduction of injection rates, a mild shear-thinning character is observed for the gel at pH=9. Equations relating F_{rr} values to flux values (u, in ft/d) are included in Table 6. Similar data from other core experiments are listed in Tables D1-D10 in Appendix D. (These tables list data in the order in which they were collected.) A summary of this data is included in Table 7. In determining each F_{rr} relation in Table 7, the core was first exposed to an injection rate that resulted in the maximum pressure gradient specified. Then, F_{rr} values were determined at a number of lower rates.

The coefficient of flux in the F_{rr} relations in Table 7 provides a means for comparing F_{rr} values at a fixed flux (1 ft/d). For a given lithology and permeability, the highest F_{rr} values were observed for gels formed at pH=9. This was anticipated since the most rigid gels are formed at pH=9 during beaker tests.

For gels that were buffered at pH values of 7 or above, F_{rr} values were very high. In fact, these values are so high that rock matrix treated by these gels would be effectively plugged. Thus, when placing these gels in a reservoir, caution should be used to prevent damage to oil-productive zones.

For gels that were buffered at pH values of 6 or less, F_{rr} values were near one—indicating that the "gel" had little or no effect. Thus, there is a fairly narrow range of pH (6 to 7) over which F_{rr} values will change from unity to very high values.

For gels that were buffered at a given pH in Berea sandstone, F_{rr} values generally remained about the same or increased with decreasing permeability. (Results at pH=6.5 appear to provide an exception. However, this may be an artifact since different buffers were used and since the F_{rr} values were very sensitive to pH in this region.) For some of the data observed in limestone cores, F_{rr} values were less than those in more-permeable Berea cores. Thus, F_{rr} values can be affected by both permeability and lithology.

For gels that were injected at pH=7 but were not buffered, we are less certain about the actual pH at which the gelation reaction occurred. From the F_{rr} values, we suspect that reaction pH values were between 6 and 7. However, it is quite possible that the reaction pH values were different in the three unbuffered cases—especially in the sandstone cores vs. the carbonate core.

Tracer studies provide interesting insights about the fraction of the total pore volume that was occupied by gel. In Table 7, V_{pf}/V_{pi} refers to the fraction of the original pore volume that was sampled by the iodide tracer after gel placement (as determined by the 50% tracer-concentration level in the effluent). For gels at pH=9, the gel apparently occupied 87% to 99% of the pore space. Generally, as the gelation pH was reduced, a smaller fraction of the pore volume was occupied by the gel. In one case (unbuffered gel at pH=7 in 57-md Berea), the gel reduced permeability by a factor of 128, apparently without reducing the pore volume. In other cases (gel buffered at pH=7 in 63-md Berea and in 7-md limestone), large F_{rr} values were associated with fairly small reductions in pore volume (27% to 34%). One could speculate how a small volume of gel could cause large permeability reductions. Perhaps, small gel particles lodge in pore throats—thereby, dramatically reducing brine permeability without occupying much volume.

Table 7 also lists dispersivity results obtained during tracer studies. The quantity α_f/α_i refers to the final dispersivity during tracer injection after gelation divided by the initial dispersivity value before gel placement. The effluent tracer curves usually fit quite well using the error-function solution.[52] Figures 5-7 show several tracer curves that were obtained before and after gel placement.

TABLE 6
Results From Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 49-md Berea Sandstone
(Gelant contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, 0.5% KCl, 0.05 M $NaHCO_3$, pH=9)
ϕ=0.200, μ_w=0.67 cp, 105°F

Flux (ft/d)	Pressure Gradient (psi/ft)	Final k (md)	F_{rr}	
0.025	466	0.0057	8600	
0.050	471	0.0113	4350	$F_{rr}=3793\ u^{-0.05}$
0.025	243	0.0109	4490	
0.126	622	0.0214	2280	
0.025	156	0.0170	2890	$F_{rr}=1688\ u^{-0.15}$
0.050	313	0.0184	2660	
0.251	690	0.0385	1270	$F_{rr}=1017\ u^{-0.16}$
0.025	100	0.0266	1840	
0.628	748	0.0889	550	
0.126	199	0.0670	730	$F_{rr}=515\ u^{-0.16}$
0.025	50	0.0531	920	

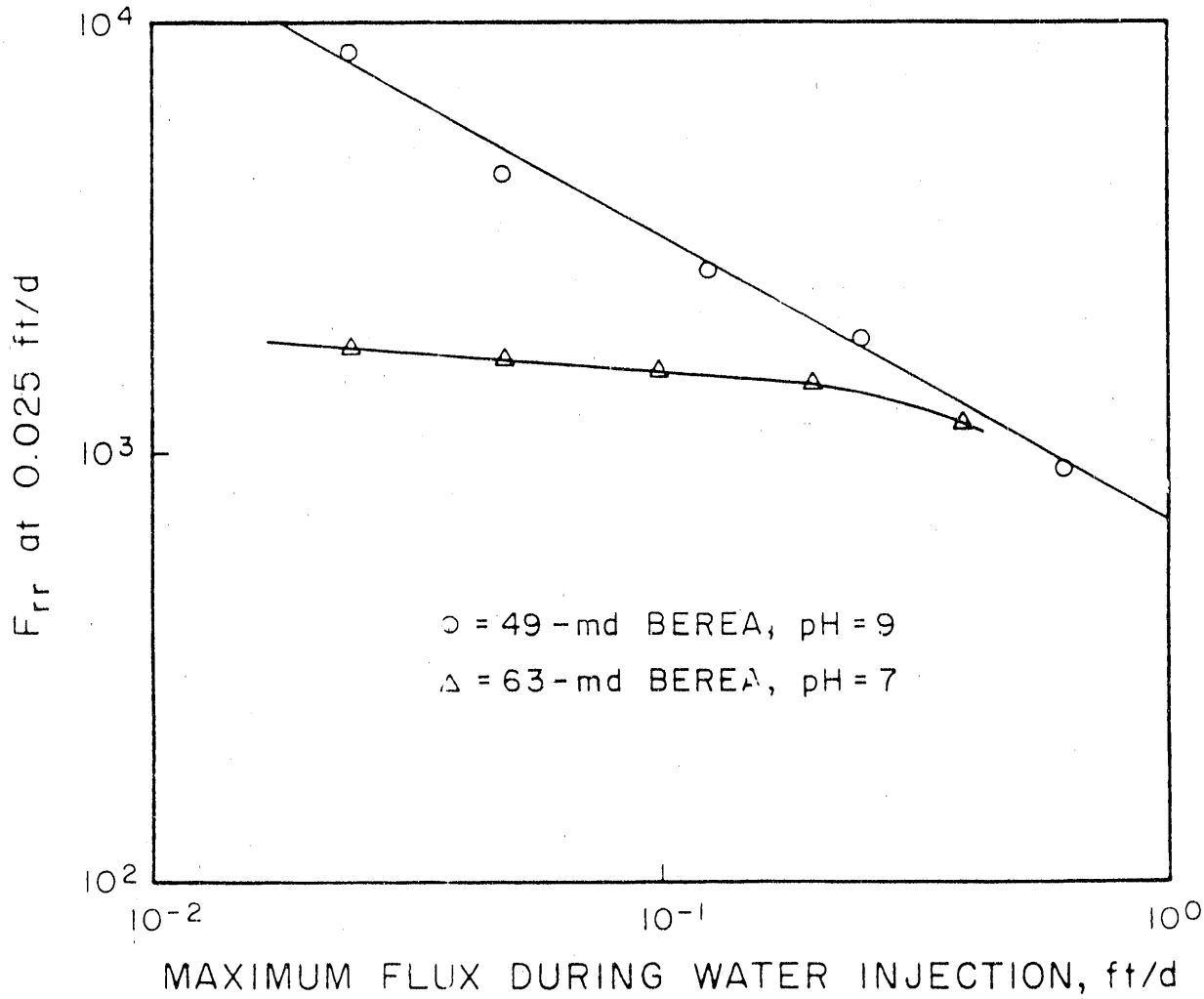


Fig. 4. F_{rr} Value at 0.025 ft/d After Injecting Brine at the Maximum Flux Specified on the Abscissa.

TABLE 7
Summary of Results From Brine Injection After Gelation
(Gelant contains 3% Resorcinol, 3% Formaldehyde, 0.5% KCl, 105°F)

Rock	pH	Buffer	F_{rr} Relation	Maximum dp/dl (psi/ft)	V_{rf}/V_{pi}	α_f/α_i
570-md BS	9	0.05 M $NaHCO_3$	F_{rr}=2170	251		
			F_{rr}=1250	750	0.095	106
49-md BS	9	0.05 M $NaHCO_3$	F_{rr}=3793 $u^{-0.05}$	471		
			F_{rr}=1688 $u^{-0.15}$	622		
			F_{rr}=1017 $u^{-0.16}$	690		
			F_{rr}= 515 $u^{-0.16}$	748	0.13	11.5
7.4-md LS	9	0.05 M $NaHCO_3$	F_{rr}=1594 $u^{-0.16}$	1006	0.01	2.9
455-md BS	7	0.05 M phosphate	F_{rr}=970 $u^{-0.11}$	56		
			F_{rr}=662 $u^{-0.19}$	74		
			F_{rr}=500 $u^{-0.17}$	100		
			F_{rr}=386 $u^{-0.10}$	147		
			F_{rr}=286	1103	0.12	5.2
63-md BS	7	0.05 M phosphate	F_{rr}=1735	76		
			F_{rr}=1620	141		
			F_{rr}=1520	259		
			F_{rr}=1420	494		
			F_{rr}=1150	773	0.73	94
7-md LS	7	0.05 M phosphate	F_{rr}=404	160		
			F_{rr}=365	283		
			F_{rr}=355	534		
			F_{rr}=326	910	0.66	4.4
390-md BS	7	none	F_{rr}=83.1 $u^{-0.05}$	298	0.13	64
57-md BS	7	none	F_{rr}=128	160-2130	1.0	29
13-md LS	7	none	F_{rr}=4.7 $u^{-0.04}$	24-504	0.98	0.35
28-md BS	6.5	0.05 M phosphate	F_{rr}=24.4 $u^{-0.26}$	8-930	0.39	9.0
288-md BS	6.5	0.05 M $NaHCO_3$	F_{rr}=417 $u^{-0.28}$	29		
			F_{rr}=404 $u^{-0.19}$	41		
			F_{rr}=242 $u^{-0.31}$	48		
			F_{rr}=248	69		
			F_{rr}=153	169		
			F_{rr}=123	629	0.99	1.5
7.4-md LS	6.5	0.05 M $NaHCO_3$	F_{rr}= 1.5 $u^{-0.07}$	1-29	0.99	1.5

TABLE 7 (cont.)

Rock	pH	Buffer	F_{rr} Relation	Maximum dp/dl (psi/ft)	V_{pf}/V_{pi}	α_f/α_i
704-md BS	6	0.05 M $NaHCO_3$	F_{rr}= 1.8	1-8	0.87	5.1
61-md BS	6	0.05 M $NaHCO_3$	F_{rr}= 2.1 $u^{-0.14}$	5-41	1.0	0.97
77-md BS	6	0.05 M phosphate	F_{rr}= 1.3	3-27	0.93	1.4
573-md BS	5	0.05 M acetate	F_{rr}=1.0	2-5	0.97	1.35

BS=Berea Sandstone, LS=Indiana Limestone

Dispersivity values for cores before exposure to gel were roughly the same in high-permeability Berea as in low-permeability Berea (≈0.1 cm). However, dispersivity values for Indiana limestone were typically five to ten times greater than those for Berea.

In most cases, the presence of gel increased dispersivity. At pH values above 6, dispersivity values in Berea were 5 to 106 times greater after gel placement than before gel placement. Gel-induced dispersivity changes in Indiana limestone were generally less than those in Berea sandstone.

When the tracer studies were performed at very low injection rates, tracer curves sometimes showed signs of an exchange of iodide between the gel and the mobile brine. We observed that the degree of "tailing" exhibited by the tracer curve increased with decreasing injection rate. As injection rate decreased, there was a greater need to use a capacitance model (e.g., a "Coats-Smith" model[53]) to describe the tracer data. Further evidence that iodide was exchanging between the gel and the brine was found when brine was used to flush tracer from the core. After injecting many pore volumes of brine at a high rate to displace tracer, no iodide was detected in the effluent. However, if the core was shut-in for a day, and then additional brine was injected, iodide was detected in the first pore volume of effluent.

Exploiting pH to Optimize Gel Placement

We have shown that residual resistance factors provided by a resorcinol-formaldehyde gel depend on the pH at which gelation occurs. This is especially true over the pH range from 6 to 7. For gelation pH values between 6 and 7, residual resistance factors can change from one to more than 1000.

Can this pH dependence of gelation be exploited to optimize gel placement? In concept, ion exchange and other reactions with rock minerals could retard the movement of a pH front to a greater extent in one zone than in another zone. Perhaps different rates of propagation of pH fronts could be exploited to attain high F_{rr} values in the most-permeable zones but low F_{rr} values in less-permeable zones.

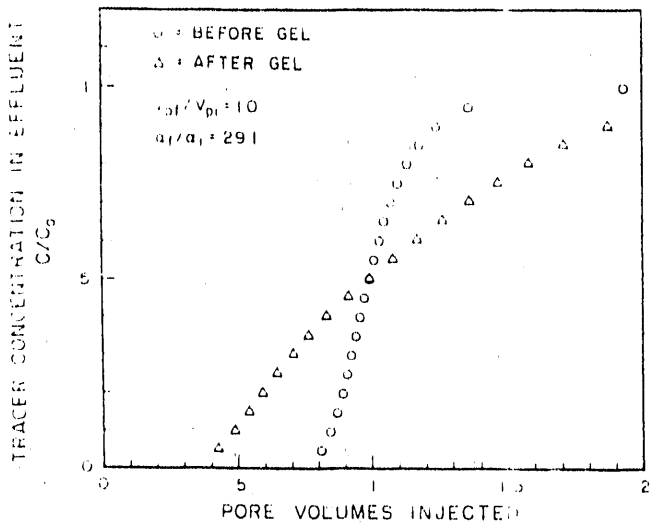


Fig. 5. Tracer Results during Brine Injection Before vs. After Gel Placement in 57-md Berea. No buffer. Initial Gelant pH=7.

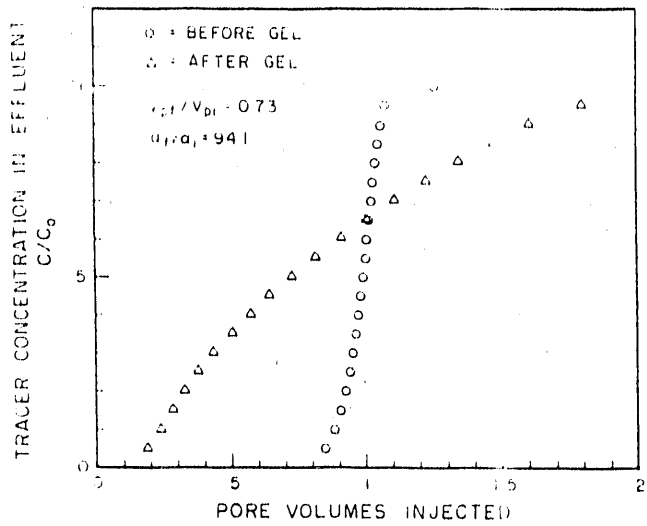


Fig. 6. Tracer Results during Brine Injection Before vs. After Gel Placement in 63-md Berea. Phosphate buffer. Gelant pH=7.

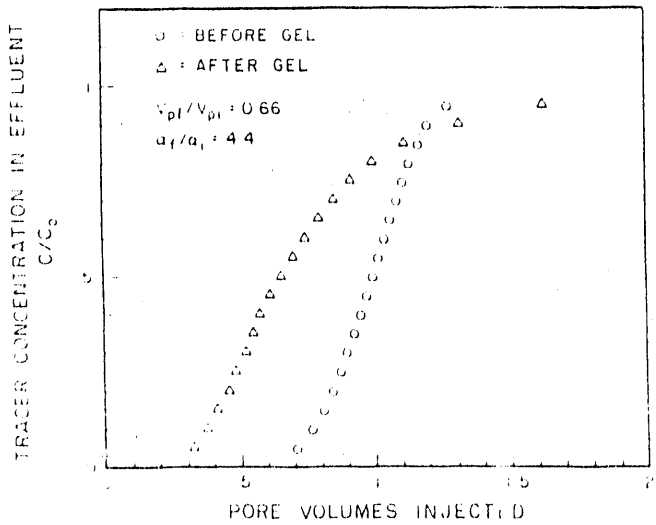


Fig. 7. Tracer Results during Brine Injection Before vs. After Gel Placement in 7-md Limestone. Phosphate buffer. Gelant pH=7.

Previous researchers have described the propagation of buffered and unbuffered fluid banks through porous media.[38,54] As with any species, the propagation of H^+ or OH^- through porous media depends on (1) the injected concentration of the species, (2) the volume of fluid injected, (3) the number of sites available for adsorption or exchange, and (4) any reactions or equilibria that involve the species.

A parameter, a_r, is defined here as the number of pore volumes of a chemical formulation that must be injected to satisfy all available retentive sites in one pore volume of the porous medium. Eq. 1 can be used to evaluate a_r.

$$a_r = \frac{n_{rock}}{n_{sol}} \tag{1}$$

Here, n_{rock} is the amount of a specific chemical that is removed by the rock from a certain pore volume of fluid under a particular set of conditions. The parameter, n_{sol}, is the amount of the species of interest in solution per unit of volume of the injected formulation. When considering changes in H^+ or OH^- concentrations, both n_{rock} and n_{sol} can be expressed in units of equivalents per liter (eq/l) of pore volume.

The capacity of a given rock to retard a pH front is related to the quantities and specific types of clays and other minerals that are present. The ion exchange capacity (n_{max}) provides a measure of the number of sites that can reversibly exchange cations or hydrogen ions. Berea, which is considered a relatively clean sandstone, has an ion-exchange capacity around 5 milli-equivalents per kilogram (meq/kg) of rock.[55] For reservoir rocks, ion-exchange capacities from 4 to 70 meq/kg have been reported.[55]

The maximum value for n_{rock} that is due to ion exchange is given by Eq. 2.[38]

$$n_{rock} = \frac{n_{max}\rho_r(1-\phi)}{\phi} \tag{2}$$

For a sandstone with a porosity (ϕ) of 0.2, a rock density (ρ_r) of 2.65 g/cm^2, and an ion-exchange capacity of 10 meq/kg, the value of n_{rock} is given by Eq. 3.

$$n_{rock} = \frac{(10^{-2}\,\text{eq/kg})\,(2.65\,\text{g/cm}^3)\,(10^{-3}\,\text{kg/g})\,(10^3\,\text{cm}^3/\text{l})\,(1-0.2)}{0.2} = 0.106\,\text{eq/l} \tag{3}$$

Eqs. 2 and 3 assume that retention of the species is independent of concentration and that no other reactions involve the species (other than irreversible retention). However, adsorption of the species often will be governed by a Langmuir-type isotherm[38] so that n_{rock} will be less than the value given by Eq. 2.

Concerning n_{sol}, equilibria may exist between components in solution so that a species may be replenished as it is removed by adsorption. For example, in a buffered solution, loss of hydrogen ion by ion exchange will cause the buffer to replenish the H^+. Thus, the denominator in Eq. 1 often will be underestimated by simply using the existing concentration of the species.

From Fig. 3, we note that 0.107 eq/l of H^+ are required to change the pH from 9 to 7 for our resorcinol-formaldehyde gelant. Only another 0.00223 eq/l of H^+ are needed to change the pH from 7 to 6. Thus, if $n_{rock} \leq 0.106$ and if a gelant is injected at pH=9, we can estimate the maximum a_r

value associated with the rock changing the gelant pH to 6. That is, a_r is less than one [0.106/(0.107+0.00223)]. Similarly, if a gelant is injected at pH=7, the maximum a_r value associated with the rock changing the gelant pH to a value of 6 is about 48 (0.106/0.00223). If the gelant contains a buffer, the a_r values could be significantly lower since n_{sol} could be considerably greater than the values used in these examples.

Previous work[24] has quantified the impact of retention (a_r) and inaccessible pore volume (a_v) on the degree of penetration of gelant into a given zone in reservoirs with noncommunicating layers. For Newtonian fluids in linear flow, Eq. 4 relates the depth of penetration (L_{p1}) for a species in the most-permeable layer (with properties designated with the subscript "1") to the depth of penetration (L_{p2}) in a given less-permeable layer (with properties designated with the subscript "2").

$$\begin{aligned}&\left(1+a_{r1}-a_{v1}\right)\left(\phi_1/k_1\right)\left[\left(F_r-1\right)L_{p1}^2/2+\left(\Psi_1+1\right)L_{pm}L_{p1}\right]=\\&\left(1+a_{r2}-a_{v2}\right)\left(\phi_2/k_2\right)\left[\left(F_r-1\right)L_{p2}^2/2+\left(\Psi_2+1\right)L_{pm}L_{p2}\right]\end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

Eq. 5 provides the analogous relation for Newtonian fluids in radial flow (with r_{p1} and r_{p2} designating radii of penetration in a given layer).

$$\begin{aligned}&(1+a_{r1}-a_{v1})(\phi_1/k_1)(r_{p1}^2[F_r\ln(r_{p1}/r_o)+\ln(r_{pm}/r_{p1})+(1-F_r)/2+\Psi_1\ln(r_{pm}/r_o)]\\&\quad -r_o^2[(\Psi_1+1)\ln(r_{pm}/r_o)+(1-F_r)/2]) =\\&\qquad (1+a_{r2}-a_{v2})(\phi_2/k_2)(r_{p2}^2[F_r\ln(r_{p2}/r_o)+\ln(r_{pm}/r_{p2})+(1-F_r)/2+\Psi_2\ln(r_{pm}/r_o)]\\&\qquad\quad -r_o^2[(\Psi_2+1)\ln(r_{pm}/r_o)+(1-F_r)/2])\end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

Eqs. 6 and 7 provide the analogous relations for non-Newtonian fluids in linear flow and radial flow, respectively.

$$(1+a_{r1}-a_{v1})(\phi_1/k_1)\ f(L_{p1}) = (1+a_{r2}-a_{v2})(\phi_2/k_2)\ f(L_{p2}) \tag{6}$$

$$(1+a_{r1}-a_{v1})(\phi_1/k_1)\ f(r_{p1}) = (1+a_{r2}-a_{v2})(\phi_2/k_2)\ f(r_{p2}) \tag{7}$$

In Eqs. 6 and 7, the functions, $f(L_{p1})$, $f(L_{p2})$, $f(r_{p1})$, and $f(r_{p2})$, are independent of any depth of penetration other than the parameter indicated.

For propagation of H^+ or OH^- fronts, the inaccessible pore volume terms (a_v) can be neglected. Then, close examination of Eqs. 4 through 7 reveals that the ($1+a_r$) terms will cancel if a_r is much less than one or if a_r values are the same in all layers. Thus, retention values must be significantly different in different layers in order to have a strong impact on the relative depth of penetration.

Now, let us examine whether pH effects can be exploited to optimize gel placement in an unfractured (radial flow) injection well with two noncommunicating layers. A gelant will be injected without zone isolation until the gelant penetrates to a radius of 50 ft in the most-permeable layer (layer 1). (The wellbore radius, r_o, is 0.5 ft.) We will focus on the "best-case" situation. In particular, a_{r1} is assumed to be zero in the most-permeable layer. Thus, there is no retention of the gelant in layer 1, and the pH front (i.e., the pH of the injectant) coincides with the final radius of the gelant bank (50 ft). All of the gelant that enters this layer can form gel at the optimum pH. Also, the resistance factor (F_r) of the gelant is assumed to be one. This insures that the depth of penetration of gelant in the less-permeable layer (layer 2) will be minimized.[24,25] For simplicity, dispersion is neglected.[26]

In the less-permeable layer, the gelant front and the pH front are retarded to the extent that is determined by the factor, a_{r2}. After placement of the gelant, the well is shut in to allow gelation. The gel is only allowed to form upstream of the pH front. Thus, gel with a residual resistance factor, F_{rr}, is formed to a radius of 50 ft in layer 1. In both layers, no gel is formed downstream of the pH front (F_{rr}=1).

During brine injection after gelation, we are interested in how the injection profile has changed. Figures 8 and 9 illustrate how the value for a_{r2} affects injection profiles in a reservoir with two noncommunicating layers. This is shown as a function of permeability ratio, k_1/k_2, for the two layers. In the label for the y-axis in Figs. 8 and 9, q_2/q_{2o} is the water injectivity in layer 2 after the gel has formed relative to water injectivity prior to gel placement. Similarly, q_1/q_{1o} is the water injectivity in layer 1 after the gel has formed relative to water injectivity prior to gel placement. Thus, the y-axis represents the injectivity retained in the less-permeable layer relative to the injectivity retained in the most-permeable layer. If $(q_2/q_{2o})/(q_1/q_{1o})$ is greater than one, then the flow profile is improved by the gel treatment. In contrast, if the expression is less than one, the flow profile is impaired.

Figure 8 illustrates the case where a "weak" gel is formed (i.e, F_{rr}=10), while Fig. 9 illustrates the case where a "strong" gel is formed (i.e, F_{rr}=1000). These figures show that even under the best circumstances, very high a_{r2} values and very high permeability ratios are required to significantly improve the injection profile. Thus, our results suggest that pH effects usually will not help much in eliminating the need for zone isolation during gel placement in radial flow (unfractured injection wells). A similar analysis reveals that pH effects are more likely to be useful during gel placement in linear flow (fractured wells).

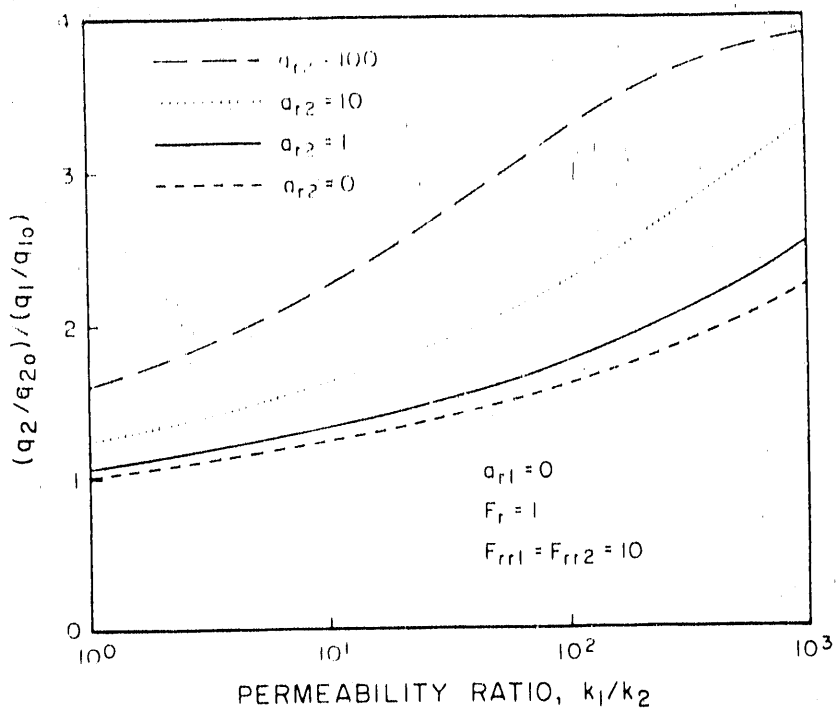


Fig. 8. Best-Case Profile Improvement in Radial Flow with a Weak Gel (F_{rr}=10).

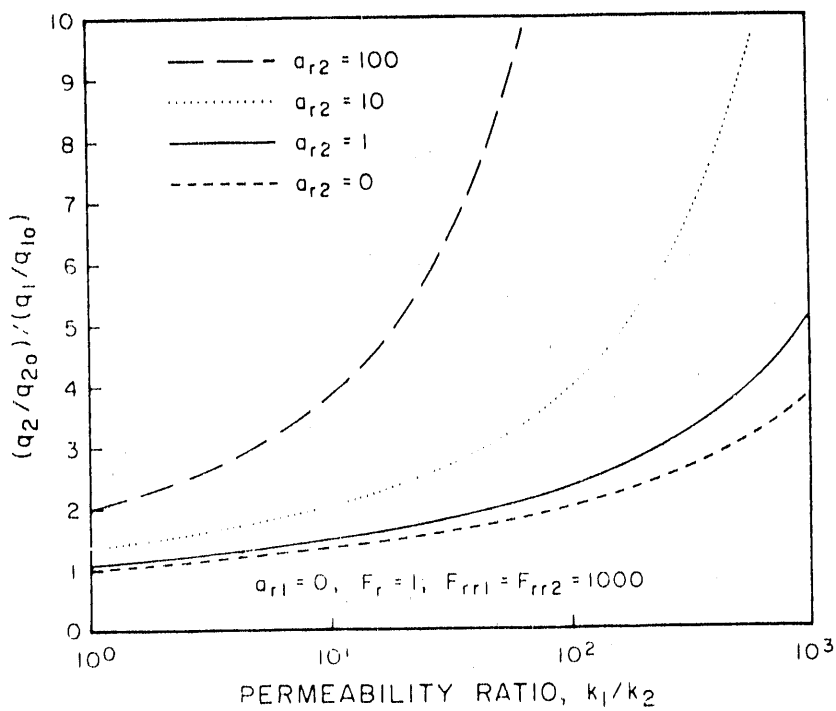


Fig. 9. Best-Case Profile Improvement in Radial Flow with a Strong Gel (F_{rr}=1000).

Conclusions

The following conclusions were reached during a study at 105°F of a gelant containing 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, and 0.5% KCl:

1. The product formed by the reaction of resorcinol with formaldehyde depends on pH. During studies of gelation in beakers, the strongest resorcinol-formaldehyde gels are formed at pH=9. The inherent permeability to water for this gel (no rock) was found to be 6 μD.

2. As the initial pH is decreased, gel formation becomes less perfect. With an initial pH of 7, an opaque orange-white gel is formed during beaker tests, and some free water remains after the reaction. As the initial pH value is decreased below 7, the final ratio of free water to gel increases.

3. During core experiments, residual resistance factors are very high (10^3-10^4) for gelants buffered and formed at pH=9. Tracer studies reveal that this gel occupies 87% to 99% of the available pore volume.

4. As pH is decreased during core experiments, the gelation reaction is inhibited. In particular, as gelation pH decreases from 7 to 6, residual resistance factors decrease sharply from high to low values (e.g., from $\approx$1000 to 1). Tracer studies show that the fraction of the pore volume occupied by the gel generally decreases over this pH range.

5. In many core experiments, the results suggest that upon first exposure to a given fluid velocity, a certain amount of gel breaks down to allow a flow path through the porous medium. Flow of brine through this porous medium then appears more or less Newtonian until the previous maximum in fluid velocity is exceeded.

6. In general, residual resistance factors (F_{rr}) increased with decreased permeability. However, F_{rr} values can be significantly higher in sandstones than in less-permeable carbonate cores.

7. A simple mathematical model was used to assess whether pH effects can be exploited to optimize gel placement in injection wells. Our results suggest that pH effects usually will not help much in eliminating the need for zone isolation during gel placement in radial flow (unfractured injection wells).

4. A PRELIMINARY STUDY OF PERMEABILITY REDUCTION FOR CO_2 AND WATER USING A RESORCINOL-FORMALDEHYDE GEL

In recent years, gel treatments have been applied to reduce channeling in high-pressure gas floods.[3,4,46] Laboratory work has also been performed to assess the ability of various gels to divert CO_2.[29,30] With increasing interest in the use of gels to reduce channeling during high-pressure gas floods, the question arises, "How do the mechanisms for gas diversion differ from those for water diversion?" This report describes some experiments that were performed to assess how a resorcinol-formaldehyde gel will affect flow of CO_2 and water in Berea sandstone.

Flow of Brine and CO_2 Through Berea Prior to Gel Placement

Some initial studies were performed to characterize flow of brine and CO_2 through Berea sandstone prior to gel placement. The Berea core that was used in this work had a total length of 14.1 cm, a cross-sectional area of 10.03 cm^2, and a porosity of 0.238. The core was cast in a metal alloy (Cerrotru®). The core had one internal pressure tap that was located 1.65 cm from the inlet sand face. The first core segment was treated as a filter, while the second core segment (12.45-cm length) was used to measure mobilities and residual resistance factors. All experiments were performed at 105°F (41°C). Table 8 provides a summary of many of the experimental results.

The brine contained 0.5% KCl and 0.05 M phosphate (0.34% KH_2PO_4, 0.355% Na_2HPO_4). The phosphate was used to buffer the brine at pH=6.5. (In future experiments, we will probably switch to a bicarbonate buffer to more closely imitate field brines.) The viscosity of this brine was 0.70 cp at 105°F. For the Berea core, the absolute permeability to brine was 516 md. The mobility of this brine (at 105°F) was 737 md/cp. During injection with a 1500-psi (102-atm) back pressure, the mobility of brine was the same as that at atmospheric pressure. Figure 10 shows the tracer results that were obtained during this work. These studies involved injecting a brine bank that contained potassium iodide as a tracer. The tracer concentration in the effluent was monitored spectrophotometrically at a wavelength of 230 nm. The circles in Fig. 10 show tracer results during brine injection before introduction of either CO_2 or gel. The dispersivity value (α_i) associated with this curve is 0.060 cm. (For all of the tracer studies described in this section, an error-function solution[52] fit the tracer curves fairly well.)

During continuous injection of CO_2 (15.7 to 31.4 ft/d at 1500 psi), an end-point mobility of 1466 md/cp was measured in the second core segment. During continuous brine injection (15.7 ft/d at 1500 psi) after the CO_2 flood, the brine mobility was found to be 628 md/cp. After these steps, the core was depressurized so that a second tracer study could be performed. The triangles in Fig. 10 show tracer results during brine injection with a residual CO_2 saturation. The tracer curve indicates that the residual CO_2 saturation occupies only 7% of the pore volume at atmospheric pressure. (This was judged using the 50% concentration level for the tracer effluent.) Also, this residual CO_2 saturation did not significantly change the dispersivity (α_f/α_i=1.15).

TABLE 8
Summary of CO_2 Coreflood, 105°F
Brine contains 0.5% KCl, 0.05 M phosphate, pH=6.5.
Gelant contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, and brine components.
Berea sandstone core: L_t=14.1 cm, A=10.03 cm^2, k_b=516 md, ϕ=0.238.

Mobility of brine before first CO_2 and before gel: 737 md/cp.
Mobility of CO_2 before gel: 1466 md/cp.
Mobility of brine after first CO_2 but before gel: 628 md/cp.

Mobility of fluids after gel placement:

Injectant	Flux (ft/d)	Pore Volumes Injected	Mobility (md/cp)	Residual Resistance Factor	
Brine	0.202	1.5	3.40	185	
Brine	1.57	0.5	3.18	197	
Brine	6.28	2.0	3.25	193	$\bar{F}_{rr}$=192
Brine	15.7	2.3	3.27	192	
CO_2	15.7	1.9	70.9	20.7	
CO_2	3.14	1.9	55.0	26.7	$\bar{F}_{rr}$=23.7
Brine	15.7	2.2	25.7	24.4	
Brine	3.14	1.0	22.7	27.6	$\bar{F}_{rr}$=27.1
Brine	0.393	0.4	21.5	29.2	

Flow of Brine and CO_2 Through Berea After Gel Placement

The gelant used in this study contained 3% resorcinol and 3% formaldehyde, in addition to the components that were included with the brine. The pH of the gelant was 6.5. A total of 3.6 pore volumes of gelant was injected using a flux of 15.7 ft/d (at atmospheric pressure). The core was then shut in for three days (at atmospheric pressure) to allow gelation to occur. The gelation time was about five hours both for gelant that had passed through the core and for gelant that was not injected.

Three days after shutting in the core, brine was again injected using a variety of injection rates (with 1500-psi back pressure). Residual resistance factors (F_{rr}) were determined for each injection rate. These F_{rr} values were determined by dividing brine mobility before gel placement (628 md/cp) by brine mobility after gel placement. Between flux values of 0.2 ft/d and 15.7 ft/d, F_{rr} values averaged 192 during the first stage of brine injection after gelation (see Table 8). No visible sign of gel was found in the effluent during brine injection.

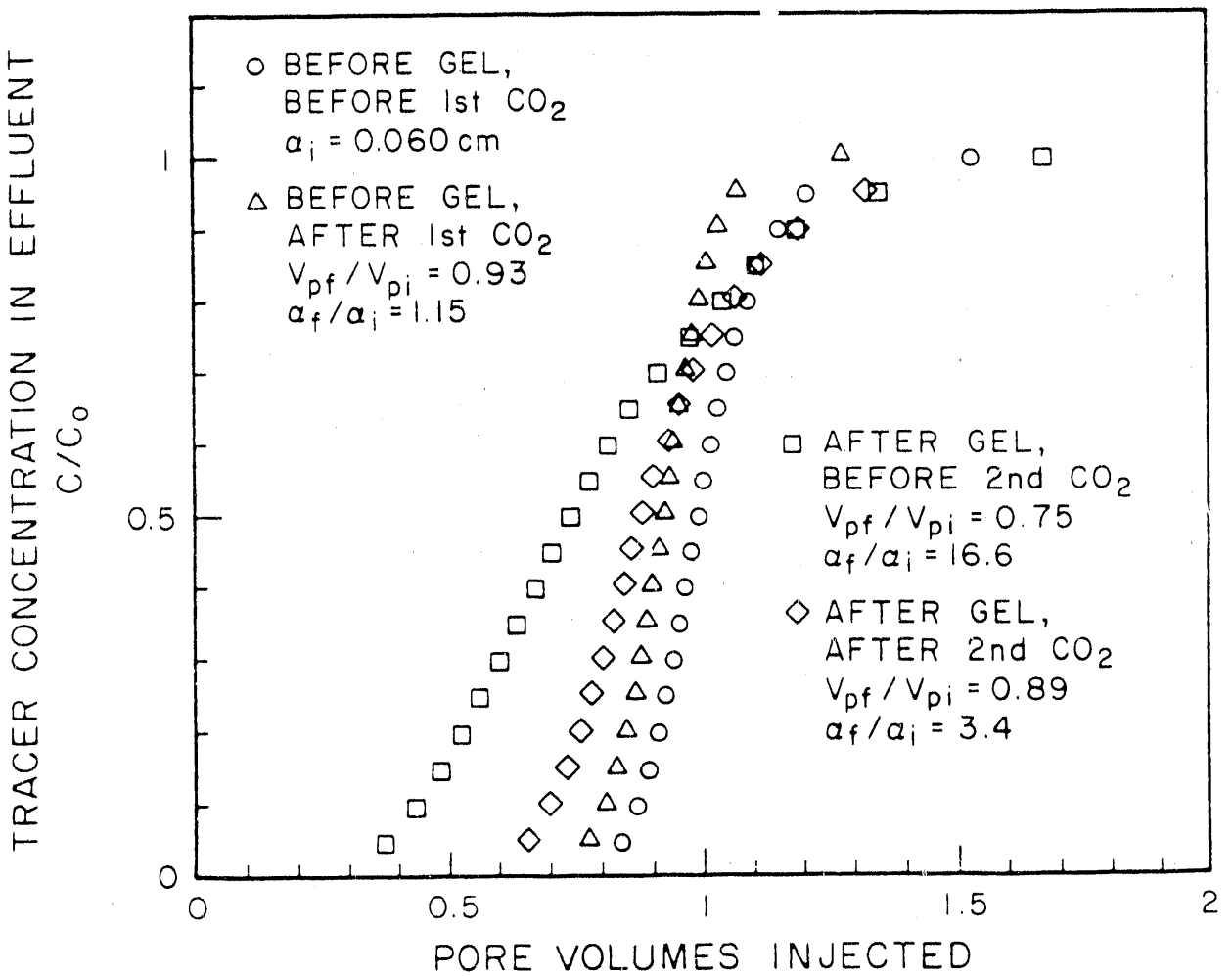


Fig. 10. Results from Tracer Studies during CO_2 Experiments.

After determination of brine F_{rr} values, the core was depressurized and additional tracer studies were conducted. The resulting tracer curve (squares in Fig. 10) indicates that 75% of the original pore volume was occupied by water. Therefore, gel and residual CO_2 occupied the remaining 25% of the pore volume. The tracer curves also reveal that the dispersivity (α_f) at this time was 16.6 times greater than the original dispersivity of the core (α_i).

Next, CO_2 was injected at fluxes ranging from 3.14 to 15.7 ft/d (at 1500 psi). During this stage, the residual resistance factor for CO_2 was found to average 23.7 (see Table 8). These residual resistance factors were determined by dividing CO_2 mobility before gel placement (1466 md/cp) by CO_2 mobility after gel placement. Then brine was injected at fluxes between 0.393 ft/d and 15.7 ft/d (at 1500 psi). Residual resistance factors for water during this stage averaged 27.1. This value is seven times less than the value obtained just before the last CO_2 injection.

Using a slightly lower concentration of this type of gelant, an earlier study[30] found a F_{rr} value of 34.5 during initial brine injection after gelation. A F_{rr} value of 71.4 was found during the first CO_2 injection after gelation. During a second stage of brine injection, a F_{rr} value of 3.0 was observed. Thus, in both this work and the earlier work, F_{rr} values for brine decreased substantially during the first brine/CO_2 cycle. Differences exist in the magnitudes of the F_{rr} values for brine and CO_2 from the two studies. A number of factors could contribute to these differences. These include different permeabilities, core lengths, and gelant pH values.

Finally, the core in the present study was depressurized for one last tracer study. The diamonds in Fig. 10 show these results. The curve reveals that the fraction of pore volume occupied by gel and CO_2 had been reduced from 25% to 11%. Also, the relative dispersivity (α_f/α_i) had been reduced from 16.6 to 3.4. These observations support the idea that the gel had broken down during the latter stages of our experiments.

We recognize that the gas will expand during depressurization prior to the tracer studies. Therefore, we are concerned about the relevance of this study to what happens in field applications. In the future, we plan to procure a high-pressure detector that will be placed in-line during our high-pressure gas studies and that will allow tracer studies to be performed without depressurizing the core. The specifications of the high-pressure detector may require that our studies not exceed a pressure of 1000 psi. Ideally, future studies of this type will be conducted entirely at high pressure.

Summary

This study represents a preliminary effort to examine how gels reduce permeability to high-pressure gas relative to that for water. The procedures that were examined during this study will provide a basis for future experiments.

5. A PRELIMINARY STUDY OF PERMEABILITY REDUCTION FOR OIL AND WATER USING A RESORCINOL-FORMALDEHYDE GEL

Several researchers[56-60] reported that some polymers and gels can reduce permeability to water more than to oil. The objectives of our research in this area are to examine the reason why the disproportionate permeability reduction occurs and to identify conditions that maximize this phenomenon. We are also examining whether hysteresis of oil-water relative permeability curves occurs during the "pump-in, pump-out" sequence used during gel treatments in production wells. This report describes our initial work with a refined oil in Berea sandstone. This fluid-rock system is strongly water-wet. In future work, we will examine other gels, other lithologies, and fluid-rock systems of intermediate wettability.

Effect of Flow-Direction Reversal on End-Point Permeabilities Prior to Gel Placement

The core used in this work had a total length of 13.57 cm, and a cross-sectional area of 10.03 cm^2. The core was cast in a metal alloy and had one internal pressure tap located at 2.13 cm from the inlet rock face. The core was not fired. All experiments were performed at 105°F.

Some initial studies were performed to evaluate the effect of flow-direction reversal on end-point oil and water permeabilities. The brine contained 0.5% KCl. A Berea sandstone core (635-md absolute permeability to brine) was used as the porous medium, and a refined oil (Soltrol—130®) was used as the oil phase. The rock and fluid properties involved are listed in Table 9. The core was first saturated with brine, and the porosity and the permeability to brine were determined. It then went through a cycle of oilflooding followed by waterflooding to establish irreducible oil saturation. The end-point oil and water permeabilities were determined at the irreducible water saturation after the oilflood and the irreducible oil saturation after the waterflood, respectively. Then the flow direction was reversed and the procedure described above was repeated so that the effect of hysteresis could be determined. In order to verify that the results were reproducible, each step in the procedure described above was repeated twice. Table 10 provides a summary of the experimental results. Table 10 shows that the results were reproducible, and the end-point oil permeability was not affected by the flow-direction reversal. The end-point water permeability was slightly lower when the flow-direction was reversed. However, the effect was not large enough to be significant.

TABLE 9
Rock and Fluid Properties for Oil/Water Experiments

Core Properties:

Core Type: Berea Sandstone

L_t = 13.57 cm	V_p = 33.5 ml
r = 1.8 cm	ϕ = 0.244
A = 10.12 cm^2	k_b = 635 md

Fluid Properties:

Brine: 0.5% KCl, μ_b=0.6 cp (105°F)
Oil: Soltrol-130, μ_o = 1.05 cp (105°F)

TABLE 10
Effect of Flow-Direction Reversal on End-Point Permeabilities Prior to Gel Treatment

	S_{wr}	k'_o (md)	$\bar{k}'_o$ (md)
Drainage - 1	0.13	624	624.5
Drainage - 2	0.19	625	
Drainage - 3 (reversed)	0.23	570	612.0
Drainage - 4 (reversed)	0.15	654	
	S_{or}	k'_w (md)	$\bar{k}'_w$ (md)
Imbibition - 1	0.36	89	83.5
Imbibition - 2	0.32	78	
Imbibition - 3 (reversed)	0.37	69	66.0
Imbibition - 4 (reversed)	0.40	63	

Tracer studies were performed during this process. These studies involved injecting a brine bank that contained potassium iodide as a tracer. The tracer concentration in the effluent was monitored spectrophotometrically at a wavelength of 230 nm. The tracer breakthrough curves from our tracer studies are shown in Fig. 11. The results of tracer studies are summarized in Table 11. In Table 11, $V_{p50\%}$ refers to the number of pore volumes of tracer injected at the time when the 50% level of tracer concentration was observed in the effluent. No significant changes in pore volume and dispersivity were observed as a result of the flow-direction reversal.

Figure 12 presents the tracer breakthrough curves with and without residual oil present. As shown in the plot, an error-function solution fits the tracer curve fairly well when no residual oil was present. However, with the residual oil present, the error-function solution no longer fits the tracer curve well. There was a delay in reaching the injection tracer concentration compared with the error-function solution. The volume of tracer injected when the tracer concentration reached 50% of its injection value was also significantly less than the pore volume calculated by the material balance. (In Fig. 12 the $V_{p50\%}$ value for the case with S_{or}=0.36 was shifted from 0.4 to 1 to allow an easier comparison with the error-function solution.)

TABLE 11
Summary of the Results of Tracer Studies During Oil/Water Experiments

	$V_{p50\%}$	α (cm)
100% Brine Saturated	1.0	0.06
Imbibition - 1	0.407	2.27
Imbibition - 2	0.418	2.20
Imbibition - 3 (Reversed)	0.418	2.20
Imbibition - 4 (Reversed)	0.428	1.90
After Gel Treatment (Reversed)	0.446	1.86

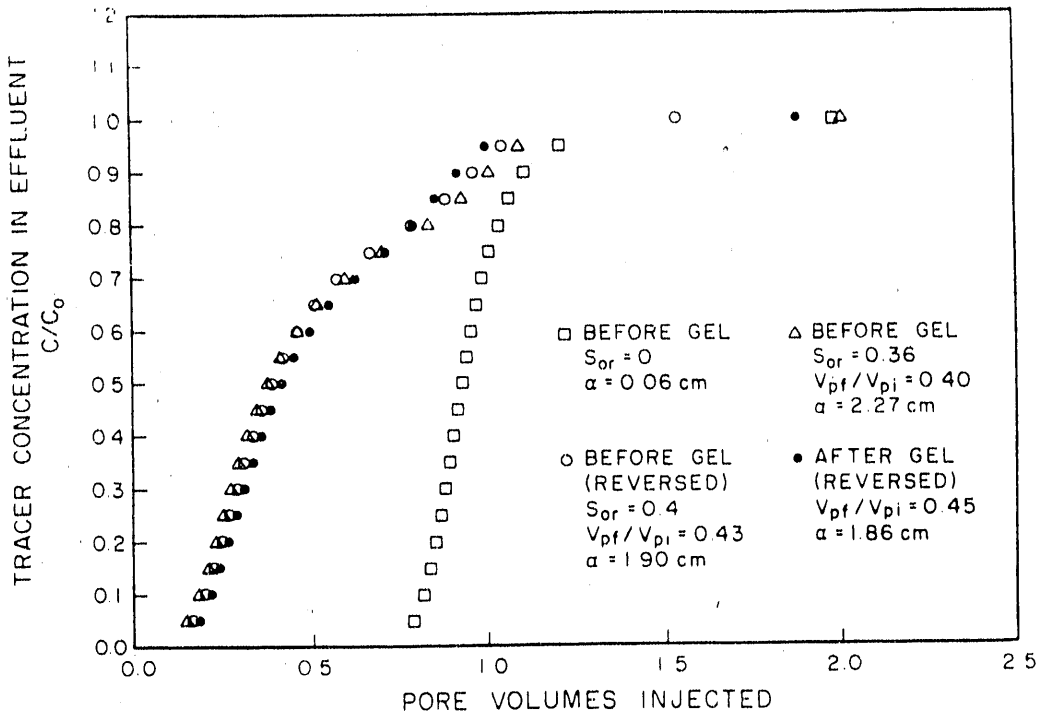


Fig. 11. Tracer Breakthrough Curves from Tracer Studies During Oil/Water Experiments.

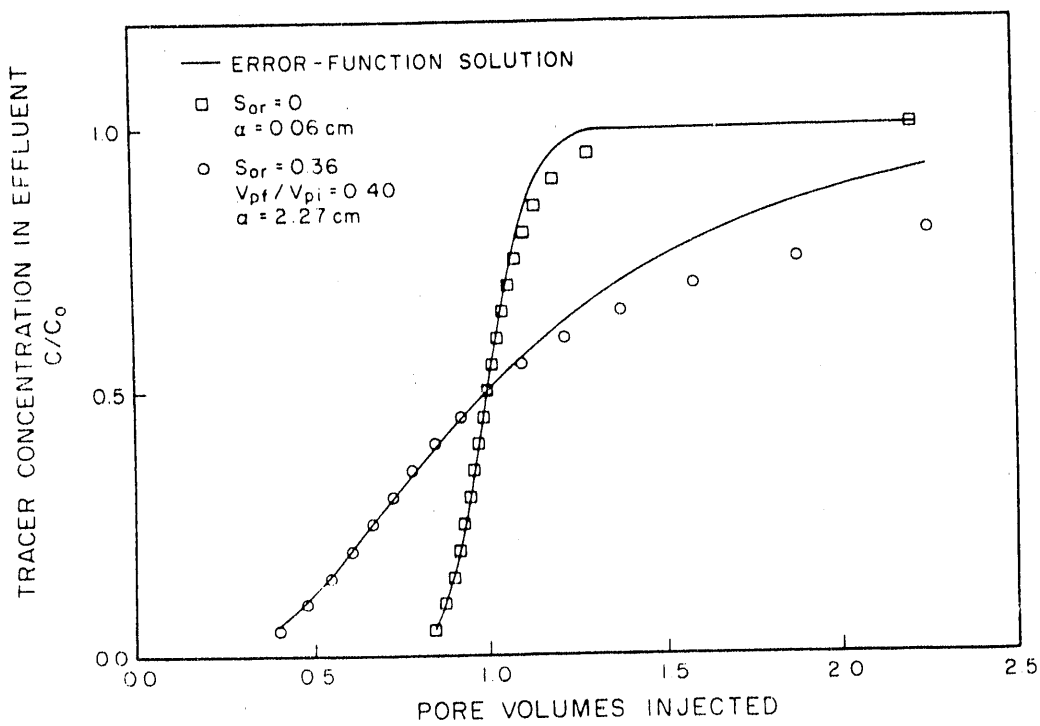


Fig. 12. Tracer Breakthrough Curves with/without Residual Oil Present.

Permeability Reduction After Gel Treatment

In order to simulate the "pump-in, pump-out" sequence used during gel treatments in production wells, the gelant was injected into the core from one direction and residual resistance factors (F_{rr}) were measured in the opposite direction.

Resistance factors (F_r) and effluent pH were monitored during the entire gelant-injection process. F_r values were near one during gelant injection. Effluent samples were collected and monitored to determine whether the gelation characteristics of the effluent differed from those of gelant that had not been injected. After injection of the gelant, the core was shut in for five days (at 105°F). After shut-in, brine was injected from the opposite direction to determine the residual resistance factors (F_{rr}) after gel treatment.

The gelant used in this study contained 3% resorcinol and 3% formaldehyde, in addition to the components that were included with the brine. Retention studies performed in cores that contained a residual oil saturation revealed that no significant level of resorcinol partitioned into the oil phase. We also examined how the presence of oil affects gelation. The presence of the refined oil had no effect on the gelation time or the appearance of the gel. No significant solubility of either resorcinol or formaldehyde was found in Soltrol—130®.

Acetic acid (0.05M) was used as a buffer, and the pH of the gelant was adjusted to 5 prior to injection. A total of 3.7 pore volumes of gelant was injected using a flux of 15.6 ft/d. The core was then shut in for five days to allow gelation to occur. After the shut-in period, brine was injected from the opposite direction and the residual resistance factor (F_{rr}) was found to be very close to 1. A comparison of the results of the tracer tests before and after gel treatment is shown in Table 11. This table shows no significant changes in either pore volume or dispersivity as a result of gel treatment. We suspect that larger F_{rr} values would have been observed if gelation had been allowed to occur at higher pH values. This will be investigated in future studies.

Summary

This study represents a preliminary effort to examine how gels reduce permeabilities to oil and water. The study also examines the effect of flow-direction reversal on oil and water permeabilities. The procedures that were examined during this study will provide a basis for future experiments.

6. RHEOLOGY OF CHROMIUM(III)-XANTHAN GELS AND GELANTS IN POROUS MEDIA

For many years, researchers have been aware of the non-Newtonian rheology of polymer solutions in porous media.[61-64] This has prompted some to speculate that non-Newtonian rheology may be exploitable in eliminating the need for zone isolation during gel placement.[65] We have examined the potential of this idea by performing calculations using eight different models of non-Newtonian rheology[25] (including shear-thickening models, shear-thinning models, and various combinations). These calculations suggest that the rheology of existing polymers will not eliminate the need for zone isolation during gel placement in unfractured injection wells. However, the validity of these calculations rests on several assumptions that need to be examined experimentally. First, the calculations assume that prior to gelation, the rheology of polymer solutions with crosslinkers is the same as that of polymer solutions without crosslinkers. Second, after gelation, the residual resistance factors are assumed to be independent of velocity and permeability. Third, the calculations assume that the wells are shut-in at the time gelation occurs. The calculations also assume that gels are not mobile. This report describes results of experiments that were designed to test some of the above assumptions for chromium(III)-xanthan gels in porous media.

Gelant Rheology in Porous Media Prior to Gelation

Our first experiments were designed to test whether the rheology of xanthan solutions in porous media prior to gelation depends on the presence of chromium. These experiments were performed using aqueous solutions that contained 3000-ppm xanthan, 3% NaCl, and 0.3% $CaCl_2$ at 85°F (29°C). When chromium(III) was included, a concentration of 90-ppm was used. Pfizer provided both the xanthan (Flocon 4800®) and the chromium (X-link 2000®) that were used in this work. In these core experiments, Berea sandstone cores were used that had diameters of 1.27 cm and lengths of 15.24 cm. All cores had one internal pressure tap that was located 2.54 cm from the inlet sand face. The cores had not been fired.

Viscosity vs. shear-rate data are shown in Fig. 13 for five 3000-ppm xanthan solutions:

(a) without chromium, before injection;
(b) without chromium, effluent from a 293-md core (after injecting 10 pore volumes);
(c) with 90-ppm Cr^{3+} (freshly mixed), before injection;
(d) with 90-ppm Cr^{3+}, effluent from a 293-md core (after injecting 10 pore volumes, 0.7 hours after gelant preparation);
(e) with 90-ppm Cr^{3+}, effluent from a 293-md core (after injecting 53 pore volumes, 4.5 hours after gelant preparation).

Except possibly at very low shear rates, there is no significant difference in rheology between the five different solutions—at least, not in the first several hours of the gelation process. The gelation time (as measured by monitoring viscosity at 1.75 s^{-1}) was 10.5 hours for gelant that was not injected into a core. The gelation time was about 8 hours for effluent that was collected after injection at a flux (volumetric flow rate per unit area) of 225 ft/d. Furthermore, the gel formed from this effluent was noticeably more rigid than the gel that was formed from gelant that had not been injected into the core.

The effect of Cr^{3+} on xanthan rheology (during the first seven hours of the gelation process) in 293-md Berea sandstone is shown in Fig. 14. Resistance factors shown in Fig. 14 are also listed in Tables 12 and 13. These tables list data in the chronological order in which they were collected. For the core experiments, the rheology of xanthan solutions without Cr^{3+} were determined first (Table 12a). Then, brine was injected to displace the xanthan and to determine residual resistance

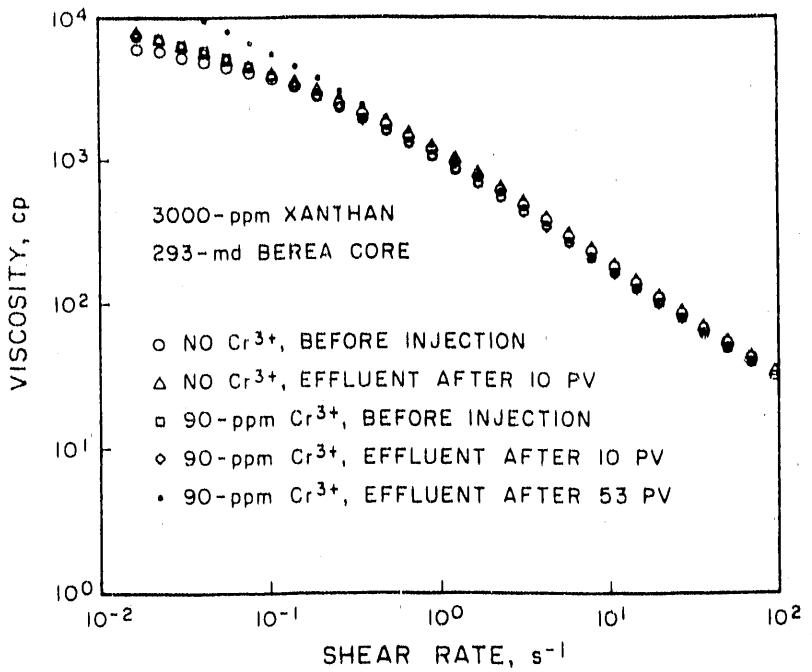


Fig. 13. Effect of Cr^{3+} and Flow through 293-md Berea on the Viscosity of 3000-ppm Xanthan.

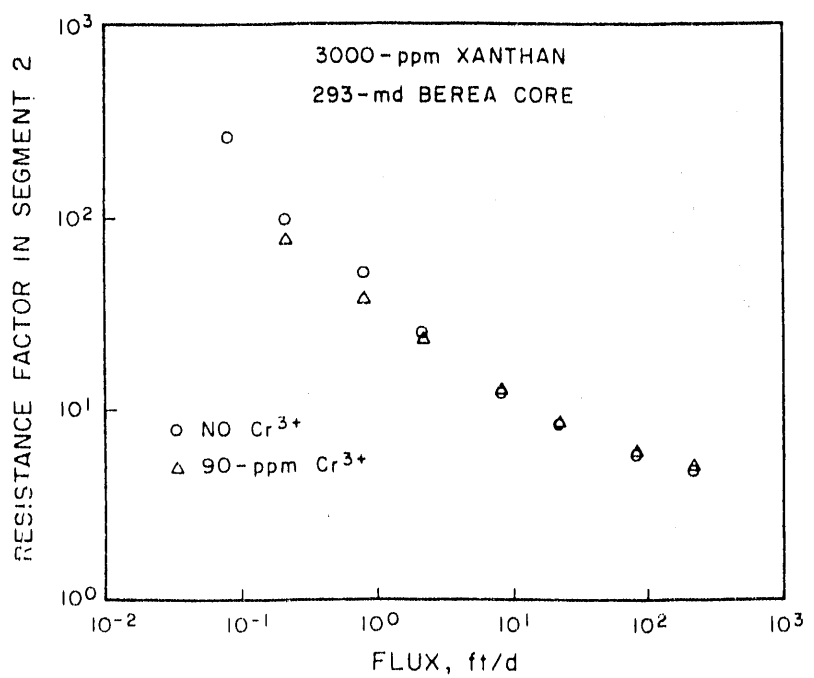


Fig. 14. Effect of Cr^{3+} on Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan in 293-md Berea.

factors as a function of flow rate (Table 12b). Next, xanthan solutions with 90-ppm Cr^{3+} were injected to determine resistance factors as a function of flow rate (Table 13a). This step was performed as early in the gelation process as was practical. Then, the core was shut-in for several days to allow gelation to proceed. Gel and gelant were removed from the flow lines, and gel was scraped from the sand faces. Finally, brine was injected to determine residual resistance factors as a function of flow rate (Table 13b). Resistance factors and residual resistance factors were monitored in both core segments.

TABLE 12
Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan (without Cr^{3+}) in 293-md Berea Sandstone

Total core length=15.24 cm, diameter=1.27 cm, ϕ=0.21.
Segment 1 length=2.54 cm, segment 2 length=12.7 cm, 85°F.

(a) Resistance factors during injection of 3000-ppm xanthan, 3% NaCl, 0.3% $CaCl_2$.

Flux (ft/d)	Injected Pore Volumes	Resistance Factors Segment 1	Segment 2
225	17.2	4.1	4.8
84.4	14.0	5.5	5.8
22.5	4.1	8.7	8.4
8.44	1.6	14.4	12.4
2.25	0.4	31.7	26.0
0.844	0.3	67.7	52.7
0.225	1.6	106-189*	101
0.0844	1.6	300-900*	268
0.225	1.7	323	125
0.844	0.3	121	47.9
2.25	1.2	58.0	26.2
8.44	4.7	22.3	12.6
22.5	6.7	12.4	8.2
84.4	6.5	6.5	5.7
225	9.3	4.6	4.6
Total:	71.2		

* Resistance factors in this segment rose steadily during the course of injection at this rate.

(b) Residual resistance factors during injection of brine with 3% NaCl, 0.3% $CaCl_2$.

Flux (ft/d)	Injected Pore Volumes	Residual Resistance Factors Segment 1	Segment 2
225	110.2	1.1	1.0
84.4	7.9	1.2	1.0
22.5	7.9	1.9	1.1
8.44	5.0	2.6	1.3
2.25	0.8	4.0	1.4
Total:	131.8		

TABLE 13
Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan with 90-ppm Cr^{3+} in 293-md Berea Sandstone

Total core length=15.24 cm, diameter=1.27 cm, ϕ=0.21.
Segment 1 length=2.54 cm, segment 2 length=12.7 cm, 85°F.

(a) Resistance factors during injection of 3000-ppm xanthan, 90-ppm Cr^{3+}, 3% NaCl, 0.3% $CaCl_2$.

Flux (ft/d)	Injected Pore Volumes	Resistance Factors Segment 1	Resistance Factors Segment 2	Time since gelant formulation (hrs)
225	27.3	5.5-6.1*	4.9	1.0
84.4	18.9	8.2-11.1*	5.9	1.6
22.5	5.2	15.5-25.7*	8.4	2.3
8.44	1.4	49-67*	12.5	2.8
2.25	1.2	164-783*	23.0	4.6
0.844	0.4	1970-3870*	37.3	5.9
0.225	0.1	14600-16300*	76	6.9
Total:	54.5			

* Resistance factors in this segment rose steadily during the course of injection at this rate.

(b) Residual resistance factors during injection of brine with 3% NaCl, 0.3% $CaCl_2$.
Core had been shut-in for four days to allow gelation.
Gel was removed from the sand faces prior to brine injection.
Viscosity of first pore volume of effluent during brine injection was 23.5 cp @ 11 s^{-1}.

Flux (ft/d)	Injected Pore Volumes	Residual Resistance Factors Segment 1	Residual Resistance Factors Segment 2
0.225	2.0	20-1100*	8.0**
0.844	0.8	745	3.4
2.25	1.2	431	2.3
8.44	2.2	130	1.7
22.5	3.4	70	1.4
84.4	7.4	14	1.1
225	30.0	12	1.1
84.4	13.9	9.6	1.2
22.5	4.5	9.0	1.3
8.44	3.6	10.8	1.6
2.25	1.4	19.3	2.0
0.844	0.5	52	3.1
Total:	70.9		

* Residual resistance factors in this segment rose steadily during the course of injection at this rate.
** Value at the end of 2 pore volumes. Unsteady values observed prior to this point.

Figure 14 shows that, during the first seven hours of the gelation process, the presence of 90-ppm Cr^{3+} does not significantly affect the rheology in porous media of a 3000-ppm xanthan solution. The same conclusion is reached for studies in 164-md Berea sandstone (see Figs. 15 and 16, and Tables 14 and 15). This conclusion also appears valid when a residual oil saturation is present (see Fig. 17 and Tables 16 and 17).

Some plugging (i.e., progressive increase in apparent resistance factor) of the first core segment was noted during the experiments with 293-md Berea (see Tables 12a, 13a, and 13b). However, this plugging was observed to a lesser extent during the experiments with 164-md Berea (see Table 15). The plugging appeared to be most severe at low flow rates. Sometimes, exposure to high flow rates could reverse the plugging to some extent (see Table 13b). Plugging was not observed in the core with a residual oil saturation. We believe that this plugging is an experimental artifact during our experiments. Based on our data, its presence or absence should not be correlated with permeability or oil saturation.

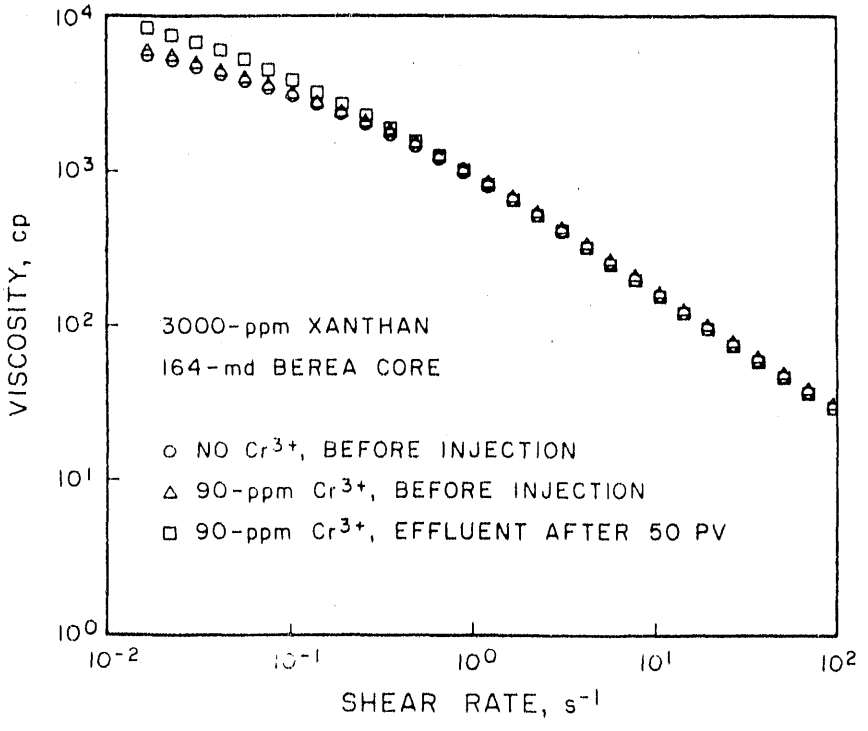


Fig. 15. Effect of Cr^{3+} and Flow through 164-md Berea on the Viscosity of 3000-ppm Xanthan.

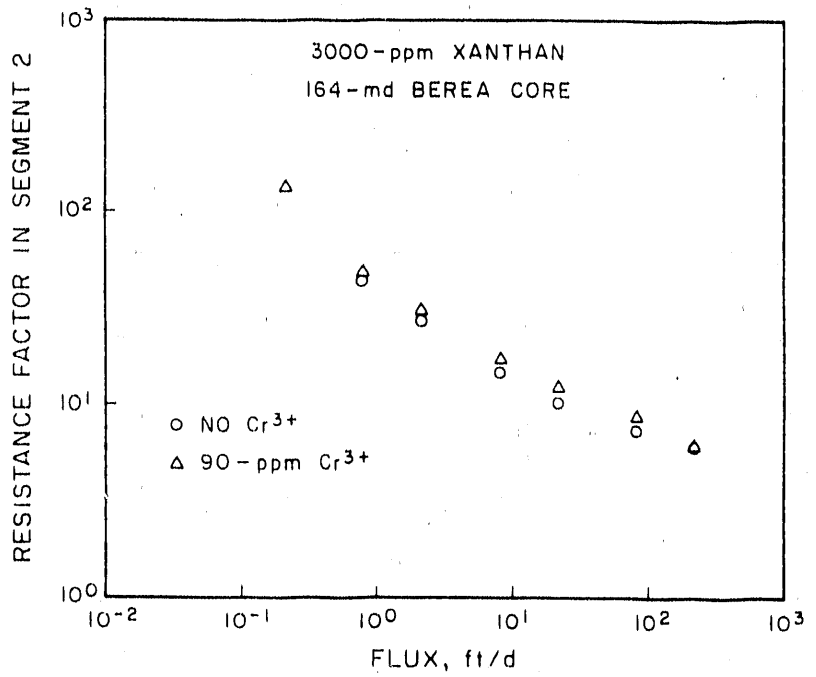


Fig. 16. **Effect of Cr^{3+} on Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan in 164-md Berea.**

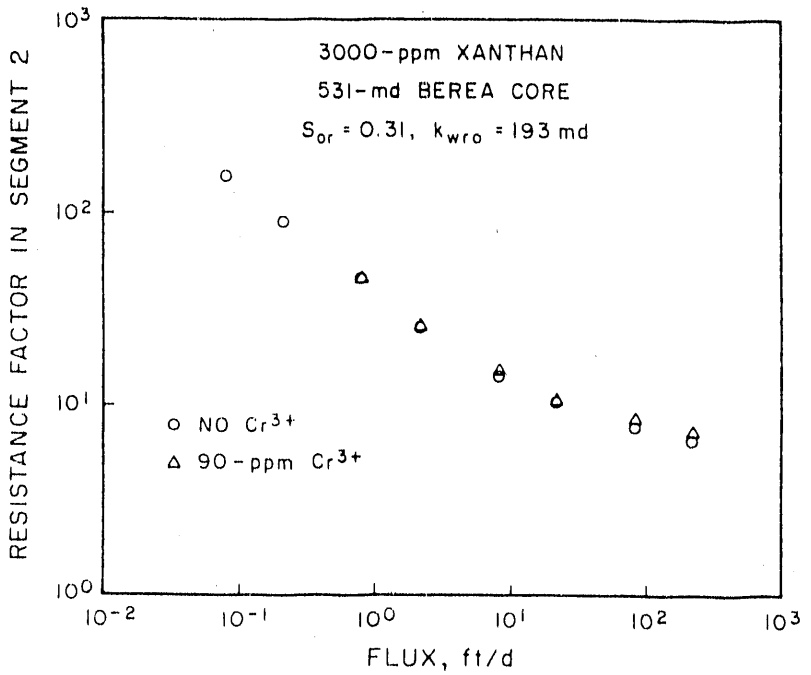


Fig. 17. **Effect of Cr^{3+} on Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan in 531-md Berea with S_{or}=0.31.**

TABLE 14
Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan (without Cr^{3+}) in 164-md Berea Sandstone

Total core length=15.24 cm, diameter=1.27 cm, ϕ=0.19.
Segment 1 length=2.54 cm, segment 2 length=12.7 cm, 85°F.

(a) Resistance factors during injection of 3000-ppm xanthan, 3% NaCl, 0.3% $CaCl_2$.

Flux (ft/d)	Injected Pore Volumes	Resistance Factors Segment 1	Segment 2
222	60.0	6.0	6.1
83.4	16.0	7.3	7.4
22.2	4.1	10.7	10.3
8.34	3.3	15.8	14.8
2.22	0.9	29.1	27.2
0.834	5.6	48.0	43.8
2.22	0.7	29.8	26.7
8.34	2.1	15.8	14.5
22.2	5.9	10.5	10.3
83.4	9.5	7.3	7.4
222	13.0	6.0	6.2
Total:	121.1		

(b) Residual resistance factors during injection of brine with 3% NaCl, 0.3% $CaCl_2$.

Flux (ft/d)	Injected Pore Volumes	Residual Resistance Factors Segment 1	Segment 2
222	100.0	1.8	1.7
83.4	24.5	2.0	1.8
22.2	2.8	2.4	2.2
8.34	2.3	3.2	2.6
2.22	1.1	5.3	4.0
0.834	0.3	10.4	6.2
Total:	131.0		

TABLE 15
Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan with 90-ppm Cr^{3+} in 164-md Berea Sandstone

Total core length=15.24 cm, diameter=1.27 cm, ϕ=0.21.
Segment 1 length=2.54 cm, segment 2 length=12.7 cm, 85°F.

(a) Resistance factors during injection of 3000-ppm xanthan, 90-ppm Cr^{3+}, 3% NaCl, 0.3% $CaCl_2$.

Flux (ft/d)	Injected Pore Volumes	Resistance Factors Segment 1	Resistance Factors Segment 2	Time since gelant formulation (hrs)
222	8.9	6.5	6.0	0.5
83.4	42.5	9.9	8.5	2.0
22.2	4.1	14.9	12.0	2.6
8.34	2.6	21.4	16.8	3.6
2.22	1.1	36.4	29.8	5.4
0.834	0.6	61.6	47.5	7.3
0.222	0.1	181	132	8.3
Total:	59.9			

(b) Residual resistance factors during injection of brine with 3% NaCl, 0.3% $CaCl_2$.
Core had been shut-in for six days to allow gelation.
Viscosity of first pore volume of effluent during brine injection was 8.8 cp @ 11 s^{-1}.

Flux (ft/d)	Injected Pore Volumes	Residual Resistance Factors Segment 1	Residual Resistance Factors Segment 2
0.222	2.2	---	---
0.834	1.6	48	6.5
2.22	1.2	22.9	3.3
8.34	2.2	14.1	3.1
22.2	5.3	8.2	2.6
83.4	7.4	4.6	2.2
222	34.0	3.2	1.9
83.4	6.5	3.6	2.0
22.2	5.8	4.9	2.3
8.34	4.1	7.4	2.6
2.22	2.7	26.0	3.4
0.834	0.4	54.6	4.7
0.222	1.7	109	7.1
Total:	75.1		

TABLE 16
Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan (without Cr^{3+})
in Berea Sandstone with a Residual Oil (n-dodecane) Saturation

Brine permeability (prior to oil saturation)=531 md.
ϕ=0.207. k_{ocw}=350 md. k_{wro}=193 md. S_{or}=0.31.
Total core length=15.24 cm, diameter=1.27 cm.
Segment 1 length=2.54 cm, segment 2 length=12.7 cm, 85°F.

(a) Resistance factors during injection of 3000-ppm xanthan, 3% NaCl, 0.3% $CaCl_2$.

Flux (ft/d)	Injected Pore Volumes	Resistance Factors Segment 1	Segment 2
223	134.0	4.6	6.3
83.8	18.4	5.5	7.7
22.3	14.9	8.1	10.3
8.38	5.3	12.3	14.4
2.23	2.7	26.8	28.8
0.838	6.6	58.3	50.0
2.23	2.6	31.8	30.4
8.38	3.0	14.7	15.8
22.3	7.1	8.9	10.9
83.8	34.5	5.9	7.9
223	39.5	4.8	6.6
83.8	11.7	5.7	7.7
22.3	10.7	8.2	10.5
8.38	5.6	12.5	14.4
2.23	2.1	25.9	27.6
0.838	5.3	47.1	46.7
2.23	2.3	24.8	25.8
0.223	3.7	114	91.6
0.0838	0.8	170	160
Total:	310.8		

(b) Residual resistance factors during injection of brine with 3% NaCl, 0.3% $CaCl_2$.

Flux (ft/d)	Injected Pore Volumes	Residual Resistance Factors Segment 1	Segment 2
223	52.8	1.2	1.9
83.8	14.0	1.2	1.9
22.3	10.2	1.3	2.0
8.38	6.9	1.8	2.3
2.23	0.7	2.1	2.9
8.38	2.2	1.9	2.4
22.3	5.2	1.4	2.1
83.8	3.3	1.3	2.0
223	36.4	1.5	2.1
0.838	0.4	3.7	3.2
Total:	132.1		

TABLE 17
Rheology of 3000-ppm Xanthan with 90-ppm Cr^{3+}
in Berea Sandstone with a Residual Oil (n-dodecane) Saturation

Brine permeability (prior to oil saturation)=531 md.
ϕ=0.207. k_{ocw}=350 md. k_{wro}=193 md. S_{or}=0.31.
Total core length=15.24 cm, diameter=1.27 cm.
Segment 1 length=2.54 cm, segment 2 length=12.7 cm, 85°F.

(a) Resistance factors during injection of 3000-ppm xanthan, 90-ppm Cr^{3+}, 3% NaCl, 0.3% $CaCl_2$.

Flux (ft/d)	Injected Pore Volumes	Resistance Factors Segment 1	Resistance Factors Segment 2	Time since gelant formulation (hrs)
223	23.0	5.7	7.1	1.2
83.8	19.1	6.7	8.3	1.8
22.2	5.6	9.7	10.4	2.6
8.38	2.4	14.3	15.0	3.5
2.22	1.1	26.4	25.7	5.3
0.838	0.3	49.0	45.0	6.3
Total:	51.5			

(b) Residual resistance factors during injection of brine with 3% NaCl, 0.3% $CaCl_2$.
Core had been shut-in for six days to allow gelation.
Viscosity of first pore volume of effluent during brine injection was 10.6 cp @ 11 s^{-1}.

Flux (ft/d)	Injected Pore Volumes	Residual Resistance Factors Segment 1	Residual Resistance Factors Segment 2
0.838	6.8	6.0*	6.5*
2.23	3.3	5.0	4.9
8.38	4.9	3.0	3.7
22.3	9.6	2.4	3.1
83.8	12.6	1.9	2.4
223	74.2	1.5	1.9
83.8	15.4	1.4	2.0
22.3	8.8	1.5	2.1
8.38	4.9	2.0	2.4
2.23	1.7	2.4	2.8
0.838	5.7	3.4	3.4
Total:	147.9		

* Value at the end of 6.8 pore volumes.

Rheology During Gelation

Researchers at the University of Kansas[66,67] have examined the flow of Cr^{3+}-xanthan gelants in sandpacks. They believe that filtration of polymer aggregates plays an important role in permeability reduction during gel treatments.[66,68] A filtration mechanism is most likely to be important if flow is occurring at the time when polymer aggregates grow to the size of pore throats. However, early in the gelation process (when polymer aggregates are small or are present in very low concentrations), filtration may not be important. Our resistance-factor data show that, early in the gelation process, the rheology of Cr^{3+}-xanthan gelants is not significantly different from that of a xanthan solution without Cr^{3+}. Data from the University of Kansas do not contradict this finding.[66,67]

How long after the gelant is prepared does the filtration mechanism become important? Our data indicate that the rheology in porous media remains unchanged for at least half of the time required for the onset of gelation to be noticed in a beaker or viscometer. Data from the literature (see Table 18) suggest that even longer time periods may be required for the filtration mechanism to be important for Cr^{3+}-xanthan gelants. (The data listed in Table 18 refer to gelants that contain 1500-ppm xanthan, 50-ppm Cr^{3+}.)

Shutting in wells after gelant injection is a common practice. Therefore, if the well is shut in relatively early in the gelation process, a filtration mechanism may not be important.

If flow is still occurring at the time when significant polymer aggregates develop, of course, filtration may be important. During the filtration process, will polymer aggregates plug low-permeability zones to a greater extent than high-permeability zones? Intuitively, we expect the answer to this question to be "yes." Consistent with intuition, Hejri *et al.*[66] noted that resistance factors for Cr^{3+}-xanthan polymer aggregates increased with decreasing permeability. More work is needed to fully assess the impact of filtration on the effectiveness of gel treatments.

Effect of Flow Through Porous Media on Gelation Time

We noted that flow through Berea at high rates (225 ft/d) decreased the gelation time for a gelant that contained 3000-ppm xanthan and 90-ppm Cr^{3+}. In contrast, Hejri *et al.*[66] and Garver *et al.*[42] found that flow through sandpacks and Berea sandstone increased the gelation time for more dilute Cr^{3+}-xanthan gelants. Hejri *et al.* used gelants with 1500-ppm xanthan and 50-ppm Cr^{3+}, while Garver *et al.* used gelants with 500-ppm to 1000-ppm xanthan and with 50-ppm to 150-ppm Cr^{3+}. Interestingly, Jousset *et al.*[67] found cases where flow through sandpacks did not change the gelation time significantly for a gelant that contained 1500-ppm xanthan and 50-ppm Cr^{3+}. Clearly, more work is needed to resolve how flow through porous media affects gelation.

TABLE 18
Gelation Onset for Cr^{3+}-Xanthan Gelants
(1500-ppm xanthan, 50-ppm Cr^{3+})

Time until onset of gelation noticed in a viscometer	Time until onset of gelation noticed in porous media	Literature source
11-17 hours	50 hours	Figs. 2 & 4 of Ref. 66
11-17 hours	45 hours	Figs. 2 & 6 of Ref. 66
11-17 hours	18 hours	Figs. 2 & 3 of Ref. 67
11-17 hours	33 hours	Figs. 2 & 7 of Ref. 67
11-17 hours	21 hours	Figs. 2 & 8 of Ref. 67
11-17 hours	28 hours	Figs. 2 & 9 of Ref. 67

Rheology During Brine Injection After Gelation

Our most disturbing finding was that residual resistance factors were very low during brine injection after gelation (see Tables 13b, 15b, and 17b). In general, residual resistance factors for the Cr^{3+}-xanthan gels were not much greater than those for xanthan solutions without Cr^{3+} (compare with Tables 12b, 14b, and 16b).

Why were residual resistance factors so low? We note that the pH of freshly prepared Cr^{3+}-xanthan gelant was 3.8. We also note that if pH was maintained at a value of 7 (using buffers), gelation did not occur. Reservoir rocks usually have a tremendous capacity to buffer aqueous solutions near neutral pH.[38,47-50] Therefore, contact with reservoir rock could render Cr^{3+}-xanthan gelants ineffective by changing pH and inhibiting gelation.

Do our low residual resistance factors contradict previous literature reports? Several researchers[33,66,67] noted substantial residual resistance factors for Cr^{3+}-xanthan gels (as high as 9200). These researchers often used lower polymer and Cr^{3+} concentrations (e.g., 1500-xanthan, 50-ppm Cr^{3+}) than those used in our study. Thus, our low residual resistance factors appear surprising upon first consideration. However, the previous researchers performed their studies using sandpacks (with Ottawa sand). These sandpacks do not contain clays or carbonate minerals (e.g., dolomite, calcite, siderite) that are responsible for the buffering capacity of reservoir rocks. Therefore, it is not surprising that gelation in these sandpacks is not inhibited to the extent observed in consolidated sandstones.

In order to achieve higher residual resistance factors, additional core experiments were performed using a gelant that contained 4000-ppm xanthan and 154-ppm Cr^{3+}. The brine for these experiments contained 0.5% KCl, and the temperature was 105°F (41°C). The viscosity of this brine was 0.65 cp at 105°F. After saturation with brine and determination of permeabilities and porosities, tracer studies were performed to determine dispersivity values (α_l) for the cores. Gelant was then placed in the cores using a flux of 15.7 ft/d. The cores were then shut in for several days to allow gelation to occur. After gelation, brine was injected to determine residual resistance factors. Finally,

tracer studies were again performed to determine the final dispersivity values (α_f) and the relative changes in pore volume (V_{pf}/V_{pi}) that were caused by the gel.

One core experiment (in 77-md Berea) was performed using a Cr^{3+}-xanthan gelant without adjustment of pH. This gelant had an initial pH value of 4. The gelation time for this gelant (at 105°F) was six hours, and a rigid gel was formed. However, we noted that this gelant had very little buffering capacity (i.e., its pH could be changed very easily). During injection of gelant at pH=4, we also noted that the pH of the effluent remained near neutral after several pore volumes. We were concerned that a pH value of 4 was not representative of the pH experienced by the gelant in the core. Therefore, we performed two core experiments (in 66-md Berea and in 483-md Berea) in which the pH was 7 for the injected gelant.

Residual resistance factors after gel placement are shown in Figs. 18-20 and Tables 19-21 for three different Berea cores. In all three cores, residual resistance factors decreased significantly with increased flux. Equations that describe the relation between residual resistance factor (F_{rr}) and flux (u, in ft/d) are included in Figs. 18-20. Power-law exponents for the relations vary from -0.29 to -0.55. Of course, brine is a Newtonian fluid, so the apparent "shear-thinning" behavior must be attributed to the gel in the core rather than to the brine. The apparent shear-thinning behavior generally is not due to gel mobilization upon exposure to successively higher flow rates. Stable pressure drops were quickly achieved at a given flux. Also, residual resistance factors at a given flux in a given core were fairly reproducible (see Tables 19-21). (Again, these tables list data in the chronological order in which they were collected.)

We noted that Cr^{3+}-xanthan gelants that were buffered at pH=7 did not appear to gel during beaker tests. Based on this observation we expected to see low residual resistance factors for the gelants that were injected at pH=7. Thus, we were somewhat surprised that residual resistance factors for gelant at pH=7 were generally higher than those for gelant at pH=4 (except at high flux values).

Figures 21-23 show results of tracer studies that were performed before and after gel placement in the three cores, respectively. (The tracer bank contained potassium iodide that was monitored spectrophotometrically at 230 nm.) In all three cores, the gel increased dispersivity values (by factors ranging from 5.5 to 17.8). The 50% concentration level for tracer effluent provides an indication of the fraction of original pore volume (V_{pf}/V_{pi}) that remains after gelation. This fraction ranged from 0.55 to 1. In 77-md Berea, the gel formed from gelant at pH=4 apparently occupies 45% of the original pore volume (see Fig. 21). In contrast, in 483-md Berea, the gel formed from gelant at pH=7 apparently occupies an insignificant fraction of the original pore volume (see Fig. 23). How can a gel reduce permeability by a factor ranging from 50 to 714 (Table 21) and yet occupy a very small fraction of the pore volume? Perhaps, small gel particles lodge in pore throats—thereby, dramatically reducing brine permeability without occupying much volume. We hope to address this question in more detail during some of our future studies with Cr^{3+}-xanthan gels and gelants.

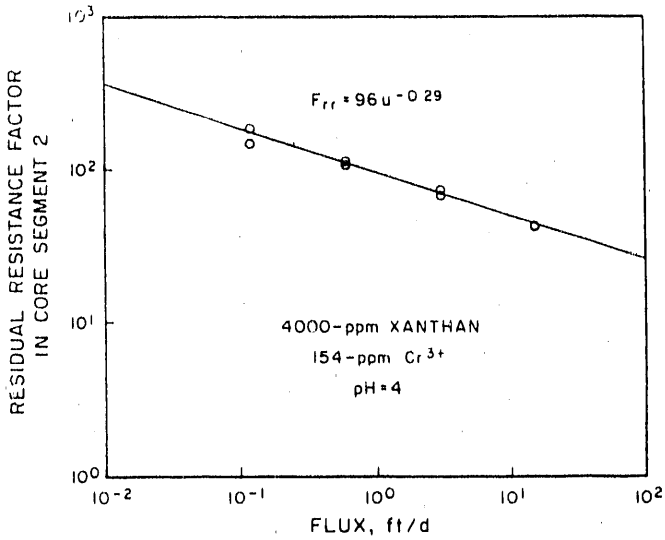


Fig. 18. **Residual Resistance Factor vs. Flux in 77-md Berea. Initial Gelant pH=4.**

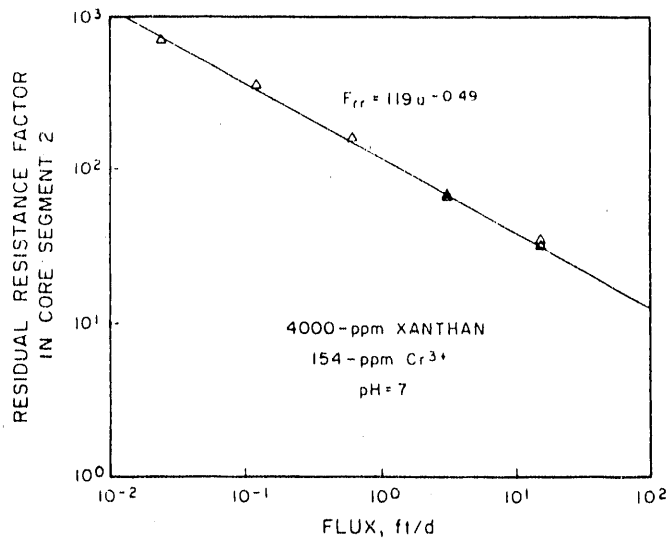


Fig. 19. **Residual Resistance Factor vs. Flux in 66-md Berea. Initial Gelant pH=7.**

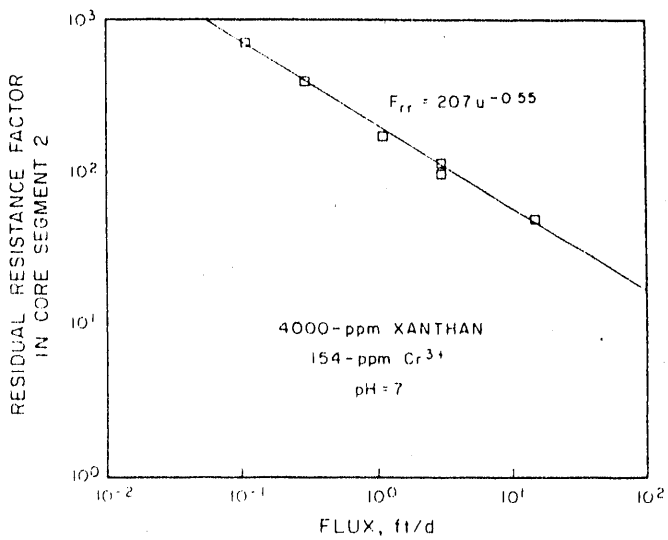


Fig. 20. **Residual Resistance Factor vs. Flux in 483-md Berea. Initial Gelant pH=7.**

TABLE 19
Residual Resistance Factors After Placement and Gelation in 77-md Berea Sandstone, ϕ=0.184. Initial gelant pH=4.

4000-ppm Xanthan, 154-ppm Cr^{3+}, 0.5% KCl, pH=4, 105°F.
Total core length=13.44 cm, diameter=3.57 cm.
Segment 1 length=2.44 cm, segment 2 length=11.4 cm.
Dispersivity before gel placement (α_i)=0.210 cm.
Dispersivity after gel placement (α_f)=1.163 cm.
α_i/α_f=5.54.
Fraction of original pore volume left after gelation=0.55

Flux (ft/d)	Residual resistance factor in core segment 2
0.126	190
0.628	115
3.14	68
15.7	43
3.14	74
0.628	109
0.126	151
15.7	42

TABLE 20
Residual Resistance Factors After Placement and Gelation in 66-md Berea Sandstone, ϕ=0.185. Initial gelant pH=7.

4000-ppm Xanthan, 154-ppm Cr^{3+}, 0.5% KCl, pH=7, 105°F.
Total core length=14.32 cm, diameter=3.57 cm.
Segment 1 length=1.69 cm, segment 2 length=12.63 cm.
Dispersivity before gel placement (α_i)=0.157 cm.
Dispersivity after gel placement (α_f)=2.534 cm.
α_i/α_f=16.2.
Fraction of original pore volume left after gelation=0.84

Flux (ft/d)	Residual resistance factor in core segment 2
15.7	34
3.14	67
15.7	31
3.14	65
0.628	157
0.025	690
0.126	348
15.7	31

TABLE 21
Residual Resistance Factors After Placement and Gelation in 483-md Berea Sandstone, ϕ=0.219. Initial gelant pH=7.

4000-ppm Xanthan, 154-ppm Cr^{3+}, 0.5% KCl, pH=7, 105°F.
Total core length=14.44 cm, diameter=3.57 cm.
Segment 1 length=1.74 cm, segment 2 length=12.7 cm.
Dispersivity before gel placement (α_i)=0.088 cm.
Dispersivity after gel placement (α_f)=1.566 cm.
α_i/α_f=17.8.
Fraction of original pore volume left after gelation≈1

Flux (ft/d)	Residual resistance factor in core segment 2
3.10	116
1.161	175
0.310	400
0.116	714
15.48	50
3.10	99

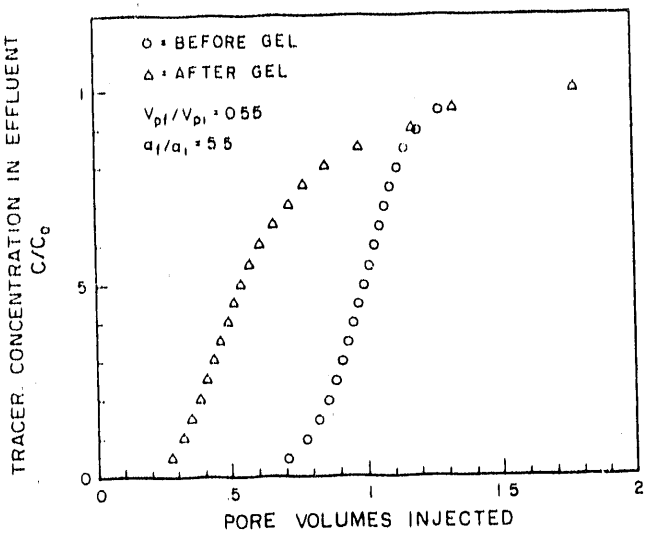


Fig. 21. Tracer Effluent Curves During Brine Injection Before vs. After Gel Placement in 77-md Berea. Initial Gelant pH=4.

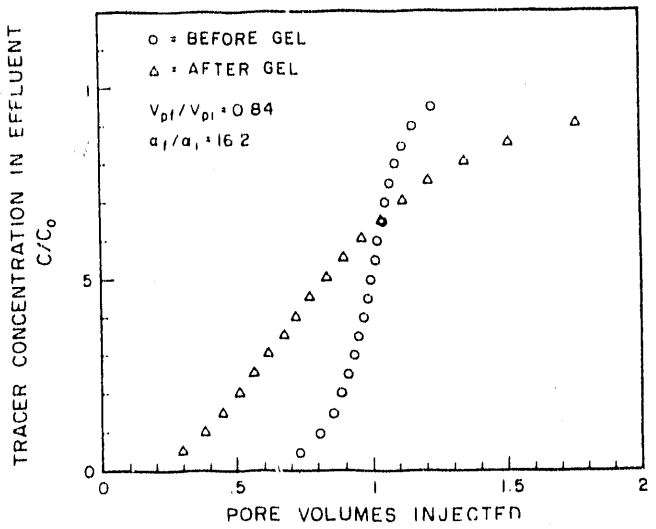


Fig. 22. Tracer Effluent Curves During Brine Injection Before vs. After Gel Placement in 66-md Berea. Initial Gelant pH=7.

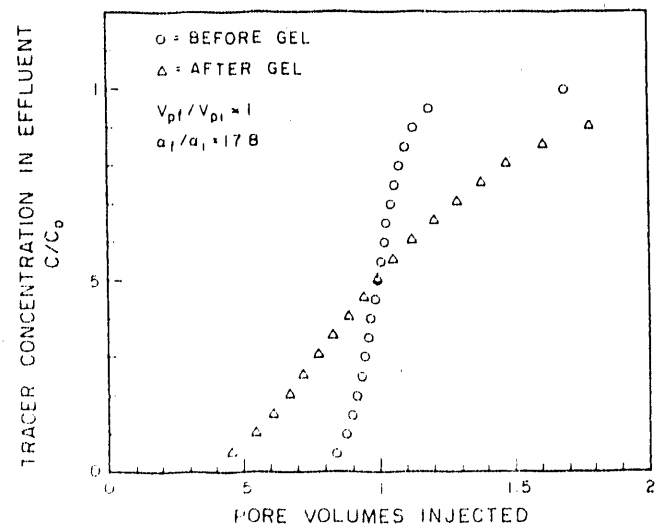


Fig. 23. Tracer Effluent Curves During Brine Injection Before vs. After Gel Placement in 483-md Berea. Initial Gelant pH=7.

Example Calculations for an Unfractured Injection Well

The previous information can be used to estimate the effects of a gel treatment in an unfractured injection well. For example, let's consider a reservoir with two noncommunicating layers. Layer 1 has a permeability (k_1) of 483 md and a porosity (ϕ_1) of 0.219. Layer 2 has a permeability (k_2) of 66 md and a porosity (ϕ_2) of 0.185. The wellbore radius (r_o) is 0.5 ft. The pressure drop (downhole) between this unfractured injection well and a nearby production well (in a five-spot pattern) is maintained constant at 1000 psi.

Let r_{pm} be defined as the greatest radius from the injection well to which gel will ultimately penetrate into the most-permeable layer. During water injection before the gel treatment, the total pressure drop (ΔP_t) between the injection well and the production well in layer 1 can be separated into two components,

$$\Delta P_t = \Delta P_{w1} + \Delta P_{\Psi 1} \tag{8}$$

where ΔP_{w1} is the pressure drop in layer 1 between the injection well and r_{pm}, and $\Delta P_{\Psi 1}$ is the pressure drop between r_{pm} and the production well. Let Ψ_1 be defined by Eq. 9.

$$\Psi_1 = \Delta P_{\Psi 1}/\Delta P_{w1} \tag{9}$$

Because of the way in which Ψ is defined, we know that

$$\Delta P_t = (\Psi_1+1)\Delta P_{w1} \tag{10}$$

During water injection before the gel treatment, we will assume that $\Psi_1=\Psi_2=2$. See Refs. 24 and 25 for further explanation of Ψ.

Prior to the gel treatment, we will assume that the volume within 50 feet from the injection well has been swept to the same residual (irreducible) oil saturation in both layers. Thus, only water is flowing between the injector and r_{pm}. So,

$$\Delta P_t = (\Psi_1+1)[q_1/(2\pi h_1)](\mu_w/k_1)[\ln(r_{pm}/r_o)] \tag{11}$$

We know that the fluid flux (u_1) at the wellbore sand face in layer 1 is related to injection rate in layer 1 (q_1) by

$$u_1 = q_1/(2\pi h_1 r_o) \tag{12}$$

So, Eq. 11 becomes

$$\Delta P_t = (\Psi_1+1)(u_1 r_o)(\mu_w/k_1)[\ln(r_{pm}/r_o)] \tag{13}$$

Solving for u_1 and substituting appropriate values, we find that

$$u_1 = (1000/14.7)/[(2+1)(0.5)(12)(2.54)(0.65/0.483)\ln(50/0.5)]$$

$$u_1 = 0.24 \text{ cm/s or } 680 \text{ ft/d.} \tag{14}$$

In a similar way, the flux (u_2) at the wellbore sand face in layer 2 is found to be 93.4 ft/d during brine injection prior to the gel treatment.

A gelant with 4000-ppm xanthan and 154-ppm Cr^{3+} at pH=7 will be injected (without isolating zones) until the gelant reaches a radius (r_{p1}) of 50 feet from the injector in layer 1. (So, r_{pm}=50 ft.) We assume that chemical retention and inaccessible pore volume are the same in 483-md rock as in 66-md rock. We also neglect diffusion and dispersion. (For a discussion of the impact of chemical retention, inaccessible pore volume, diffusion, and dispersion, see Refs. 24-26.)

We can estimate the minimum depth of penetration of gelant in layer 2. The minimum penetration (r_{p2}) into layer 2 will occur if the resistance factor (F_r) of the gelant is equal to one.[24,25] When F_r=1, Eq. 15 in Ref. 24 simplifies to

$$r_{p2} = [(\phi_1/\phi_2)(k_2/k_1)(r_{p1}^2-r_o^2)+r_o^2]^{0.5} \tag{15}$$

Thus, the minimum value for r_{p2} is

$$r_{p2} = [(0.219/0.185)(66/483)(50^2-0.5^2)+0.5^2]^{0.5} = \underline{20.2\ ft} \tag{16}$$

In reality, a viscous xanthan gelant will penetrate a greater distance into layer 2.[25] However, we will use the optimistic value of 20.2 ft in our subsequent calculations.

After injecting the gelant, the well is shut in to allow gelation. When brine injection is resumed, the total pressure drop between the injector and the production well can be separated into three components. In layer 1,

$$\Delta P_t = \Delta P_{p1} + \Delta P_{w1} + \Delta P_{\Psi 1} \tag{17}$$

In Eq. 17, ΔP_{p1} is the pressure drop across the gel bank in layer 1, i.e., between the injector and the outer radius (r_{p1}) of the gel bank in layer 1. Also, ΔP_{w1} is the pressure drop between r_{p1} and r_{pm}. This term can be evaluated using Eq. 18.

$$\Delta P_{w1} = (u_1 r_o)(\mu_w/k_1)[\ln(r_{pm}/r_{p1})] \tag{18}$$

In layer 1 this term is equal to zero since r_{p1}=r_{pm}. The term $\Delta P_{\Psi 1}$ in Eq. 17 can be evaluated using Eq. 19.

$$\Delta P_{\Psi 1} = (\Psi)(u_1 r_o)(\mu_w/k_1)[\ln(r_{pm}/r_o)] \tag{19}$$

Substituting appropriate values into Eq. 19 gives

$$\Delta P_{\Psi 1} = u_1(2)(0.5)(12)(2.54)(0.65/0.483)[\ln(50/0.5)] = 378u_1 \text{ atm.} \tag{20}$$

(u_1 must be in units of cm/s.)

In Eq. 17, ΔP_{p1} can be evaluated using Eq. 21.

$$\Delta P_{p1} = u_1 r_o(\mu_w/k_1) \int_{ro}^{rp1} (F_{rr}/r)\, dr \tag{21}$$

From Figs. 18-20, we note that the residual resistance factor (F_{rr}) has the form

$$F_{rr} = K\, u^n \tag{22}$$

In radial flow, the flux (u) at any radius (r) in layer 1 can be related to the flux at the wellbore sand face (u_1) in layer 1.

$$u = u_1 r_o / r \tag{23}$$

Therefore, Eqs. 21-23 can be combined and integrated to give Eq. 24.

$$\Delta P_{p1} = (u_1)^{(1+n)} r_o (\mu_w / k_1)(-K/n)[(r_{p1}/r_o)^{-n} - 1] \tag{24}$$

From Fig. 20, we know that $F_{rr} = 207u^{-0.55}$ in 483-md Berea (where u has units of ft/d). By substituting the appropriate values into Eq. 24, we find

$$\Delta P_{p1} = (u_1)^{(1-0.55)}[86400/12/2.54]^{-0.55}(0.5)(12)(2.54)(0.65/0.483)(207/0.55)[(50/0.5)^{0.55} - 1]$$

$$\Delta P_{p1} = 1129 u_1^{0.45} \text{ atm.} \tag{25}$$

Combining Eqs. 17, 18, 20 and 25 leads to Eq. 26.

$$(1000/14.7) = 1129 u_1^{0.45} + 0 + 378 u_1 \tag{26}$$

Solving Eq. 26 by iteration shows that during brine injection into layer 1 after the gel treatment, u_1 equals 1.90×10^{-3} cm/s or 5.38 ft/d. We note that 5.38 ft/d is within the range where the F_{rr} relation is valid in Fig. 20. If u_1 had been too high, unrealistic F_{rr} values might have been predicted. In particular, F_{rr} values can not be less than one. Therefore, when making calculations such as those shown here, checks should be made to insure that F_{rr} values are realistic.

Finally, the gel treatment is found to reduce brine injectivity in layer 1 to 0.79% of the original injectivity. This value is determined by dividing u_1 obtained after the gel treatment (5.38 ft/d) by u_1 obtained before the gel treatment (680 ft/d).

A similar procedure can be used to find the injectivity loss in layer 2 (the 66-md layer). In layer 2, the equation that is analogous to Eq. 18 gives

$$\Delta P_{w2} = u_2(0.5)(12)(2.54)(0.65/0.066)[\ln(50/20.2)] = 135.7 u_2 \text{ atm.} \tag{27}$$

The equation that is analogous to Eq. 19 gives

$$\Delta P_{v2} = u_2(2)(0.5)(12)(2.54)(0.65/0.066)[\ln(50/0.5)] = 1376 u_2 \text{ atm.} \tag{28}$$

From Fig. 19, we know that $F_{rr} = 119u^{-0.49}$ in 66-md Berea (where u has units of ft/d). Thus, the equation that is analogous to Eq. 24 gives

$$\Delta P_{p2} = (u_2)^{(1-0.49)}[86400/12/2.54]^{-0.49}(0.5)(12)(2.54)(0.65/0.066)(119/0.49)[(20.2/0.5)^{0.49} - 1]$$

$$\Delta P_{p2} = 3778 u_2^{0.51} \text{ atm.} \tag{29}$$

Summing Eqs. 27, 28, and 29, and equating to the total pressure drop yields

$$(1000/14.7) = 3778 u_2^{0.51} + 135.7 u_2 + 1376 u_2 \tag{30}$$

Solving Eq. 30 by iteration shows that during brine injection into layer 2 after the gel treatment, u_2 equals 3.73×10^{-4} cm/s or 1.06 ft/d. We note that 1.06 ft/d is within the range where the F_{rr} relation

is valid in Fig. 19. Thus, the gel treatment is found to reduce brine injectivity in layer 2 to 1.13% of the original injectivity. This value is determined by dividing u_2 obtained after the gel treatment (1.06 ft/d) by u_2 obtained before the gel treatment (93.4 ft/d). This estimate of injectivity reduction is actually optimistic. Recall that we assumed that the gelant would penetrate the minimum distance of 20.2 ft into layer 2. Since a viscous xanthan gelant will probably penetrate a greater distance into layer 2, the final brine injectivity in layer 2 will be somewhat less than 1.13% of the original injectivity.

The final result of the gel treatment is that the injection profile has not been improved to any significant extent. Injectivity in both layers has been reduced by about 99%. This injectivity reduction may be desirable in the most-permeable layer, but it would be very harmful in the oil-productive layer (i.e., layer 2). Thus, zone isolation would be needed during gel placement. This same conclusion is reached if residual resistance factors are assumed to be constant after gelation. Thus, the apparent non-Newtonian behavior of residual resistance factors for this Cr^{3+}-xanthan gelant will not eliminate the need for zone isolation in unfractured injection wells.

The above analysis can be applied in a similar manner to gel placement in vertically fractured injection wells. To some extent, the analysis is simplified in fractured wells because the flow geometry is linear. However, in fractured wells, two other factors should be considered. First, injection of viscous polymer solutions or gels may extend the length of the fracture. Second, a large part of the beneficial effects that are derived from the gel may come from reducing the flow capacity of the fracture rather than from selectively reducing permeabilities in the different strata that are cut by the fracture. We hope to address these considerations in our future work.

Conclusions

1. For a large fraction of the time prior to gelation, the presence of 90-ppm Cr^{3+} did not significantly affect the rheology in porous media of a 3000-ppm xanthan solution.

2. For gel formulations containing 3000-ppm xanthan and 90-ppm Cr^{3+}, residual resistance factors in Berea sandstone were not much greater than those for xanthan solutions without Cr^{3+}. We suspect that clay and carbonate minerals in Berea forced the gelation reaction to occur near neutral pH rather than at the injection pH (3.8). In beaker tests, Cr^{3+}-xanthan formed rigid gels at pH≈4, but gelation was not apparent for the same formulation at pH=7. Previous researchers reported large residual resistance factors for more dilute Cr^{3+}-xanthan gels in clean sandpacks. The discrepancy between our results and those of previous researchers may be explained in that the lack of clays and carbonate minerals in sandpacks may have allowed gelation to occur at low pH values rather than at neutral pH. Thus, the buffering action of reservoir rocks should be considered when evaluating gel performance in the laboratory.

3. Using 4000-ppm xanthan and 154-ppm Cr^{3+}, a rigid gel was formed in a beaker at pH=4, but gelation was not evident at pH=7. Even so, the composition injected at pH=7 provided substantial residual resistance factors (30-714) in Berea sandstone.

4. Tracer studies indicated that the gel (4000-ppm xanthan, 154-ppm Cr_{3+}) occupied between 0% and 45% of the original pore volume, depending on the initial pH of the gelant and the core permeability. Tracer studies also revealed that the gel increased dispersivity values in Berea by factors ranging from 5.5 to 17.8.

5. For a gel with 4000-ppm xanthan and 154-ppm Cr^{3+} at pH=7 in 483-md Berea, residual resistance factors were quite high (50-714) even though tracer studies indicated that the pore volume occupied by the gel was near zero. Perhaps, small gel particles lodge in pore throats—thereby, dramatically reducing brine permeability without occupying much volume.

6. Residual resistance factors provided by gels (4000-ppm xanthan, 154-ppm Cr^{3+}) decreased significantly with increased fluid flux and could be described by a power-law relation over the flux range from 0.025 to 16 ft/d.

7. Laboratory measurements of gel properties in 66-md Berea and in 483-md Berea were used during example calculations to show that the apparent "shear-thinning" nature of residual resistance factors will not eliminate the need for zone isolation during gel placement in unfractured injection wells.

7. IMPACT OF DIFFUSION, DISPERSION, AND VISCOUS FINGERING ON GEL PLACEMENT IN INJECTION WELLS

At the peak of activity, 35% of the enhanced oil recovery projects in the United States were polymer projects.[5] About 60% of these polymer projects were gel treatments rather than traditional polymer floods.[6] The objective of gel treatments is to block fractures or watered-out, high-permeability zones such that fluids injected subsequently are more likely to enter and displace oil from other strata. Many gel projects have been very successful. Unfortunately, many other gel projects have been technical failures. One study revealed that less than 45% of near-wellbore gel treatments were successful.[7] In part, the sporadic success rate for gel treatments may be due to the way in which the gels were placed in the reservoir. In most cases when gelling agents were injected, zones were not isolated, so the chemicals had access to all open intervals. Much of the gel formulation enters fractures and/or high-permeability streaks. However, some of this fluid penetrates into strata that one does not want to plug. Therefore, a key issue in gel technology is how to place gels in fractures or "thief" zones without damaging oil-productive zones.

Two recent studies[24,25] examined how injection-flow profiles are modified by unrestricted injection of Newtonian and non-Newtonian gelling agents. These studies found:

1. Zone isolation is much more likely to be needed during placement of gels in unfractured wells than in fractured wells.

2. Productive zones in unfractured wells can be seriously damaged if zones are not isolated during gel placement.

3. If zones are not isolated during gel placement, the minimum penetration into low-permeability zones can be achieved by using a water-like gelling agent (having a resistance factor equal to one).

4. Compared with water-like gelling agents, the non-Newtonian rheology of existing polymeric gelling agents will not reduce the need for zone isolation during gel placement.

This study explores the influence of diffusion, dispersion, and viscous instabilities during placement of gels to modify injection profiles. In particular, these phenomena are examined to determine whether they can be exploited to optimize gel placement.

Gelant Penetration in Oil-Productive Strata

A common misconception in the application of gel treatments is that injected gelling agents will exclusively enter high-permeability, watered-out channels without penetrating to any significant extent into less-permeable, oil-bearing strata. Straightforward applications of the Darcy equation reveal that gelling agents can penetrate to a significant degree into all open intervals.[24,25] For example, if a gelant penetrates fifty feet (15.2 m) radially from an injection well into the most-permeable layer of a multilayer reservoir, then the gelant can propagate at least five feet (1.5 m) radially into a zone that is 100 times less permeable. This can be seen by examining Fig. 24. Figure 24 plots the depth of penetration (final radius minus wellbore radius) of gelant into a less-permeable zone (layer 2, k_2) when the gelant reaches 50 ft into the most-permeable zone (layer 1, k_1). (The wellbore radius is 0.5 ft, and all layers have the same porosity.) This information is shown for two Newtonian fluids (F_r=1 and F_r=100) and two non-Newtonian fluids. The non-Newtonian fluids

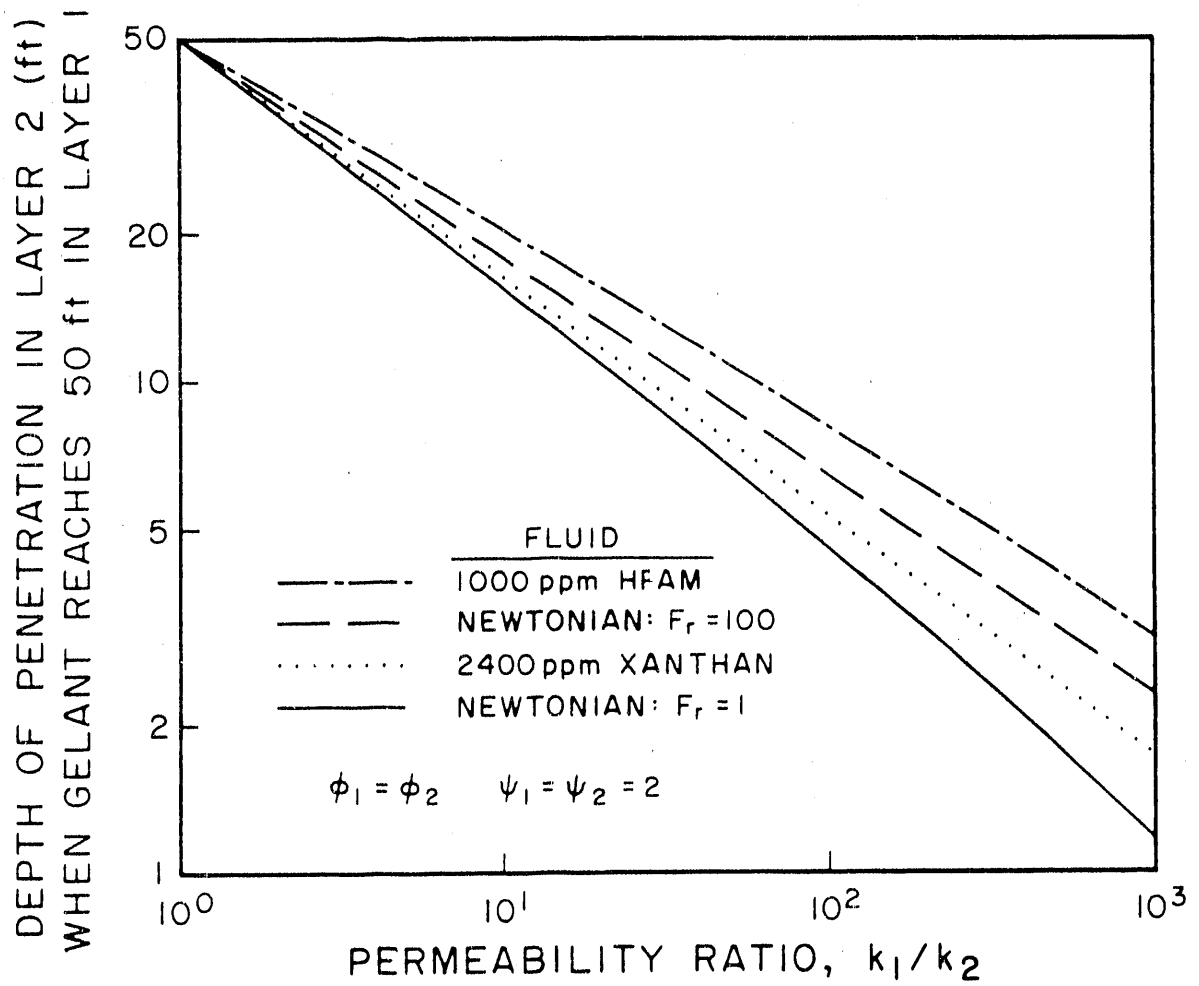


Fig. 24. Relative Penetration of Fluids in an Unfractured Injection Well with Multiple, Noncommunicating Layers.

included a xanthan solution and a partially hydrolyzed polyacrylamide (HPAM) solution. (Flow properties of the non-Newtonian fluids are described in detail in Ref. 25.) Note that for a given permeability ratio, the three viscous fluids penetrate to a greater depth in the less-permeable layer than does the water-like fluid (F_r=1).

The degree of penetration into a given low-permeability zone (relative to that in the most-permeable zone) increases with increased viscosity (resistance factor) of the injected fluid.[24] This is a basic principle of polymer flooding and is also evident from Fig. 24. This principle can readily be demonstrated by properly conducting floods in parallel cores, sandpacks or beadpacks. Table 22 presents results from several parallel floods involving both Newtonian fluids (water and ethanediol) and non-Newtonian fluids (xanthan and HPAM solutions). The floods were performed in parallel linear beadpacks that had a length of 30 cm and a porosity of 37%. Different-sized beads were packed into clear plexiglass tubes, and clear water was displaced by injecting a dyed fluid. The permeabilities of the beadpacks were 48 darcys and 22 darcys, respectively. The dye and effluent volumes were used to establish the position of the injectant-water front during the flood. The degree of penetration for each flood (L_{p2}/L_{p1}) was the distance to which the injectant had propagated into the less-permeable core when the injectant had reached the outlet of the most-permeable core. Table 22 compares experimental values for the degree of penetration with theoretical values determined using the methods described in Refs. 24 and 25. The comparison reveals that the theoretical values closely match the experimental values. If these values had not matched, this would have been cause for concern since the theoretical values are based on nothing more than mass balances and the Darcy equation.

TABLE 22
Results from Parallel Linear Floods

Injectant	L_{p2}/L_{p1} Predicted	L_{p2}/L_{p1} Experimental
1-cp dyed water	0.46	0.46
11-cp ethanediol	0.65	0.64
2000-ppm xanthan	0.67	0.66
2000-ppm HPAM	0.67	0.67

Several papers report laboratory results from parallel linear floods involving gelling agents that appear to violate Darcy's law.[31,33] If these results are accepted without question, then one is misled to believe that the gelling agents only enter the most-permeable porous media and that zone isolation is not needed during field projects. However, caution must be used when performing parallel laboratory floods with gelling agents. In particular, at least two factors must be considered. First, the flow lines leading to the core inlets must be completely filled with gelling agent at the start of the displacement process. Otherwise (if the lines are filled with water instead of gelling agent), the gelling agent could penetrate well into the most-permeable core before the gelling agent could even reach the inlet face of the less-permeable core. Second, the short bank of gelling agent in the less-permeable core can be diluted enough by diffusion and dispersion to prevent gelation while still allowing gel to form in the most-permeable core. As will be discussed later, this is far more likely to occur on a laboratory scale than on a field scale.

For the calculations represented in Fig. 24, no crossflow occurs between layers. If crossflow can occur between layers or flow paths in a reservoir, viscous gelants will penetrate into low-permeability layers to a greater extent than if crossflow is not possible. In fact, under some circumstances (if the gelant/water mobility ratio is less than the permeability contrast between adjacent layers), the depth of penetration of gelant in a low-permeability layer can be the same as that in an adjacent high-permeability layer.[69,70] Thus, if crossflow can occur, viscous gelants can damage oil-productive zones to a greater extent than if crossflow is not possible.

In preparing Fig. 24, diffusion, dispersion, chemical retention, and inaccessible pore volume effects were neglected. The impact of chemical retention and inaccessible pore volume on these calculations has been described previously.[24,25] The role of diffusion and dispersion will be discussed in this study.

Dilution by Diffusion

In concept, diffusion and dispersion could dilute gelling agents enough to prevent gelation in less-permeable, oil-productive zones while still allowing a gel plug to form in watered-out, high-permeability streaks.[71] Whether or not a chemical bank can be diluted enough by diffusion to prevent gelation depends on at least four factors: 1) the size of the chemical bank, 2) the diffusion coefficient, 3) the gelation time, and 4) the extent of dilution required to prevent gelation.

Diffusion coefficients are typically on the order of 10^{-5} cm^2/s for low-molecular-weight chemicals in water.[72] These chemicals include gelling agents such as acrylamide monomer, phenol, and formaldehyde. Diffusion coefficients are typically on the order of 10^{-8} cm^2/s for high-molecular-weight polymeric gelling agents such as polyacrylamide or xanthan.[73] For low-molecular-weight species in a viscous polymer solution (e.g., $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ in water with 2000-ppm polyacrylamide), the diffusion coefficient should have some intermediate value—varying inversely with the viscosity of the solution.[72] The relationship between the apparent diffusion coefficient (D) in porous media and the molecular binary diffusion coefficient (D_o) has been described by

$$D = D_o/(F\phi) \tag{31}$$

where F is the formation electrical resistivity and ϕ is porosity. Apparent diffusion coefficients in porous media are commonly 20 to 40 percent less than molecular diffusion coefficients.[52]

Gelation times range from a few minutes to several days for most formulations that have been considered for near-wellbore gel treatments. In general, the gelation time decreases with increasing concentrations of the gelling agents.[16,17] Also, some minimum concentration of the proper reactants must be present in order for gelation to occur. In most field applications of gel treatments, the concentrations of reactants that are injected are well above the minimum levels required for gelation. Thus, significant dilution (often by a factor of two or more) is required in order to prevent gelation.

For much of this study, we assume that the gelation reaction is stopped by only a ten percent dilution of the reactants. Thus, the reader should bear in mind that the reductions in gel-bank size that are forecast due to dilution by diffusion and/or dispersion will be overly optimistic. By overestimating the impact of diffusion and dispersion in this analysis, we increase confidence in a major conclusion from this study. That is, in field applications, diffusion and dispersion will not usually cause enough dilution to prevent gelation in the less-permeable zones.

In field applications of gel treatments, wells are commonly shut-in for some time after injection of the gelling agent to allow the gel to form. During the time prior to gelation, diffusion acts to dilute the chemical banks (see Fig. 25a). The size of the mixing zone (L_m) created by diffusion alone (no dispersion) during this time can be approximated using Eq. 32,

$$L_m = 3.62 \sqrt{Dt_g} \tag{32}$$

where t_g is gelation time. The mixing zone given by Eq. 32 extends from the point where the gelling agent has been diluted to 90 percent of the original concentration to the point where the gelling agent has been diluted to 10 percent of the original concentration.[52] Figure 25b illustrates a typical concentration profile that results when diffusion or dispersion smears an interface that was originally sharp. Figure 25b also illustrates the size of the mixing zone that is given by Eq. 32.

If the gelation reaction is stopped by a ten percent dilution of the reactants, then diffusion will reduce the gel bank size by the distance $L_m/2$. Figure 26 provides values of $L_m/2$ as a function of time and diffusion coefficient. A key point illustrated by Fig. 26 is that diffusion will not create a large mixing zone in the period associated with typical gelation times. Even for relatively large diffusion coefficients (10^{-5} cm^2/s), $L_m/2$ is only about 0.2 ft (5 cm) after ten days. Considering the depths of penetration for gelling agents in typical field applications (see Fig. 24), diffusion is not likely to have a significant impact on a field scale.

In contrast, diffusion can significantly affect results from parallel laboratory corefloods. Consider injection of a 1-cp gelling agent to displace water from two one-foot-long cores that are being flooded in parallel. Assume that one core is ten times more permeable than the other and both cores have the same porosity. When the gelling agent reaches the outlet of the most-permeable core, the gelling agent will have penetrated 0.1 ft into the less-permeable core. Over the course of one day, most of the gelling agent in the less-permeable core could be diluted if the diffusion coefficient is 10^{-5} cm^2/s.

Dilution by Dispersion

During injection of a gelant to miscibly displace water, both diffusion and dispersion will occur. While diffusion is the transport of mass because of spatial concentration differences, dispersion is mixing caused by variations in the velocity within each flow channel and from one channel to another.[74] In flow through reservoirs, dispersion usually is much more important than diffusion.[74]

The concentration gradient at the front between the two fluids will be governed by the value of the Peclet number (N_{pe}),

$$N_{pe} = vL/K \tag{33}$$

where v is interstitial velocity, L is distance traveled by the fluid front, and K is the dispersion coefficient. The longitudinal dispersion coefficient (K) is given by Eq. 34.

$$K = D + \alpha v^{\beta} \tag{34}$$

where α is the longitudinal dispersivity and β is an exponent that has been determined by experiment to be in the range from 1 to 1.2. In this work, a value of 1 will be used for β.

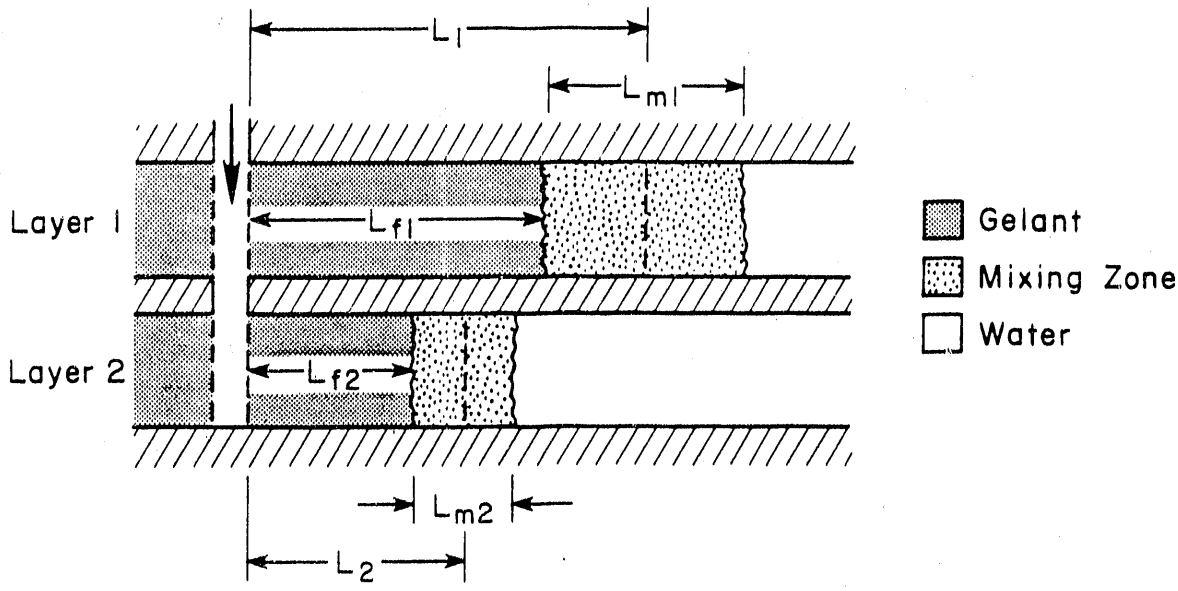
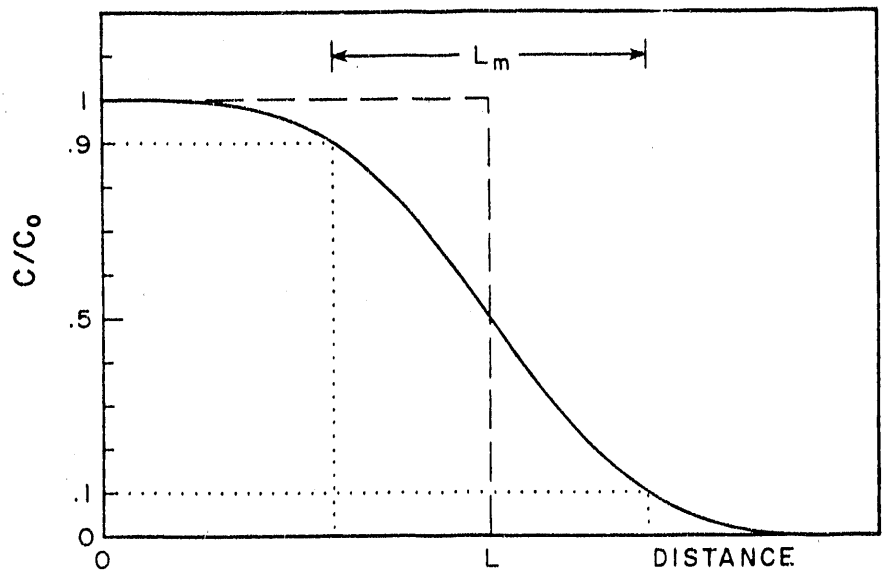


Fig. 25a. Illustration of Mixing Zones



FOR DIFFUSION: $L_m \approx 3.62 \sqrt{Dt}$

FOR DISPERSION: $L_m \approx 3.62 \sqrt{\alpha L}$

Fig. 25b. Concentration Profile at the Interface Between the Water Bank and the Gelling-Agent Bank.

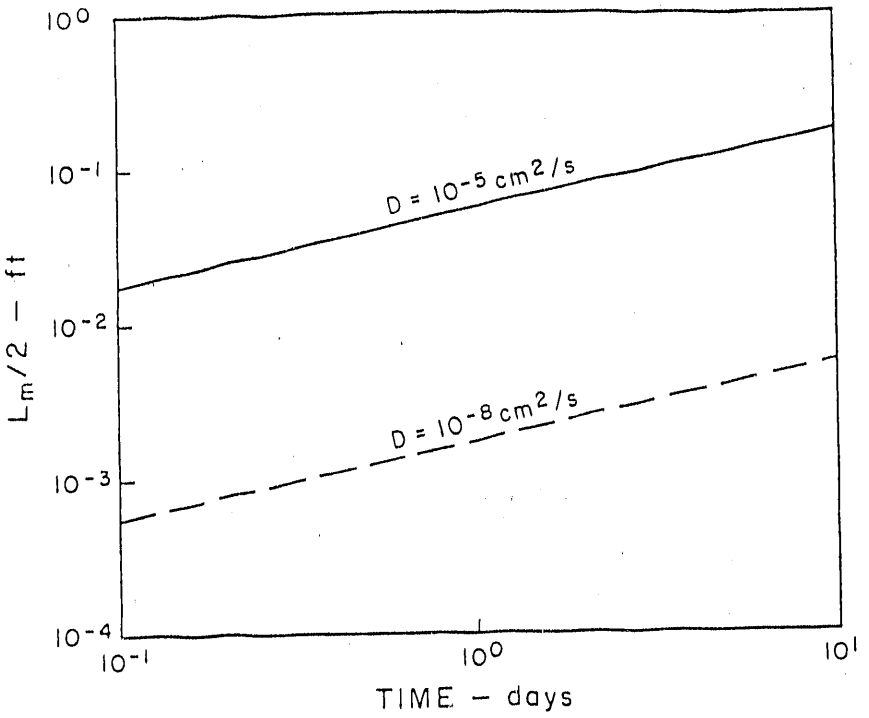


Fig. 26. **Length of Mixing Zone Due to Diffusion.**

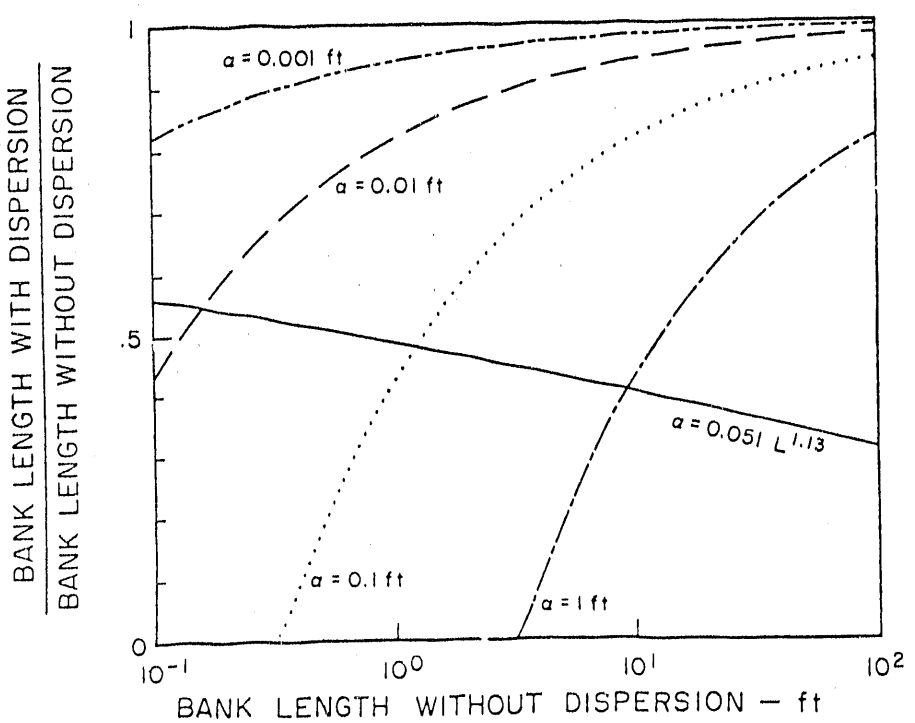


Fig. 27. **Effect of Dispersion on Bank Size.**

The size of the mixing zone (again, between the 90%-10% concentration levels) created by dispersion can be estimated using Eq. 35,

$$L_m = 3.62 \sqrt{\alpha L} \tag{35}$$

where α is the dispersivity of the porous medium and L is the distance traveled by the fluid front. Laboratory values for α commonly are in the range from 0.001 to 0.05 ft (0.0003 to 0.015 m).[74,75] However, field dispersivity values are usually significantly greater than laboratory values because of the greater heterogeneity experienced on the larger scale.[74,76] Using over 60 dispersivity values from both field and laboratory measurements, Arya *et al.*[74] noted that the following relation correlates dispersivity values over a wide range of length scales (although there is considerable scatter in the data):

$$\alpha = 0.044\ L^{1.13} \tag{36a}$$

if α and L are expressed in meters, and

$$\alpha = 0.051\ L^{1.13} \tag{36b}$$

if α and L are expressed in feet.

The above information can be used to estimate reductions in the size of a gel bank due to dilution by dispersion. These estimates are shown in Fig. 27 as a function of dispersivity and original bank size (L). The size of the gel bank after dispersion (L_f) relative to the original bank size was approximated using

$$L_f/L = \left[1 - L_m/(2L)\right] \tag{37}$$

Four constant-dispersivity cases are shown. These cases indicate that the smallest chemical banks should experience the greatest dilution by dispersion. However, very high near-wellbore dispersivity values (~1 ft) are required to prevent gelation during typical field gel treatments (compare Fig. 27 with Fig. 24).

In contrast to the calculations made using constant dispersivity values, the Arya correlation (Eq. 36b) predicts that the relative reduction in bank size will be fairly insensitive to the length of the original (undiluted) gel bank. In fact, the correlation actually suggests that dispersion has a slightly greater impact as bank size increases (see Fig. 27). Therefore, if the Arya correlation applies, dispersion will not inhibit gel formation in low-permeability zones to a greater extent than in high-permeability zones.

For a given length scale, different strata may exhibit different dispersivities. Thus, in concept, one could exploit a situation where the dispersivity was much higher in the less-permeable layers than in the most-permeable layers. However, close examination of Fig. 27 suggests that the dispersivity contrast must be very large in order to be exploitable.

Figures 26 and 27 are most applicable for diffusion and dispersion in a linear geometry. Calculation of diffusion and dispersion effects in a radial geometry can be complex. However, the relative reduction in chemical bank size will be less in a radial geometry than in a linear geometry. This can be illustrated using the information in Table 23, which compares dispersion predictions in

linear flow with radial-flow predictions from three different sets of researchers. The relative reduction in bank length (or radius) can be approximated by $[1-L_m/(2L)]$, where L_m/L values are listed in Table 23. The α/L term in Table 23 is equivalent to the reciprocal of the Peclet number.[74]

TABLE 23
Comparison of Dispersion Predictions for Linear and Radial Flow

	(Bank Length with Dispersion)÷(Bank Length without Dispersion)			
		Radial Flow		
α/L	Linear Flow	Perkins-Johnston[77]	Tang-Peaceman[78]	Tang-Babu[79]
1/32	0.68	0.82	0.79	0.79
1/16	0.55	0.74	0.70	0.70
1/8	0.36	0.63	0.56	--
1/4	0.09	0.48	0.36	--

In the discussion to this point, gelation is assumed to be prevented by a 10% reduction of the original concentration of gelling agent. As mentioned earlier, the impact of diffusion and dispersion is generally overestimated using this assumption. Other values may be used for the concentration below which gelation does not occur. In general, if the minimum concentration for gelation is greater than 50% of the original concentration, then diffusion and dispersion will reduce the size of the gel bank in a given zone. However, if the minimum concentration for gelation is less than 50% of the original concentration, then the gel bank will be increased in size by the action of diffusion and dispersion. (Of course, the final gel strength in the mixing zone may not be as great as that in the undiluted portion of the gel bank.) To approximate the size of a mixing zone (L_m) whose limits are other than at the 90%-10% concentration levels, the coefficient (3.62) in Eqs. 32 and 35 can be replaced by the appropriate value from Table 24. These approximations are truly valid only for diffusion or dispersion in a one-dimensional, semi-infinite medium where the concentration gradient is described by the standard error-function solution.[52] More sophisticated methods[53,78] may be more appropriate for predicting concentrations in the mixing zone in some cases.

TABLE 24
Mixing-Zone Limits

Concentration limits of the mixing zone	Coefficient in Eqs. 32 and 35
95%-5%	4.65
90%-10%	3.62
80%-20%	2.38
70%-30%	1.48
60%-40%	0.72
50%-50%	0.00

The objective of gel treatments is to reduce injectivity in high-permeability watered-out zones while maintaining injectivity in less-permeable oil-productive zones. Figures 28a and 28b compare injectivity behavior for gel placement in an unfractured (radial flow) injection well where the gelling agent is allowed to penetrate 50 ft into the most-permeable layer (layer 1). The gelling agent penetrates into a less-permeable layer (layer 2) to a radius determined by the Darcy equation and the rheology of the gelling agent.[24,25] (The particular reservoir model used here corresponds to

the $\Psi_1=2$, $\Psi_2=2$ unfractured injection well in Refs. 24 and 25.) Diffusion and dispersion are allowed to the extent calculated using Eqs. 32 and 35, respectively. Various diffusion coefficients and dispersivity values were examined, as indicated in Figs. 28a and 28b. To maximize dilution by diffusion, the gelation time was assumed to be ten days. Wherever gel forms, the permeability to water is assumed to be reduced by a factor of 30 ($F_{rr}=30$). The Carreau rheological model for a 2400-ppm xanthan solution was used in generating the xanthan curve. To generate the HPAM curve, the Heemskerk dual power-law model for a 1000-ppm polyacrylamide solution was used. Both of these rheological models are described and illustrated in Ref. 25. For the monomer curves, the resistance factor for the gelling agent had a value of one.

Figures 28a and 28b indicate that for conventional gel treatments in unfractured injection wells, the injectivity (of water after the gel treatment) will be reduced to about the same extent in all layers that have permeabilities that are greater than 0.01 times that of the most-permeable layer. By assuming an extremely large near-wellbore dispersivity ($\alpha=1$ ft), dilution by diffusion and dispersion could eliminate the need for zone isolation during gel placement if the permeability contrast (k_1/k_2) was greater than 100:1. However, with more realistic dispersion behavior (i.e., the Arya correlation), diffusion and dispersion will not have a significant impact for permeability contrasts of less than 1000:1.

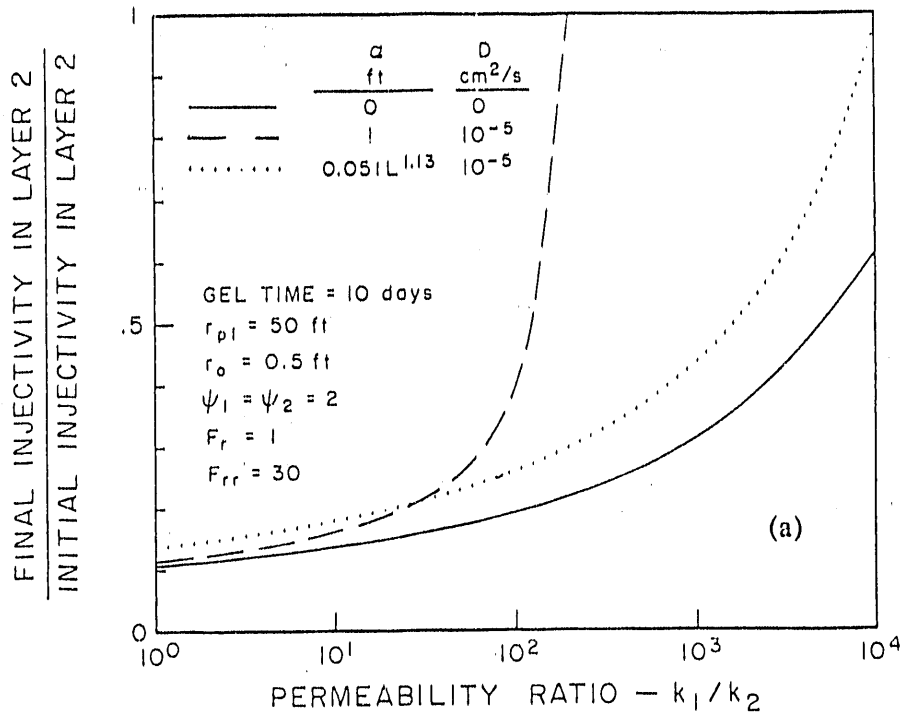
If diffusion and dispersion are to be exploited to eliminate the need for zone isolation during gel placement, then much smaller gelant banks must be used. Figure 29 provides a means to estimate the maximum allowable depth of penetration of gelant in the most-permeable layer (layer 1) in order for diffusion and dispersion to prevent gelation in a given less-permeable layer (layer 2). This is shown for both linear geometries (e.g., fractured injection wells) and radial geometries (e.g., unfractured injection wells). The reader should note that Fig. 29 was generated by assuming (1) that a monomeric gelant was used ($D=10^{-5}$ cm^2/s, $F_r=1$) and (2) only 10% dilution is required to prevent gelation. Thus, Fig. 29 tends to overestimate the impact of diffusion and dispersion, especially for polymeric gelants.

Diffusion and dispersion during gel placement in parallel laboratory corefloods can mislead one to conclude that zone isolation is not needed during gel placement in field projects. Fig. 30 shows the fraction of original injectivity retained in cores after gel placement in 1-ft-long parallel linear corefloods. For core permeability ratios of 10:1 or greater, the gelling agent could be diluted sufficiently to prevent gelation in the less-permeable core.

Effect of a Water Postflush on Water-Like Gelant Banks

Additional mixing and thinning of gelant banks can be induced by injecting water to displace gelants away from the wellbore prior to gelation. The impact of a water postflush will be considered in two parts. In this section the discussion will focus on displacement of a water-like gelant ($F_r=1$) by injection of water. The next section will discuss the case where water displaces a viscous gelant.

If water is injected to displace a water-like gelant, the mobility ratio for the displacement is unity. In radial flow, injection of a water postflush will thin the gelant bank, even in the absence of diffusion and dispersion (see Fig. 31). However, this thinning is not large, and it occurs to about the same proportion in all zones. This is illustrated in Fig. 32. The situation represented in Fig. 32 is as follows. First, a water-like gelant is injected into a radial, multilayer reservoir until the gelant propagates to a radius of 50 ft in the most-permeable layer (layer 1). (The wellbore radius is 0.5 ft, and all layers have the same porosity.) At this time the length of the gelant bank (bank radius minus the wellbore radius) will be 49.5 ft, 15.3 ft, 4.5 ft, and 1.2 ft in layers that have permeabilities that are 1, 10, 100, and 1000 times less than that in the most-permeable layer, respectively. After injec-



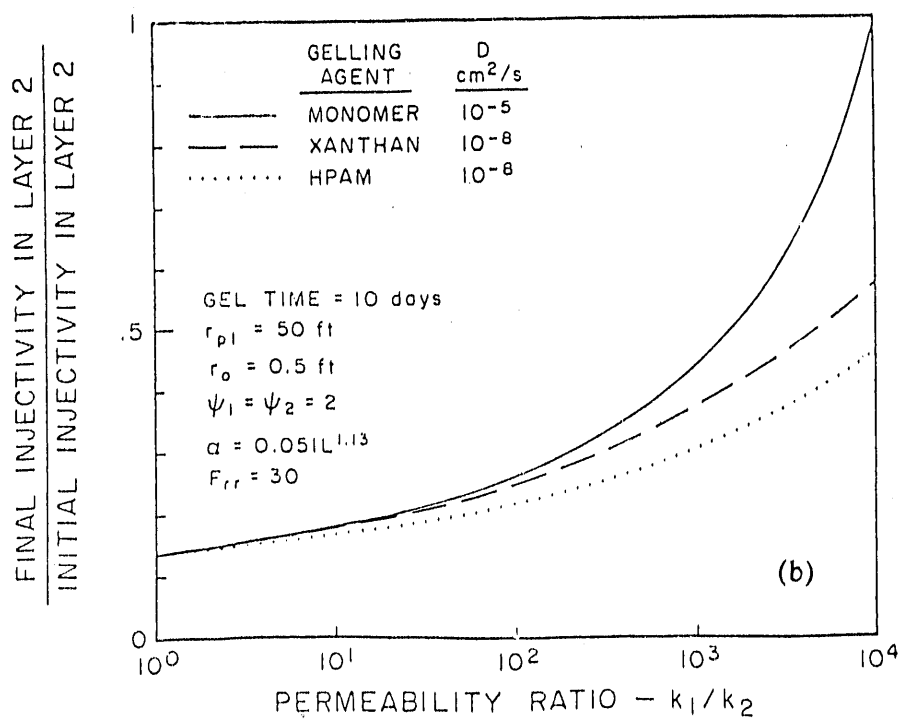


Fig. 28. Impact of Diffusion and Dispersion on Gel in Unfractured Injection Wells.

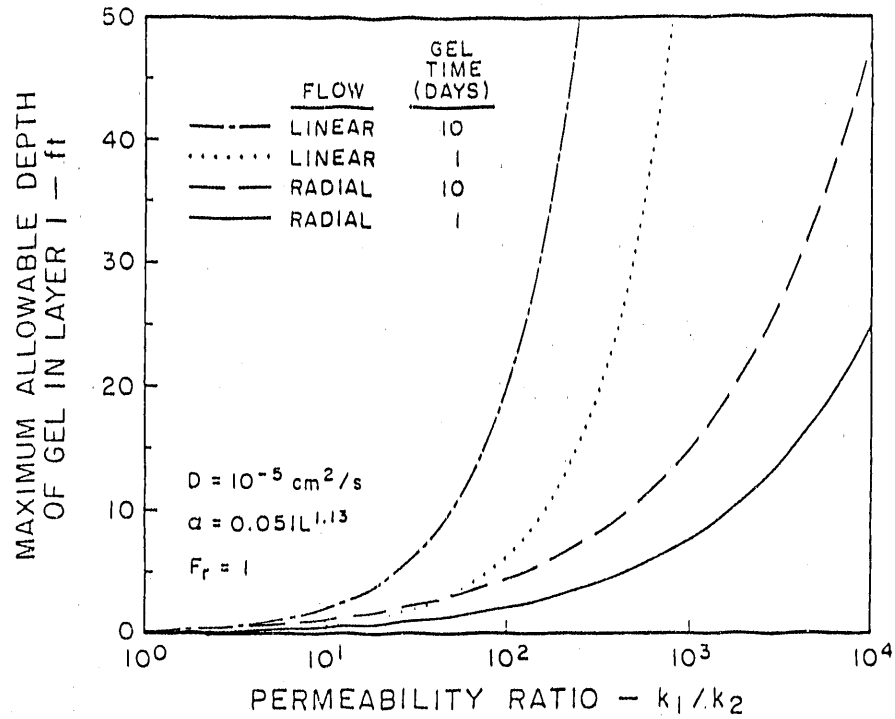


Fig. 29. **Exploiting Diffusion and Dispersion to Prevent Gelation in Layer 2.**

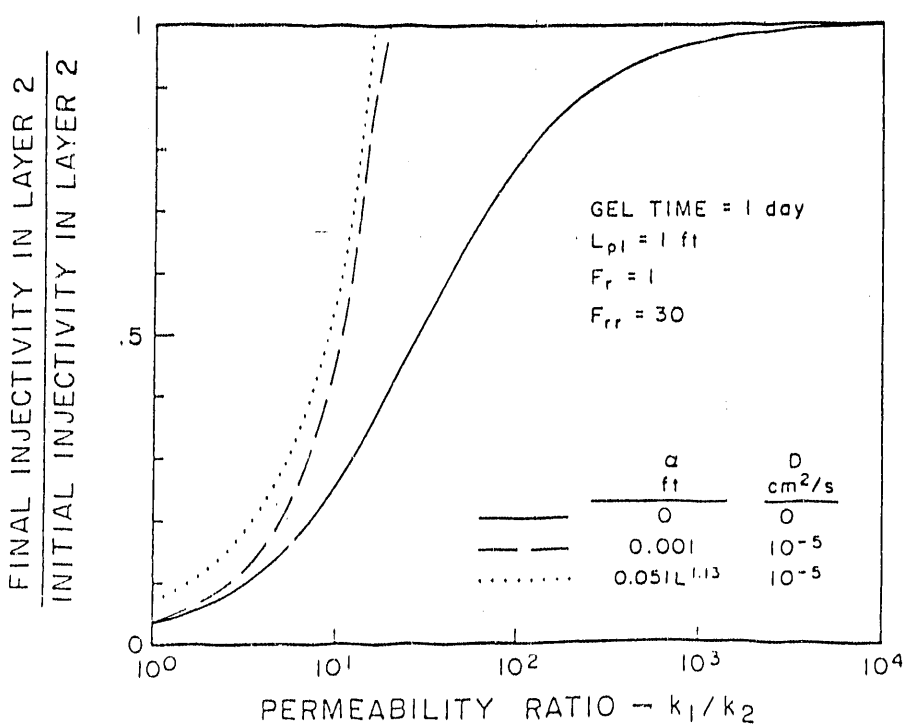


Fig. 30. Impact of Diffusion and Dispersion during Parallel Linear Corefloods.

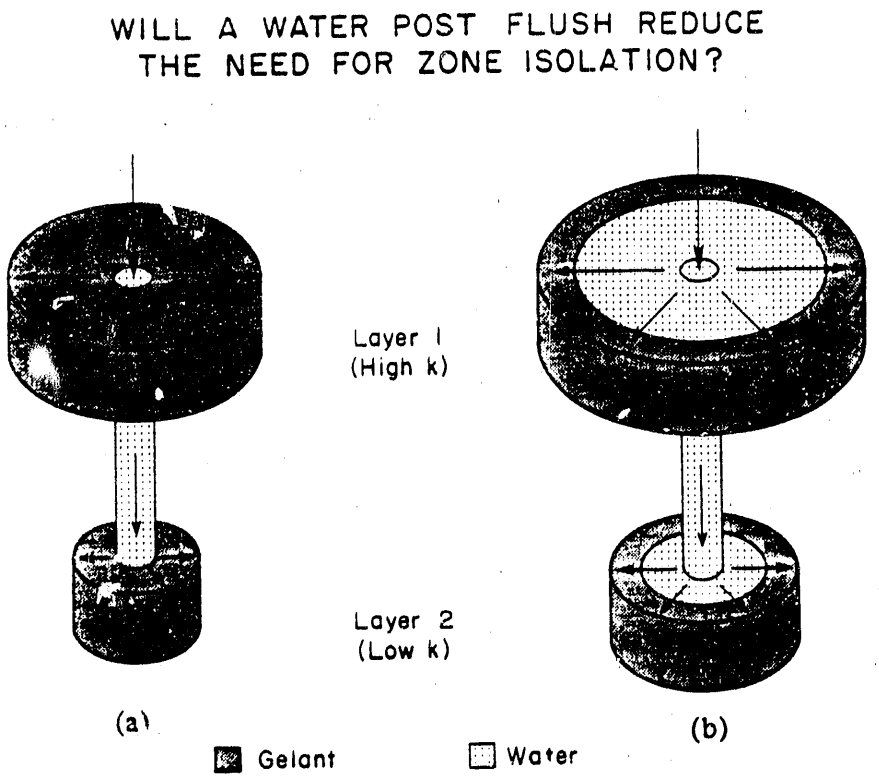


Fig. 31. Illustration of a Water Postflush.

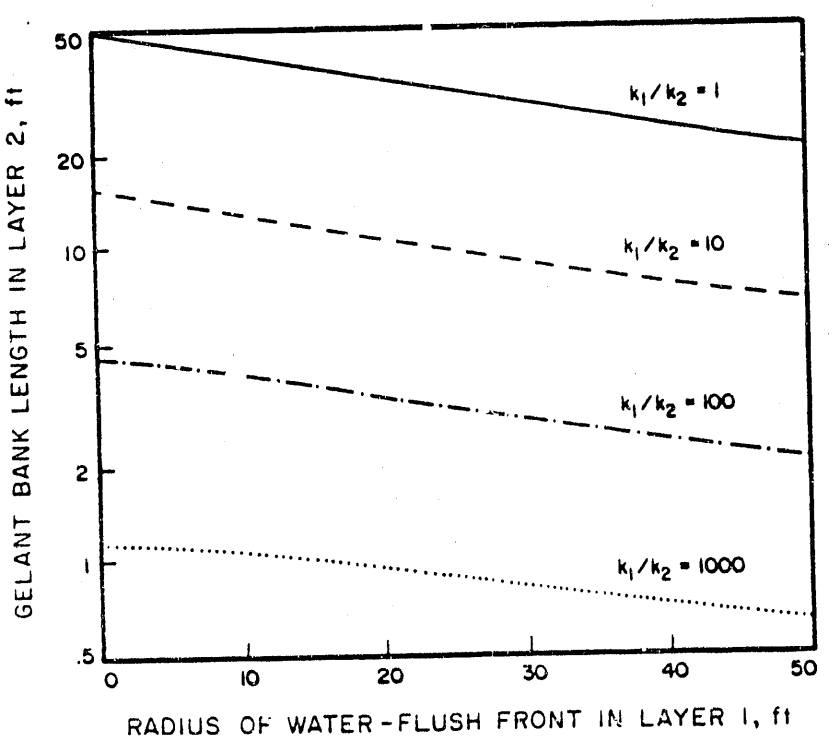


Fig. 32. Thinning of the Gelant Bank during a Water Postflush in Radial Flow.

tion of the gelant, water is injected to displace the gelant away from the wellbore. Figure 32 plots the length of the gelant bank in a given zone (layer 2, where the permeability ratio, k_1/k_2, is specified in the figure) as a function of the radius of the water postflush in the most-permeable zone. Figure 32 reveals that a water postflush out to 50 ft in the most-permeable zone reduces the length of the gelant bank in all zones by roughly a factor of two.

The objective of gel treatments is to reduce injectivity in high-permeability watered-out zones while maintaining injectivity in less-permeable oil-productive zones. The effect of a water postflush on injectivities is shown in Fig. 33. Four cases are illustrated. In all four cases, a water-like (F_r=1) gelant was allowed to penetrate 50 ft radially into the most-permeable layer. The gelant penetrated to some lesser radius in a given less-permeable layer. In two cases, dispersion was allowed to occur during fluid injection. The dispersivity was given by Eq. 36b. Diffusion was also allowed to occur at the gelant-water interface (prior to gelation). The diffusion coefficient was 10^{-5} cm^2/s, and the gelation time was one day. In the other two cases, no diffusion or dispersion was allowed.

In two cases illustrated in Fig. 33, a water postflush was injected (prior to gelation) to displace the inner radius of the gelant bank to 50 ft from the wellbore in the most-permeable layer. Of course, the postflush had a smaller radius in a given less-permeable layer. (Fig. 31b may help to visualize this.) One case allowed diffusion and dispersion prior to gelation, while a second case did not. After gelation, the permeability was reduced by a factor of 30 (F_{rr}=30) wherever gel formed. Water injectivity in layer 2 after gelation was fairly insensitive to permeability ratio for k_1/k_2 values between 1 and 100. For the case with no dispersion, water injectivity after gelation increased from 61% to 62% (of original water injectivity) as the permeability ratio increased from 1 to 100. For the case with dispersion (the dotted curve), water injectivity after gelation increased from 64% to 68% (of original water injectivity) as the permeability ratio increased from 1 to 100.

In two other cases in Fig. 33, no water postflush was used. After gelation, the permeability reduction in the gel bank was again equal to 30. For the case with no dispersion (the solid curve), water injectivity after gelation increased from 11% to 18% (of original water injectivity) as the permeability ratio increased from 1 to 100. For the case with dispersion (the dashed curve), water injectivity after gelation increased from 14% to 25% (of original water injectivity) as the permeability ratio increased from 1 to 100.

Thus, several important points should be noted from Fig. 33. First, a water postflush prior to gelation can significantly increase injectivity in a radial geometry. Unfortunately, injectivity increases by about the same proportion in all zones. Also, diffusion and dispersion can reduce the size of a gel bank during a water postflush. However, the bank size is reduced by about the same proportion in all zones. Thus, a water postflush usually does not help to eliminate the need for zone isolation during gel placement.

Viscous Fingering: Theoretical

A water postflush prior to gelation will tend to form viscous fingers through a viscous gelant. For a multilayer system where gelant has entered all zones, the question arises:

In which zone will viscous fingers from a water postflush first break through the gelant bank?

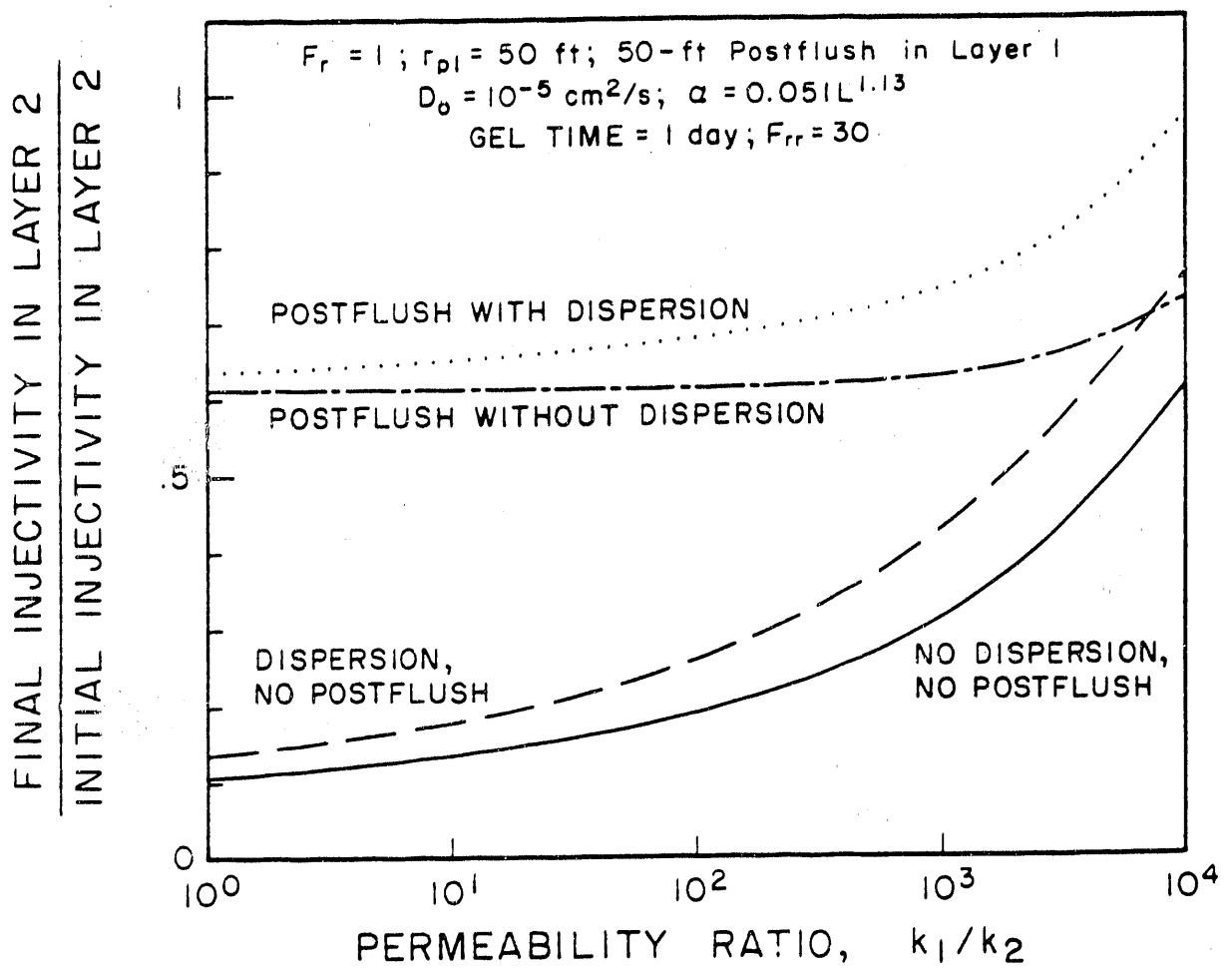


Fig. 33. Effect of a Water Postflush on Injectivity.

When compared to the most-permeable zone, the size of the gelant bank is smaller in the less-permeable zones, so viscous fingers have a shorter distance to travel to achieve breakthrough (see Fig. 34). However, the viscous fingers will propagate much more rapidly in the most-permeable zone. The answer to the above question will determine whether or not viscous fingering can be exploited to eliminate the need for zone isolation during gel placement.

Several researchers have quantified the growth of viscous fingers during miscible displacements.[77,80,81] The analysis of Koval[80] appears to be the most widely accepted. Using Koval's analysis, the region between the wellbore and the leading edge of the gelant bank can be divided into three segments (see Fig. 35). The first segment extends from the wellbore to the trailing edge of the gelant bank. Water from the postflush is the only mobile fluid in this segment. The length of this segment is L_{pf}/EH for linear flow and $[(r_{pf}^2-r_o^2)/EH+r_o^2]^{0.5}$ for radial flow.[82] Here, L_{pf} and r_{pf} are the length and radius, respectively, of the water postflush if the displacement had been piston-like; r_o is the wellbore radius; H is a heterogeneity factor that ranges from 1 to 5; and E is an effective viscosity ratio that is usually given by the quarter-power mixing rule:

$$E = \left[0.78 + 0.22(F_r)^{0.25}\right]^4 \tag{38}$$

The second segment extends from the trailing edge of the gelant bank to the leading edge of the viscous fingers. This length corresponds to the length of the region of viscous fingers. The length of this segment for linear flow (L_{vf}) is

$$L_{vf} = L_{pf}(EH - 1/EH) \tag{39}$$

and for radial flow (r_{vf}) is

$$r_{vf} = \left[\left(r_{pf}^2 - r_o^2\right)EH + r_o^2\right]^{0.5} - \left[\left(r_{pf}^2 - r_o^2\right)/EH + r_o^2\right]^{0.5} \tag{40}$$

The third segment extends from the leading edge of the viscous fingers to the leading edge of the gelant bank. Gelant is the only mobile fluid in this segment.

One additional piece of information is required in order to answer the question raised at the beginning of this section—that is, the effective viscosity or resistance factor of the region of viscous fingers. The maximum and minimum possible values for this resistance factor can readily be identified. The maximum value will be the resistance factor of the undiluted gelant, while the minimum value will be the resistance factor of water (with a value equal to one). The effective viscosity for the region of viscous fingers is often assumed to be given by the quarter-power mixing rule[80-84] (Eq. 38). This rule is most applicable for displacement of a viscous Newtonian fluid by another Newtonian fluid. Stoneberger and Claridge[85] propose Eq. 41 for unstable displacements when pseudoplastic (shear-thinning) fluids are used.

$$E_p = \left[0.50 + 0.50(F_r)^{0.25}\right]^4 \tag{41}$$

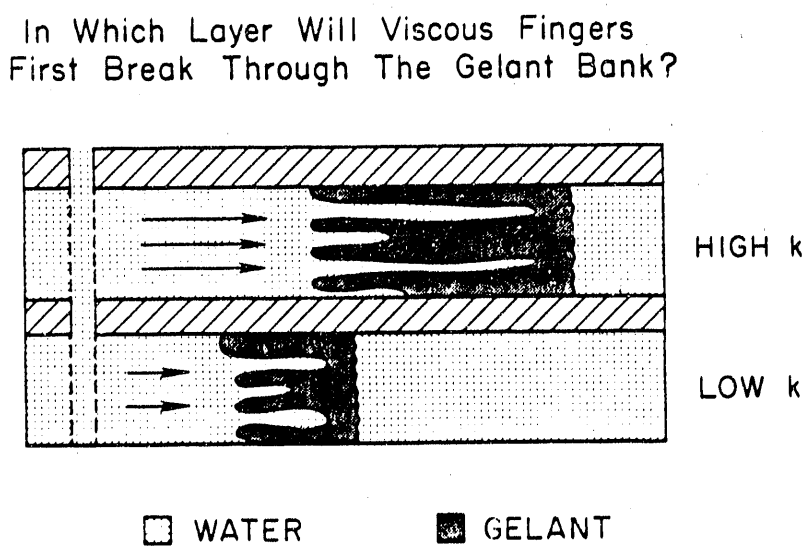


Fig. 34. Illustration of Viscous Fingering.

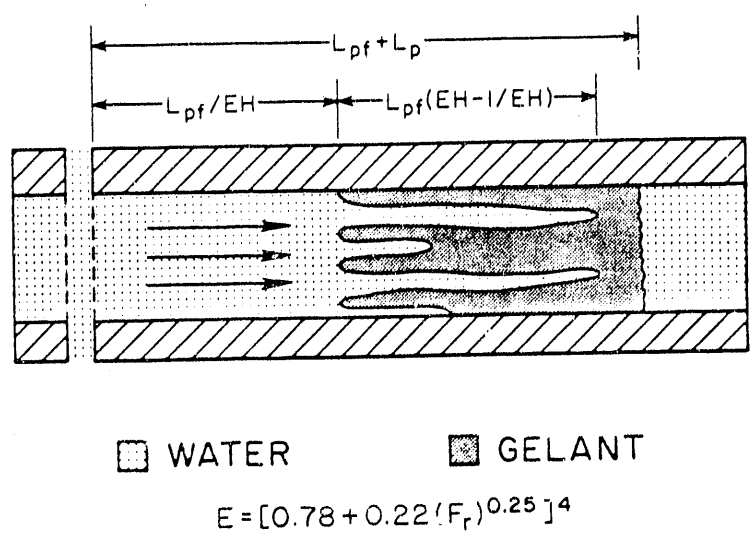


Fig. 35. Quantifying Distances During Viscous Fingering.

Figures 36 and 37 address viscous fingering from a water postflush in radial flow. For these figures, a viscous gelant is injected to a radius of 50 ft (15.24 m) in the most-permeable layer (layer 1). During this time, the gelant penetrates some lesser distance in a given less-permeable layer (layer 2). Then, prior to gelation, water is injected to displace the gelant. In Fig. 36 the resistance factor of the undiluted gelant (F_r) is 10. Four different values are considered for the average resistance factor of fluid in the zone of viscous fingers (F_m). The cases where F_m=1 and F_m=F_r represent the extremes of possible resistance factors, while F_m=EH (from the quarter-power mixing rule) provides a best guess. Using F_m=E_pH may be applicable for pseudoplastic fluids. For all four cases and for all permeability ratios, viscous fingers are predicted to break through the gelant bank in layer 1 prior to breaking through the bank in layer 2.

Figure 37 is similar to Fig. 36 except that F_m=EH for all cases and the resistance factor of the undiluted gelant varies from 10 to 1000. Again, for all cases and for all permeability ratios, viscous fingers are predicted to break through the gelant bank in the most-permeable layer prior to breaking through the bank in a given less-permeable layer. However, note that for all but the most extreme permeability ratios, the fingered zone in the less-permeable layer extends most of the distance through the gelant bank.

Koval's theory has been used widely as a means of quantifying the growth of viscous fingers.[84] On the surface, our use of Koval's theory appears to provide exact predictions. However, when interpreting these predictions, one must consider the statistical nature of viscous fingering. Within a given layer, there is a random element in where fingers will form and how rapidly a given finger will grow.[84] Thus, Figs. 36 and 37 must be viewed as predictions of what will occur after averaging many trials. On average, Fig. 37 predicts that when viscous fingers break through the bank in layer 1, the fingers will have traversed typically 60% to 100% of the bank in layer 2. Alternatively, Fig. 37 predicts that viscous fingers will break through in layer 1 somewhat more often than in layer 2.

Figures 38 and 39 provide predictions for viscous fingering from a water post-flush in linear flow. The conditions represented in this figure are analogous to those used in generating Figs. 36 and 37. Figure 39 predicts that, on average, viscous fingers will break through the gelant bank in a given less-permeable layer at about the same time as in the most-permeable layer.

In Figs. 36 and 39, the Koval heterogeneity factor (H) was assumed to have a value of one in each layer. We have examined the effect of H on the predictions and have found that the results are fairly insensitive to the choice of heterogeneity factor.

The reader should note that Figs. 24, 28, 29, 32, 33, 37, and 39 can be applied to reservoirs with many layers. For example, consider a reservoir that has four noncommunicating layers, with permeabilities of 10,000 md, 1000 md, 100 md, and 10 md, respectively. Assume that all layers have the same porosity and that flow is radial. If a 10-cp fluid were injected to displace 1-cp water, then when the viscous fluid reached a radius of 50 ft from the wellbore in the 10,000-md layer, the fluid would have reached radii of 17.9 ft, 6.7 ft, and 2.6 ft in the 1000-md, 100-md, and 10-md layers, respectively. If a water postflush was subsequently injected until viscous fingers broke through the viscous bank in the 10,000-md layer, then Fig. 37 can be used to find how far viscous fingers had propagated in the other layers. At breakthrough in the 10,000-md layer, the fingers are predicted to traverse 85%, 70%, and 53% of the viscous banks in the 1000-md, 100-md, and 10-md layers, respectively.

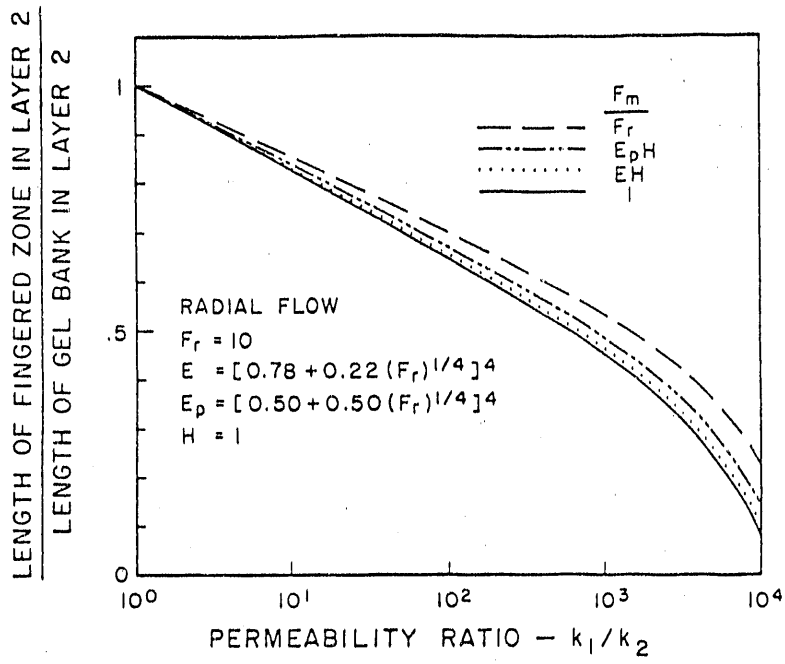


Fig. 36. Sensitivity of Finger Breakthrough to Assumed Resistance Factor in the Fingered Zone: Radial Flow. Length of Fingered Zone in Layer 2 when Fingers Break Through in Layer 1.

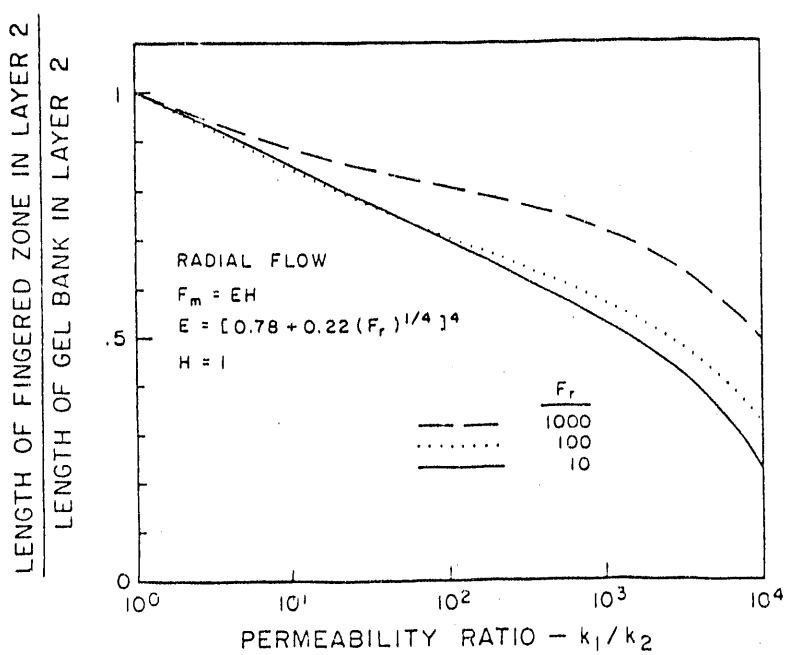


Fig. 37. Sensitivity of Finger Breakthrough to Resistance Factor of the Viscous Fluid: Radial Flow. Length of Fingered Zone in Layer 2 when Fingers Break Through in Layer 1.

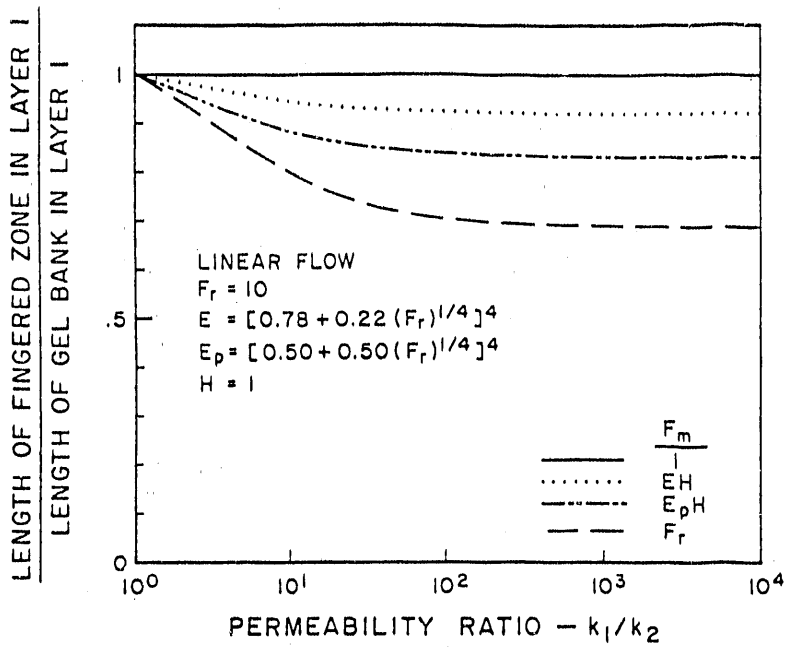


Fig. 38. Sensitivity of Finger Breakthrough to Assumed Resistance Factor in the Fingered Zone: Linear Flow. Length of Fingered Zone in Layer 1 when Fingers Break Through in Layer 2.

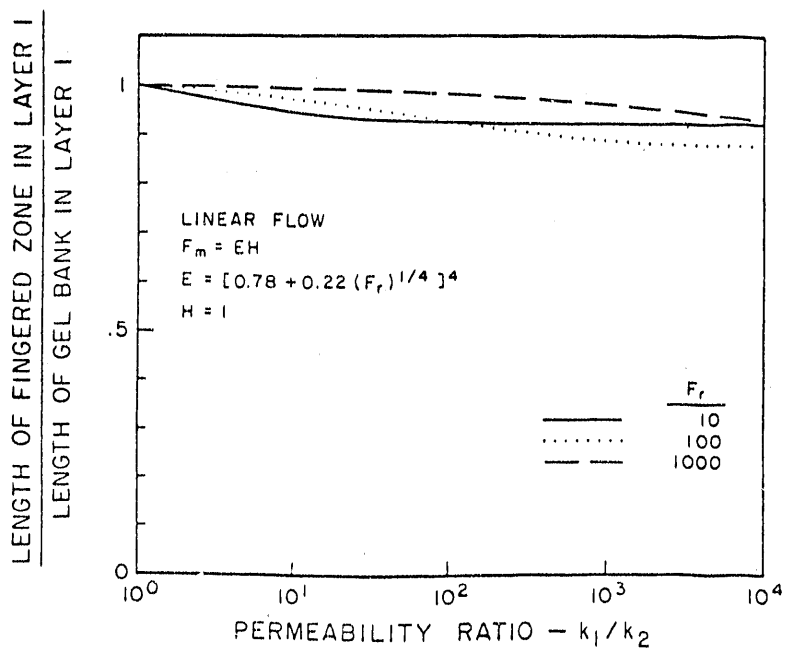


Fig. 39. Sensitivity of Finger Breakthrough to Resistance Factor of the Viscous Fluid: Linear Flow. Length of Fingered Zone in Layer 1 when Fingers Break Through in Layer 2.

Viscous Fingering: Experimental Verification

To test the radial-flow predictions, sequential banks of water, viscous fluid, and water were injected into parallel beadpacks. Each beadpack was configured as one-quarter of a five-spot pattern, with one injector and one producer in diagonally opposite corners (see Fig. 40). The dimensions of the packs were 56 cm x 56 cm x 1.2 cm. The less-permeable pack contained nominally 150-μm glass beads and had a permeability of 13.6 darcies (13.4 μm^2). The more-permeable pack contained nominally 500-μm glass beads and exhibited a permeability of 174 darcies (172 μm^2). The porosity of both packs was 0.38, and both packs were initially completely saturated with water. The two packs were flooded in parallel—experiencing the same pressure drop and injection fluid at any given time. The total fluid injection rate (pack 1 plus pack 2) was maintained constant at 1440 ml/hr.

A viscous water-miscible fluid was injected to reach a radius (r_{p1}) of approximately 35 cm in the most-permeable beadpack. The radius to which the fluid penetrated in the less-permeable pack (r_{p2}) was then noted (see Table 25). Fluorescein dye was included with the viscous bank to allow visualization of its boundaries. Three viscous fluids were used: (1) a mixture of 85% ethanediol and 15% water, (2) 2000-ppm xanthan in water, and (3) 2000-ppm HPAM in aqueous 0.5% KCl. The ethanediol mixture was Newtonian with a viscosity of 11 cp. The xanthan solution was shear-thinning, exhibiting a power-law exponent of 0.36 and providing a viscosity of 99 cp at 11 s^{-1}. The HPAM solution was also shear-thinning, exhibiting a power-law exponent of 0.69 and providing a viscosity of 30 cp at 11 s^{-1}. Experiments confirmed that polymer adsorption in the beadpacks was negligible. All experiments were conducted at room temperature.

Consistent with the predictions of Refs. 24 and 25, all three viscous agents penetrated to a significant degree into the less-permeable pack. The ratio, r_{p2}/r_{p1}, was greater than the square root of the permeability ratio, k_2/k_1, in all three cases.

After placement of the viscous banks, water (without fluorescein) was injected until viscous fingers broke through one of the two viscous banks. Injection was then stopped. Note was made of the following:

1. The bank that was first breached by viscous fingers,
2. The final outer radius of the viscous bank in each pack (r_{fo1} & r_{fo2}),
3. The final inner radius of the viscous bank in each pack (r_{fi1} & r_{fi2}),
4. The number of fingers in each bank,
5. The length of the longest finger in each bank (r_{vf1} & r_{vf2}),
6. The length of the longest finger divided by the final length of the viscous bank, and
7. The ratio, r_{fo}/r_{fi}, for each pack (which, in theory, should approximately equal EH).

The fingering patterns did not show signs of repeating the same flow paths from run to run--indicating good homogeneity in the beadpacks. For each viscous fluid, the parallel displacement experiments were repeated 9 to 12 times. Figure 40 illustrates the important measurements that were made during each experiment. Averages and standard deviation values for the various measurements are listed in Table 25. A listing of results for individual experiments can be found in Appendix E.

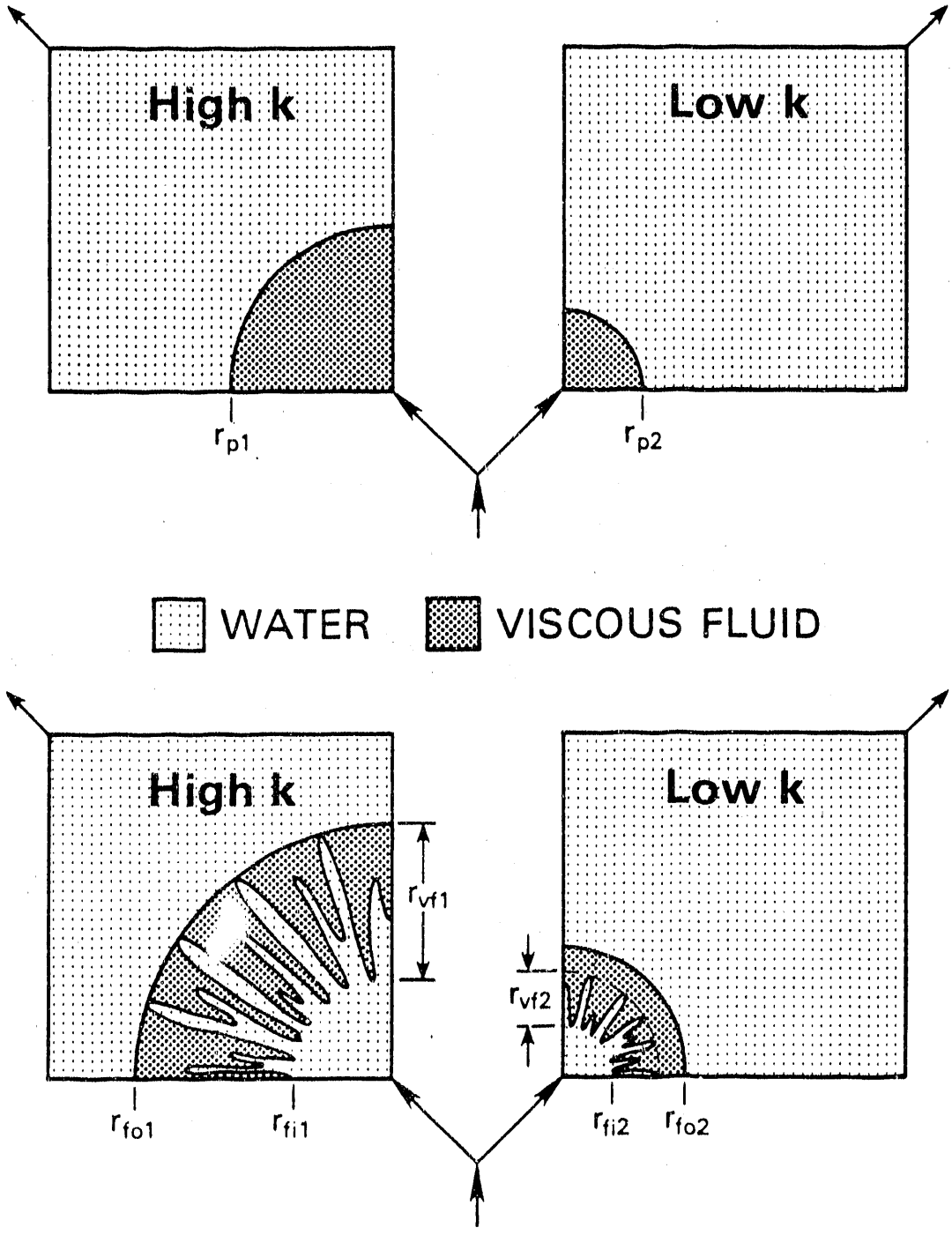


Fig. 40. Important Measurements during Viscous Fingering Experiments.

TABLE 25
Summary of Viscous-Fingering Results

Viscous Fluid:	Ethanediol		2000-ppm Xanthan		2000-ppm HPAM	
Number of replicates:	10		12		9	
	High k Pack	Low k Pack	High k Pack	Low k Pack	High k Pack	Low k Pack
Initial radius of viscous fluid (cm):	35.2±1.3	14.1±1.9	35.8±0.2	11.6±0.7	33.7±1.2	15.1±1.9
Occasions viscous bank is breached first:	7	3	9	3	8	1
Final outer radius of viscous fluid (cm):	41.9±2.9	15.8±1.8	38.8±0.9	12.2±0.8	39.7±1.3	15.8±1.9
Final inner radius of viscous fluid (cm):	19.9±4.4	9.6±2.1	8.0±2.2	4.3±0.5	12.0±1.5	4.8±0.8
Number of fingers:	5±1	18±7	12±3	15±5	7±2	6±2
Length of longest viscous finger (cm):	20.4±2.7	4.5±2.6	30.2±2.1	6.9±1.2	27.5±1.1	6.8±2.9
Length of fingered zone relative to length of viscous bank:	0.93±0.10	0.71±0.22	0.98±0.03	0.86±0.10	0.99±0.03	0.62±0.16
E from fingering data:	2.1±0.3	1.6±0.5	5.2±1.7	2.6±0.4	3.3±0.4	2.5±0.9
E from Eq. 38:	1.9	1.9	2.8	2.7	2.4	2.3
E from Eq. 41:	4.0	4.0	7.7	7.1	5.8	5.6

For all three viscous fluids, viscous fingers broke through the bank in the high-permeability pack more often than in the low-permeability pack. However, regardless of which pack first experienced breakthrough, fingers had traversed most of the viscous bank in the other beadpack. These findings are qualitatively in agreement with the theory, and they have important implications with respect to in-situ dilution and mixing of gelling agents. The results suggest that viscous fingers will facilitate in-situ mixing of fluids to about the same extent in low-permeability zones as in high-permeability zones. This is beneficial if uniform mixing of fluids is desired. However, the results cast doubt on the utility of schemes that rely on nonuniform mixing to optimize gel placement. For example, fingers from a water postflush are not expected to eliminate the need for zone isolation during gel placement (i.e., by breaking through a gelant bank in a low-permeability layer before breaking through in a high-permeability layer). Also, one can not rely on viscous fingering to promote or inhibit gelation in one zone to a greater extent than in another zone.

The above observations also have an important implication in traditional polymer floods where crossflow can occur between layers. Researchers[86-88] have suggested that a small bank of a viscous fluid can cause surprisingly high levels of incremental oil recovery if crossflow can occur in a stratified reservoir. They argue that the viscous bank in a high-permeability layer can outrun the bank in less-permeable layers. Then, water behind the viscous bank in the high-permeability layer is forced to cross flow into and displace oil from the less-permeable layers.

The observations of viscous fingering reported here introduce questions about the validity of the above displacement mechanism. The above mechanism requires that significant volumes of water from the postflush must cross flow from the high-permeability layer into the low-permeability layer. By implication, this requires that viscous fingers must somehow break through the viscous bank in the low permeability layer substantially before breakthrough in the high-permeability layer. Our findings raise doubt that this will happen. More work is needed to resolve this issue.

The factor, E, provides one means to compare theoretical predictions with experimental results. As mentioned earlier, the outer radius of the fingered zone is $[(r_{pf}^2-r_o^2)EH+r_o^2]^{0.5}$, while the inner radius of the fingered zone is $[(r_{pf}^2-r_o^2)/EH+r_o^2]^{0.5}$. If the heterogeneity factor (H) equals one (which should be the case for our homogeneous beadpacks) and if the wellbore radius (r_o) is negligible, E may be estimated from experimental data. In particular, E is approximately equal to the outer radius of the fingered zone divided by the inner radius of the fingered zone (r_{fo}/r_{fi}). The bottom of Table 25 lists values for E that were determined in this way from the experimental data. For comparison, Table 25 also lists values for E that were calculated using Eqs. 38 and 41. (In the high- and low-permeability packs, the geometrically averaged values for F_r that were used in Eqs. 38 and 41 were (1) 11 and 11, respectively, for ethanediol; (2) 30 and 26, respectively, for the xanthan solution; and (3) 20 and 19, respectively, for the HPAM solution.) For all but one of the pack-fluid combinations, Eq. 38 provided a reasonably close match to the experimentally determined value for E. The exception was the xanthan-high-permeability-pack data. Eq. 41 overestimated the experimental value for E in all cases.

Note in Table 25 that the final outer radius of the viscous fluid is least for the 2000-ppm xanthan solution and is greatest for the ethanediol mixture. This is true for both the high- and the low-permeability packs. This indicates that viscous fingering is most severe for the xanthan solution and least severe for the ethanediol. Two factors may be responsible for this ordering. First, fingering becomes more severe with increased mobility contrast. (The xanthan solution is the most viscous, while ethanediol is the least viscous of the three fluids.) Second, fingering is reported to be more severe for shear-thinning fluids than for Newtonian fluids.[85,89] (The xanthan solution is the most pseudoplastic of the fluids, while ethanediol is Newtonian.)

Conclusions

1. For near-wellbore gel treatments in unfractured injection wells, diffusion and/or dispersion usually will not eliminate the need for zone isolation during gel placement.

2. During gel placement in parallel laboratory corefloods, diffusion and dispersion can mislead one to conclude that zone isolation is not needed during gel placement in field projects.

3. For near-wellbore gel treatments in unfractured injection wells, a water postflush usually will not eliminate the need for zone isolation during gel placement.

4. If a viscous fluid is injected into a radial, multilayer system and then followed by a water postflush, both theory and experiments indicate that viscous fingers usually will break through the viscous bank in the most-permeable layer first. However, at the time of this breakthrough, the fingers will have traversed most of the viscous bank in a less-permeable layer.

8. AN EXAMINATION OF FLOW-PROFILE CHANGES FOR FIELD APPLICATIONS OF GEL TREATMENTS IN INJECTION WELLS

In several reports,[24,25,26] theoretical analyses are presented that examine how flow profiles in injection wells are modified when zones are not isolated during gel placement. An important prediction of these investigations is that injection profiles usually are not expected to improve significantly in unfractured wells if gels are placed without using zone isolation.

The question arises, "Does field experience with gel treatments in injection wells confirm or contradict the conclusions of these papers?"

Before answering this question, several points should be made to narrow the scope of the issue to be addressed here. First, we recognize that changing the flow profile in an injection well will not insure that sweep efficiency will be improved in a reservoir. Particularly if crossflow can occur between strata, changes in injection profiles are irrelevant beyond the outer radii of the gel banks. Also, flow behind pipe can negate any significance of a measured injection profile.

Second, changes in oil production rates or in water cuts in nearby production wells are not necessarily relevant to the question raised here. Responses in production wells are strongly influenced by well workovers, pumping rates in production wells, and changes in injection rates in all nearby wells—not just by changes in injection profiles in a given well.

Third, we recognize that flow profiles in a vertically fractured well can be meaningless. The high conductivity of the fracture can readily allow fluids to move vertically (within the fracture) after they leave the wellbore. Thus, this analysis is not intended to argue that an observed change of an injection profile in a fractured well has some meaning. Instead, the objective here is to establish whether or not injection profiles in unfractured wells are improved if gels are placed without zone isolation.

Certain limitations must be understood when trying to establish the flow profile in an injection well. First, the tools and methods that are used to measure flow profiles (spinner surveys and radioactive-tracer flow logs) have limitations. Typically, these tools measure the flow past a given point to within plus or minus five to ten percent of the total flow.[90] Thus, changes that amount to less than ±5-10% of total flow are not usually significant. Second, the methods have limitations on how precisely they can pinpoint where the fluid leaves the wellbore. Furthermore, for positions that are separated vertically by only a few feet, one must consider the likelihood of flow behind pipe and vertical crossflow. Unless unusual precautions are taken, different elevations of a given profile should not be considered distinct unless they are separated by a reasonable distance (several feet).

Analysis Example

When interpreting injection profile changes, some reports apparently failed to consider some of the above limitations. Results reported by Chang *et al.*[65] will be used to illustrate this. Fig. 41 is taken from Fig. 15 of Ref. 65. This figure shows the results from six injection profiles that were measured in one well. The first profile was obtained during water injection prior to the gel treatment. The four subsequent profiles were taken during injection of a xanthan gelling agent. The final profile was obtained during water injection after the gel treatment. Based on this figure, Chang *et al.* concluded:

1) The fraction of fluid entering the most-permeable zone increased when a xanthan formulation was injected instead of water.

2) The final injection profile during water injection after gel placement was more favorable than the injection profile during water injection prior to the gel treatment.

Chang *et al.* do not provide an analysis of the profiles to support their conclusions. Therefore, an analysis will be provided here.

For all profiles in Fig. 41, most fluid enters the 5-10 ft interval that is centered at a depth of 1578 ft. This interval should be considered as a single zone. The tool limitations mentioned previously provide one reason for doing this. A second reason is that all strata in the bottom 5-10 feet are probably connected (either by flow behind pipe or by vertical crossflow). Attempts to distinguish details of the flow profile in the lowest zone would be of questionable value.

Figure 42 identifies the percentages of fluid that enter the different zones for the six injection profiles. During water injection prior to the gel treatment, 63% of the fluid entered the bottom zone. During injection of the xanthan gel formulation, the percentages of fluid that entered the bottom zone varied between 53% and 70% in no discernable pattern. During this period the average percentage (and standard deviation) was 61% (±7%). During water injection after placement of the gel, the percentage of fluid entering the bottom zone was 60%. Thus, the percentage of fluid entering the bottom zone did not change significantly either during xanthan injection or as a final result of the gel treatment.

Of the remaining intervals in well WI-A, there are no changes in the flow profiles that look definitive. One might argue that a zone opened at 1525-1530 ft in the SWAT 4 and post-treatment profiles. However, aside from fracturing the well in that zone, what argument could be used to justify this? How could the permeability of this zone suddenly go from zero to some value that would account for 10 percent of the total flow? Similarly, it appears that 10 percent of the fluid left the wellbore at 1538 ft in the pre-treatment profile; then this zone was somehow plugged during the next 3-4 profiles, and somehow became unplugged during the last 1-2 profiles. How could this have happened? The answers to these questions probably have more to do with limitations of the method of measuring profiles than it does with real profile changes.

Thus, an analysis of Chang's profiles reveals that (within the limitations of the measurements) no significant profile changes occurred either during injection of the xanthan gelant or as a final result of the gel treatment.

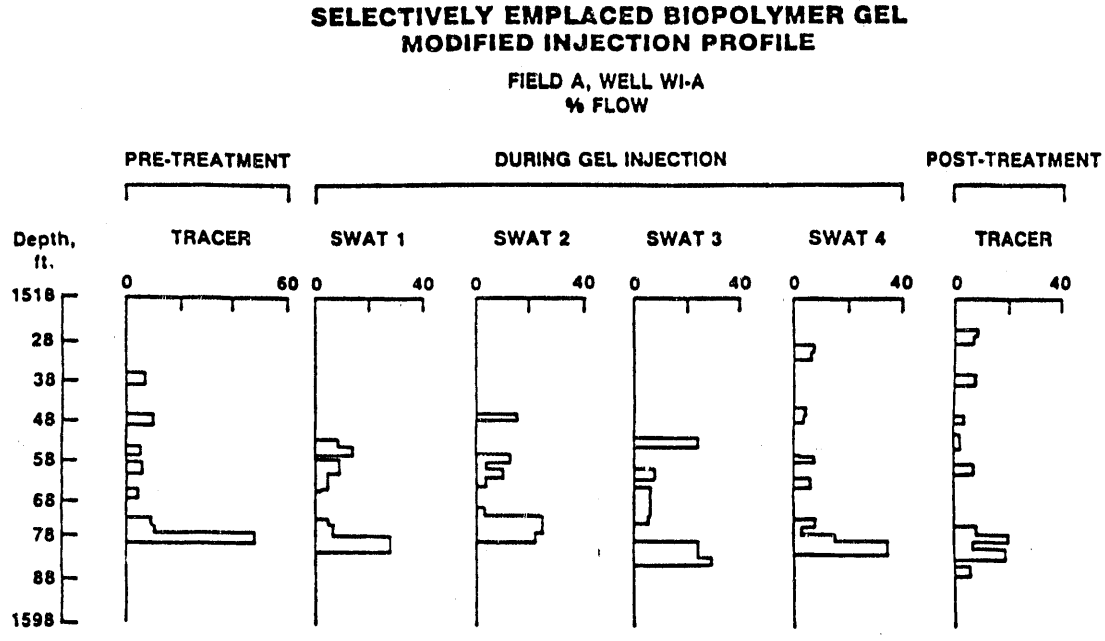


Fig. 41. Injection Profiles from Chang *et al.*[65]

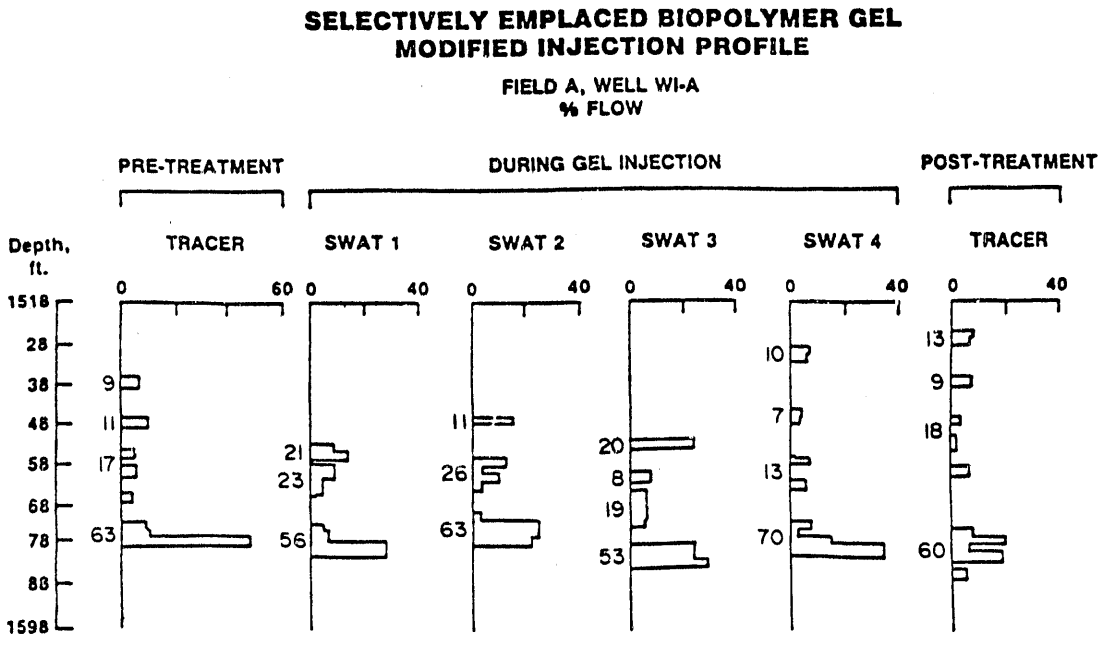


Fig. 42. Injection Profiles with Flow Percentages.

Analysis Summary for 43 Pairs of Injection Profiles

Table 26 provides a summary of similar analyses of 43 pairs of injection profiles that were reported in the literature.[31,33,46,65,91-98] For each pair, one profile was obtained before the gel treatment, and another profile was obtained after the gel treatment. Zones were not isolated during gel placement. For each entry in Table 26, the following questions are addressed:

1. What was the gelant?
2. Was the profile changed significantly as a result of the gel treatment?
3. Was the profile improved as a result of the gel treatment?
4. Was the injector fractured prior to the gel treatment?
5. What was the lithology of the reservoir?
6. Was injectivity (BPD/psi) reported both before and after the gel treatment?
7. What was the literature source? (Specific figures used from each source are included in the reference column of Table 26 in parentheses.)

A question mark (?) indicates that no information was provided concerning the listed item. Entries that are grouped together in Table 26 refer to wells that were treated within the same field.

About 30 percent of the entries in Table 26 demonstrate a clear improvement in the injection profile resulting from a gel treatment. About 40 percent show no significant improvement. In the remaining cases, improvements in injection profiles are slight or debatable.

Unfortunately, the literature does not provide enough information to correlate profile improvement with whether or not a well is fractured. In 21% of the cases, the wells were reported to be fractured. In the remaining 79% of the cases, the literature sources did not state whether or not the wells were fractured. Because of the widespread use of fracturing to stimulate wells, one can not simply assume that all of these wells were not fractured. Between 1948 and 1968, more than 500,000 wells were intentionally fractured.[99] Many other wells have been fractured unintentionally during waterflood operations. Without knowing whether or not a given well was fractured, we can not establish that injection profiles can be improved in unfractured injection wells without zone isolation.

Assessing whether or not zones can or should be isolated during gel placement is a critical issue that must be addressed. Gel treatments account for approximately 20% of all EOR projects in the United States. In spite of the large number of projects, less than two percent of the total EOR oil production rate can be attributed to these gel treatments.[5,6] This fact is consistent with a widespread view in the industry that the success of gel treatments in injection wells has been very sporadic. A study conducted in 1985 revealed that less than 45% of near-wellbore gel treatments were successful.[7] In the vast majority of gel applications during the 1980's, zones were not isolated during gel placement. This practice could be partly responsible for the sporadic success rate for gel treatments.

TABLE 26
Published Injection Profiles: Before versus After Gel Treatments

Gelant	Profile Changed?	Profile Improved?	Injector Fractured?	Lithology	Before/After Injectivity Given?	Reference
Cr-xanthan	no	no	?	sandstone	no	65 (Fig. 15)
Cr-xanthan	no	no	?	sandstone	no	91 (Fig. 4)
Cr-xanthan	slightly	slightly	?	sandstone	no	91 " "
Cr-xanthan	slightly	slightly	?	sandstone	no	91 " "
Cr-xanthan	yes	yes	?	sandstone	no	91 " "
Cr-xanthan	slightly	debatable	?	sandstone	no	91 (Fig. 7)
Cr-xanthan	yes	yes	?	sandstone	no	91 " "
Cr-xanthan	yes	no	?	sandstone	no	91 " "
Cr-xanthan	yes	no	?	sandstone	no	91 " "
Cr-xanthan	slightly	debatable	?	sandstone	yes	33 (Fig. 7)
Cr-xanthan	slightly	debatable	?	sandstone	yes	33 " "
Cr-xanthan	slightly	slightly	?	sandstone	yes	33 (Fig. 8)
Cr-xanthan	no	no	?	sandstone	yes	33 " "
Cr-xanthan	yes	debatable	?	sandstone	no	33 (Fig. 10)
Cr-xanthan	yes	debatable	?	sandstone	no	33 " "
Cr-xanthan	yes	no	?	sandstone	no	33 " "
Cr-xanthan	no	no	?	sandstone	no	33 (Fig. 13)
Cr-xanthan	debatable	debatable	?	sandstone	no	33 " "
Cr-xanthan	yes	yes	?	sandstone	no	33 (Fig. 15)
Cr-xanthan	yes	yes	?	sandstone	no	33 " "
Cr-xanthan	no	no	?	sandstone	no	92 (Fig. 6)
Cr-xanthan	yes	no	?	sandstone	no	92 " "
Cr-xanthan	yes	yes	?	sandstone	no	92 " "
Cr-xanthan	slightly	slightly	?	sandstone	no	92 " "
Cr-xanthan	yes	no	yes	sandstone	yes	92 (Fig. 7)
resorcinol-formaldehyde	no	no	?	sandstone	yes	31 (Fig. 11)
phenol-formaldehyde	yes	yes	?	carbonate	no	46 (Fig. 8)
alcaligenes	no	no	yes	sandstone	yes	93 (Fig. 3)
alcaligenes	no	no	yes	sandstone	yes	93 " "
alcaligenes	no	no	yes	sandstone	yes	93 " "
alcaligenes	debatable	debatable	yes	sandstone	yes	93 " "

TABLE 26 (continued)

Gelant	Profile Changed?	Profile Improved?	Injector Fractured?	Lithology	Before/After Injectivity Given?	Reference
acrylamide monomer	yes	yes	?	?	no	94 (Fig. 5)
complexed PAM	yes	yes	?	shale	no	95
complexed PAM	yes	yes	?	sandstone	no	95
Zr-PAM	yes	yes	?	sandstone	yes	96 (Fig. 4)
Zr-PAM	yes	debatable	?	sandstone	yes	96 (Fig. 5)
Zr-PAM	yes	yes	?	carbonate	yes	96 (Fig. 6)
Al-PAM	yes	yes	yes	sandstone	yes	97 (Fig. 4a)
Al-PAM	no	no	yes	sandstone	yes	97 (Fig. 4b)
Al-PAM	no	no	yes	sandstone	yes	97 (Fig. 5a)
Al-PAM	no	no	yes	sandstone	yes	97 (Fig. 5b)
crosslinked PAM	yes	yes	?	?	no	98 (Fig. 1)
aluminate	debatable	debatable	?	?	no	98 (Fig. 10)

Field Work Needed to Resolve the Issue

The issue being discussed here could be settled relatively easily by conducting one or more well designed field tests. Wells should be selected that are known not to be fractured. Several inexpensive methods are available to determine whether or not a well has been fractured, including 1) pressure transient analysis, 2) measuring injectivity (BPD/psi) as a function of injection rate, and 3) noting whether the well has ever been exposed to a pressure that was greater than the formation parting pressure. (Incidently, very few of the literature sources here provide this information.[31,33,46,65,91-98] Also, few of these sources even provide a comparison of injectivity changes before versus after the gel treatments.)

In the well(s) selected for these field tests, at least two distinct zones should be present. These zones should be separated by a sufficient distance (10 feet or more) to insure that injection profiles can clearly distinguish flow into the different zones. This separation should also help to minimize complications associated with fluid crossflow between adjacent zones and with flow behind pipe. The permeabilities of the zones should be noticeably different (by at least a factor of two). Ideally, core samples would be available from the different zones 1) to confirm permeabilities and porosities and 2) to allow determination of gel properties in the reservoir rock.

A number of tests should be conducted both before and after placement of the gel. These include 1) determining water injectivity as a function of injection rate (at pressures below the formation parting pressure), 2) determining accurate injection flow profiles, and 3) pressure transient analysis. Injectivity changes should be noted during injection of the gelants. Care should be taken not to fracture the well during the test. For a more elaborate test, injection profiles could also be measured during injection of the gelant.

Results from these different tests can then be compared with predictions from the theoretical analyses.[24,25,26] Resolution of this issue should significantly improve the success rate for near-wellbore gel treatments.

Summary

In summary, theoretical analyses indicate that injection profiles usually are not expected to improve significantly in unfractured wells if gels are placed without using zone isolation. The petroleum literature does not provide enough information to confirm or contradict these predictions. In view of the sporadic success of gel treatments, identification of when zone isolation is/is not needed during gel placement is a critical issue. One or more well designed field tests could help to resolve this matter.

9. PLACEMENT OF GELS IN PRODUCTION WELLS

Coping with excess water production is always a challenging task for field operators. The cost of handling and disposing produced water can significantly shorten the economic producing life of a well. The hydrostatic pressure created by high fluid levels in the well is also detrimental to oil production.

The two major sources of excess water production are coning and channeling. Water coning is a common problem encountered when a reservoir is produced via a bottom-water-drive mechanism. Fractures and high permeability streaks are the common causes of premature water breakthrough during waterfloods. Polymer gels have been applied to many wells to reduce excess water production without adversely affecting oil production.[2,34,100-102] Hessert and Fleming[2] reported that polymer gels are particularly effective in suppressing water coning. However, in many cases, gel treatments have not been successful. During gel placement in production wells, much of the gel formulation will enter zones that are responsible for the excess water production. However, some of this fluid may enter into and damage oil-productive strata.

The objectives of this study are to mathematically model the placement of gels in production wells and to examine the potential impact of invasion of gelants into oil-producing zones. Particular attention will be paid to the impact of two phenomena. The first is hysteresis of oil-water relative permeability curves that occurs during the "pump-in, pump-out" sequence used during gel placement in production wells. The second phenomenon is that gels (or polymers) can reduce the relative permeability to water more than to oil.

Theoretical Model

The first objective of this analysis is to develop a theoretical model for gel placement in production wells. Fractional flow theory is applied to mathematically model the degree of penetration of gelants into zones with different permeabilities during unrestricted injection.

Basic Assumptions

In examining the placement of gels in production wells, we assume the following:

- All fluids are incompressible and Newtonian.
- Gelant formulations are miscible with water.
- The gelation reaction is slow relative to the placement process.
- Dispersion, retention, and inaccessible pore volume are negligible.
- The resistance factor is independent of permeability.
- There is no mass transfer between phases.
- Gravity and capillarity are negligible.
- Darcy's law applies and no fingering occurs during the displacement process.
- Each layer is homogeneous, isotropic, and isothermal.
- The reservoir consists of a number of horizontal noncommunicating layers.
- All layers have the same areal dimensions and share the same injector and producer. (The layers can have different thicknesses.)

For simplicity, we assume that the water and oil relative permeabilities are functions of water saturation only. The following equations are used throughout this analysis for relative permeability calculations.[103]

$$k_{rw} = k_{rw}^{o}\left(\frac{S_w - S_{wr}}{1 - S_{wr} - S_{or}}\right)^{n_w} \tag{42}$$

$$k_{ro} = k_{ro}^{o}\left(\frac{1 - S_w - S_{or}}{1 - S_{wr} - S_{or}}\right)^{n_o} \tag{43}$$

Linear Flow

The behavior of fluid flow in a porous medium during the placement of aqueous gelants is assumed to be the same as that of aqueous polymer solutions during the polymer-flooding process.[104] Fig. 43 is a schematic diagram of the saturation profile in layer i at a certain instant during the placement process. In linear flow, the instantaneous pressure drop in layer i between the producer and the injector is

$$\Delta P_i = \frac{\mu_w \phi_i \bar{S}_{wi}}{k_i}\left(F_r \int_0^{L_{pi}} \frac{f_{wi}^p}{k_{rwi}}dx + \int_{L_{pi}}^{L_{pki}} \frac{f_{wi}}{k_{rwi}}dx + \frac{f_{wIi}}{k_{rwIi}}(L_{pm} - L_{pki}) + \frac{f_{wIi}}{k_{rwIi}}\Psi_i L_{pm}\right)\frac{dL_{pi}}{dt} \tag{44}$$

where f_w and f_w^p are fractional flow functions of water and gelant, respectively; L_p and L_{pk} are the depth of penetration of the gelant front and oil bank, respectively; L_{pm} is a reference distance from the wellbore beyond which the gel treatment has no effect on fluid saturations; and the subscript I denotes the initial condition. Ψ is defined as the ratio of the pressure drop between L_{pm} and the injection well to the pressure drop between the production well and L_{pm} just prior to the injection of any gelants (see Ref. 24 for a more detailed discussion of Ψ). The average water saturation behind the gelant front, $\bar{S}_{wi}$, is determined by using the Welge integration procedure.[105] Mass balance and the Darcy equation have been used to derive Eq. 44.

Consider the case in which all layers share the same injector and producer and all fluids involved are incompressible. The instantaneous pressure drop across layer 1 is the same as that across layer i. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}&\int_0^{L_{pi}}\left(F_r\int_0^{L_{pi}}\frac{f_{wi}^p}{k_{rwi}}dx + \int_{L_{pi}}^{L_{pki}}\frac{f_{wi}}{k_{rwi}}dx - \frac{f_{wIi}}{k_{rwIi}}L_{pki} + \frac{f_{wIi}}{k_{rwIi}}(\Psi_i + 1)L_{pm}\right)dL_{pi} = \\ &\frac{\phi_1 k_i \bar{S}_{w1}}{\phi_i k_1 \bar{S}_{wi}}\int_0^{L_{p1}}\left(F_r\int_0^{L_{p1}}\frac{f_{w1}^p}{k_{rw1}}dx + \int_{L_{p1}}^{L_{pk1}}\frac{f_{w1}}{k_{rw1}}dx - \frac{f_{wI1}}{k_{rwI1}}L_{pk1} + \frac{f_{wI1}}{k_{rwI1}}(\Psi_1 + 1)L_{pm}\right)dL_{p1}\end{aligned} \tag{45}$$

The penetration of a gelant into layer i (L_{pi}) when the oil bank reaches L_{pm} in layer 1 can be determined by solving Eq. 45. Fractional flow theory is applied to determine the frontal position of the oil bank (L_{pki}) relative to that of the gelant front (L_{pi}) and the saturation profile during the displacement process. Analytical solutions for the integrations are difficult to obtain because of the complexity of the functions involved. Instead, the trapezoidal rule is employed to evaluate the integrations numerically. Finally, the secant method is applied to solve for the degree of penetration of the gelant (L_{pi}/L_{p1}).

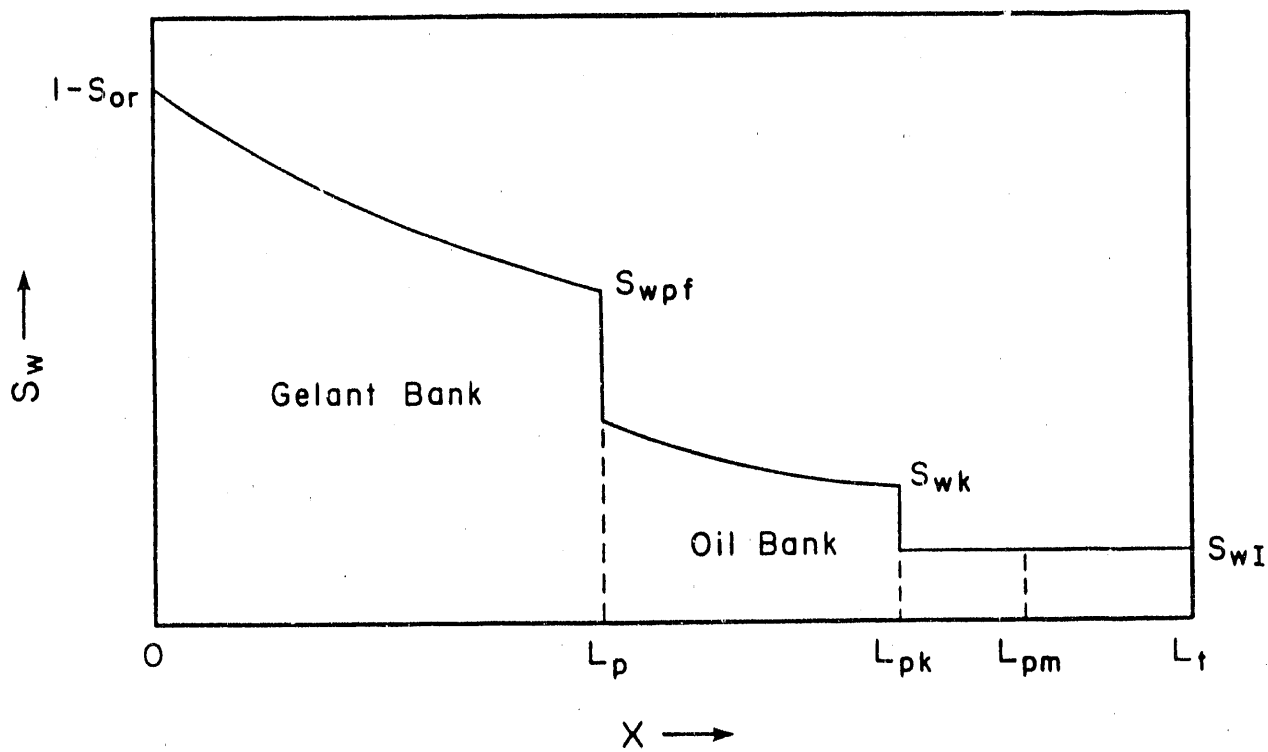


Fig. 43. Saturation Profile in Layer i during the Placement Process.

For laboratory parallel linear corefloods, the Ψ values for all layers are zero. When the oil bank (L_{pk}) reaches the outlet of the most-permeable core (core 1), the distance that a gelant has propagated in the less-permeable cores (core i) can be calculated by using the following equation.

$$\int_0^{L_{pi}} \left(F_r \int_0^{L_{pi}} \frac{f_{wi}^p}{k_{rwi}} dx + \int_{L_{pi}}^{L_{pki}} \frac{f_{wi}}{k_{rwi}} dx + \frac{f_{wIi}}{k_{rwIi}} (L_t - L_{pki}) \right) dL_{pi} =$$

$$\frac{\phi_1 k_i \bar{S}_{w1}}{\phi_i k_1 \bar{S}_{wi}} \int_0^{L_{p1}} \left(F_r \int_0^{L_{p1}} \frac{f_{w1}^p}{k_{rw1}} dx + \int_{L_{p1}}^{L_t} \frac{f_{w1}}{k_{rw1}} dx \right) dL_{p1} \tag{46}$$

Radial Flow

A similar procedure is followed in developing the radial model for placement of gels in production wells. The degree of penetration of gelant, $(r_{pi} - r_o)/(r_{p1} - r_o)$, is determined by solving the following equation.

$$\int_{r_{Do}}^{r_{Dpi}} \left(F_r \int_{r_{Do}}^{r_{Dpi}} \frac{f_{wi}^p}{k_{rwi}} \frac{dr_D}{r_D} + \int_{r_{Dpi}}^{r_{Dpki}} \frac{f_{wi}}{k_{rwi}} \frac{dr_D}{r_D} + \frac{f_{wIi}}{k_{rwIi}} \ln \frac{r_{Dpm}}{r_{Dpki}} + \frac{f_{wIi}}{k_{rwIi}} \Psi_i \ln \frac{r_{Dpm}}{r_{Dpo}} \right) dr_{Dpi} =$$

$$\frac{\phi_1 k_i \bar{S}_{w1}}{\phi_i k_1 \bar{S}_{wi}} \int_{r_{Do}}^{r_{Dp1}} \left(F_r \int_{r_{Do}}^{r_{Dp1}} \frac{f_{w1}^p}{k_{rw1}} \frac{dr_D}{r_D} + \int_{r_{Dp1}}^{r_{Dpk1}} \frac{f_{w1}}{k_{rw1}} \frac{dr_D}{r_D} + \frac{f_{wI1}}{k_{rwI1}} \ln \frac{r_{Dpm}}{r_{Dpk1}} + \frac{f_{wI1}}{k_{rwI1}} \Psi_1 \ln \frac{r_{Dpm}}{r_{Dpo}} \right) dr_{Dp1} \tag{47}$$

A dimensionless variable, r_D, defined as

$$r_D = \left(\frac{r}{r_e} \right)^2 \tag{48}$$

is introduced here so that the solution scheme used in solving Eq. 45 can be applied directly in solving Eq. 47.

For laboratory parallel radial corefloods, the following equation is used to determine the degree of penetration of gelants when the oil bank reaches the outlet of the most-permeable core.

$$\int_{r_{Do}}^{r_{Dpi}} \left(F_r \int_{r_{Do}}^{r_{Dpi}} \frac{f_{wi}^p}{k_{rwi}} \frac{dr_D}{r_D} + \int_{r_{Dpi}}^{r_{Dpki}} \frac{f_{wi}}{k_{rwi}} \frac{dr_D}{r_D} - \frac{f_{wIi}}{k_{rwIi}} \ln r_{Dpki} \right) dr_{Dpi} =$$

$$\frac{\phi_1 k_i \bar{S}_{w1}}{\phi_i k_1 \bar{S}_{wi}} \int_{r_{Do}}^{r_{Dp1}} \left(F_r \int_{r_{Do}}^{r_{Dp1}} \frac{f_{w1}^p}{k_{rw1}} \frac{dr_D}{r_D} + \int_{r_{Dp1}}^{r_{Dpk1}} \frac{f_{w1}}{k_{rw1}} \frac{dr_D}{r_D} - \frac{f_{wI1}}{k_{rwI1}} \ln r_{Dpk1} \right) dr_{Dp1} \tag{49}$$

In this study, the degree of penetration of gelants is determined when the *oil bank* in the most-permeable layer reaches r_{pm} (L_{pm}) or the outlet of the core. However, if no oil bank forms in the most-permeable layer (e.g., if the most-permeable layer is watered-out), then the degree of penetration is determined when the *gelant front* reaches r_{pm} (L_{pm}) or the outlet of the core. In some unusual cases ($k_1/k_i \sim 1$), the invasion of gelants into a given less-permeable layer can be slightly greater than that into the most-permeable layer. The degree of penetration of gelants, in this case,

is determined when the *oil bank in the less-permeable layer* reaches r_{pm} (L_{pm}) or the outlet of the core. In all cases that we studied, the degree of penetration of gelants is not sensitive to the choice of r_{pm} (L_{pm}) or the position of the gelant front. Appendixes F and G provide Fortran coding for what is referred to in this paper as the "theoretical model" (Appendix F for radial flow, and Appendix G for linear flow).

Linear vs. Radial Corefloods

To quantify the impact of the factors affecting the degree of penetration of gelants, consider injection of a gelant into a number of parallel homogeneous cores of equal length from a common injection port. The most-permeable core is completely watered-out, and the rock and fluid properties are summarized in Table 27.

The degree of penetration of gelant into a less-permeable core (core i) is presented in Fig. 44. (These results were generated by using Eqs. 46 and 49.) As expected, Fig. 44 shows that the degree of penetration of a gelant into the less-permeable cores decreases with increasing permeability contrast. Figure 44 also demonstrates that the degree of penetration of a gelant into the less-permeable cores is less in linear flow than in radial flow. This fact was also noted for gel placement in injection wells.[24] It is partly the reason why zone isolation is more likely to be needed during gel placement in radial flow than in linear flow.

Since the geometry surrounding an unfractured production well is radial rather than linear, the following analysis will focus on radial cases only. Unless otherwise noted, the rock and fluid properties of the examples involved in the following analysis are described in Table 27.

A basic principle in polymer flooding is that an increase in resistance factor will increase the degree of penetration into the less-permeable layer.[24] Figure 44 demonstrates that this principle is generally valid in production well treatments. However, this trend is moderated significantly at low oil-water viscosity ratios.

A comparison of Fig. 44 in this report and Fig. 1 from Ref. 24 reveals that the degree of penetration of a gelant into a given less-permeable layer in production well treatments is similar to that in injection well treatments.[24] Hence, the need for zone isolation is of concern during gel placement in production wells.

Fluid flow during gel placement in production wells can be characterized using fractional flow theory. The factors affecting fractional flow (such as the oil-water viscosity ratio, the water/oil relative permeability curves and the fluid saturations in the porous medium) can also affect the degree of penetration of gelants.

As can be seen in Fig. 45, the degree of penetration of a gelant into a given less-permeable layer increases with decreasing oil-water viscosity ratio. However, the effect becomes less significant at low oil-water viscosity ratios.

Figure 46 shows that the degree of penetration is fairly insensitive to the end-point relative permeability to water (k^o_{rw}). Figure 46 also demonstrates that gelants penetrate less into the less-permeable layer as the initial water saturation increases in the most-permeable layer. In examining the effect of water/oil relative permeabilities on the degree of penetration of gelants, we assume that the water relative permeability curve shifts proportionately with the changing end-point values. The oil relative permeability curve remains unchanged throughout this analysis.

TABLE 27
Parameters for Coreflood Cases

$k'_{rw} = 0.1$	$k'_{ro} = 1$
$\phi_1/\phi_i = 1$	$\mu_o/\mu_w = 10$
$S_{wr} = 0.2$	$S_{or} = 0.2$
$S_{w1} = 0.8$	$S_{wi} = 0.2$
$F_r = 1$	
For radial coreflood cases:	
$r_o = 0.5$ ft	$r_e = 50$ ft

TABLE 28
Parameters for Unfractured 5-Spot Cases

$k'_{rw} = 0.1$	$k'_{ro} = 1$
$S_{wr} = 0.2$	$S_{or} = 0.2$
$S_{w1} = 0.8$	$S_{wi} = 0.2$
$\phi_1/\phi_i = 1$	
Well pattern:	20-acre 5-spot
$r_o = 0.5$ ft	$r_e = 372.4$ ft
$r_{p1} = 50$ ft	$r_{pm} = 100$ ft

TABLE 29
Parameters Used When Comparing the Theoretical and Numerical Models

$k'_{rw} = 0.1$	$k'_{ro} = 1$
$\phi_1/\phi_i = 1$	$\mu_o/\mu_w = 10$
$S_{wr} = 0.2$	$S_{or} = 0.2$
$S_{w1} = 0.8$	$S_{wi} = 0.5$

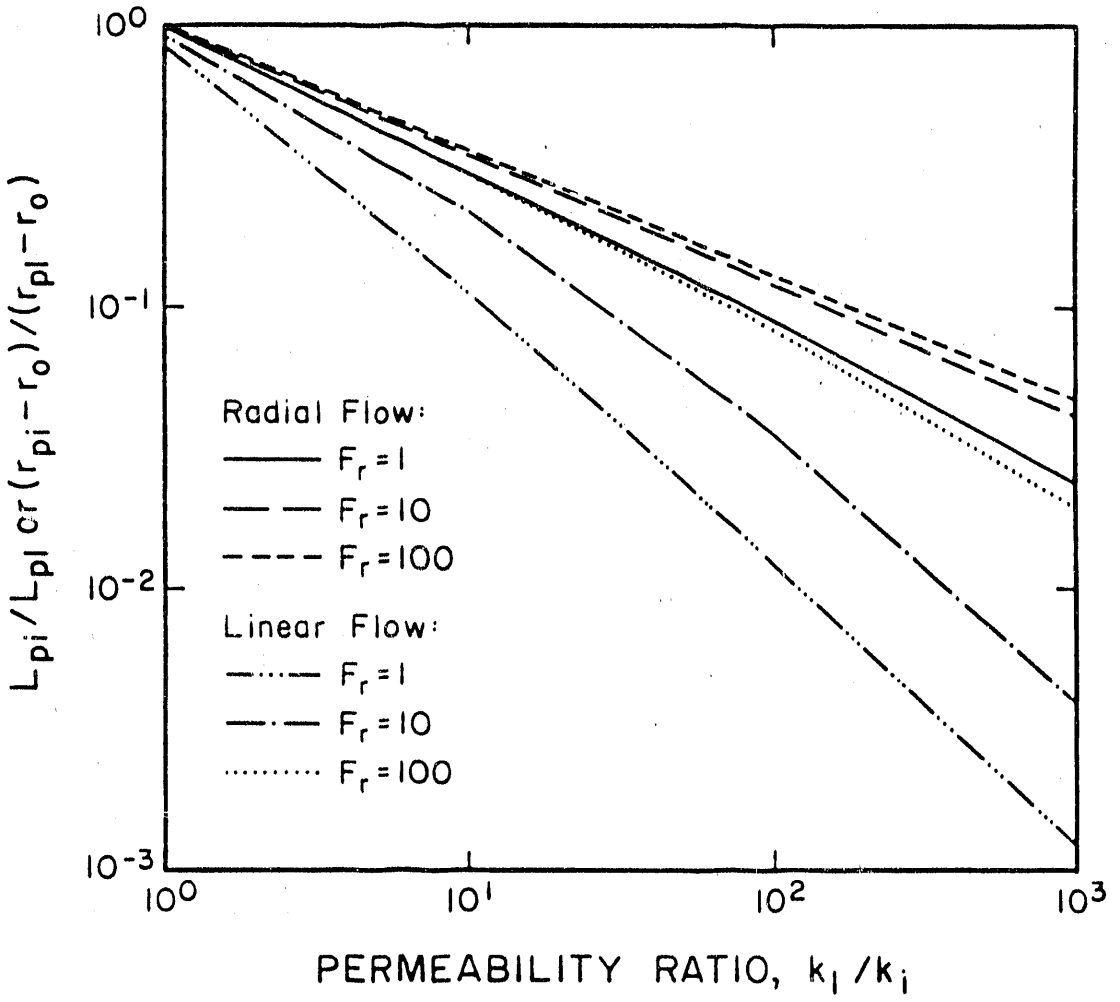


Fig. 44. Radial vs. Linear Parallel Corefloods (μ_o/μ_w=10); Degree of Penetration into Core i (r_{pl} = 100 r_o, $\phi_l = \phi_i$).

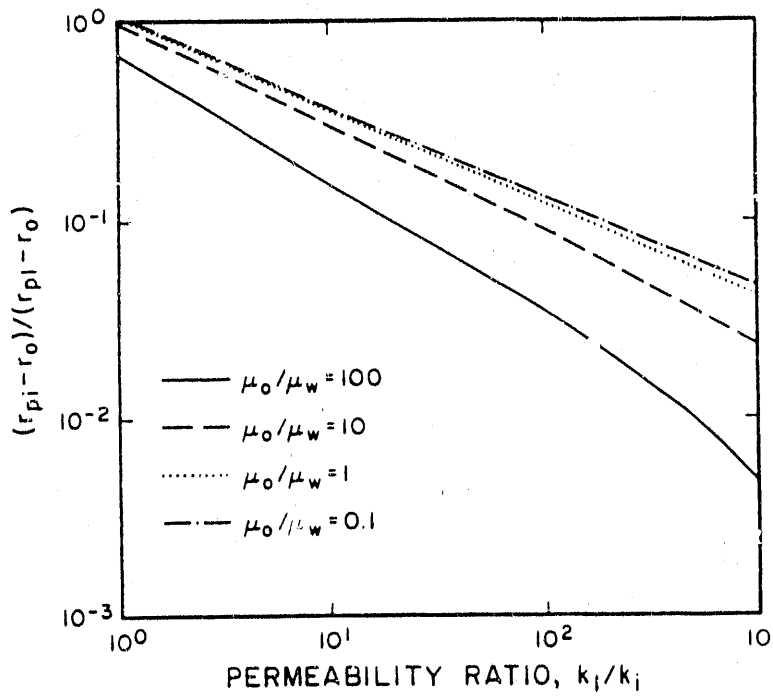


Fig. 45. Effect of Oil/Water Viscosity Ratio on Degree of Penetration into Core i (Radial Flow, $F_r = 1$).

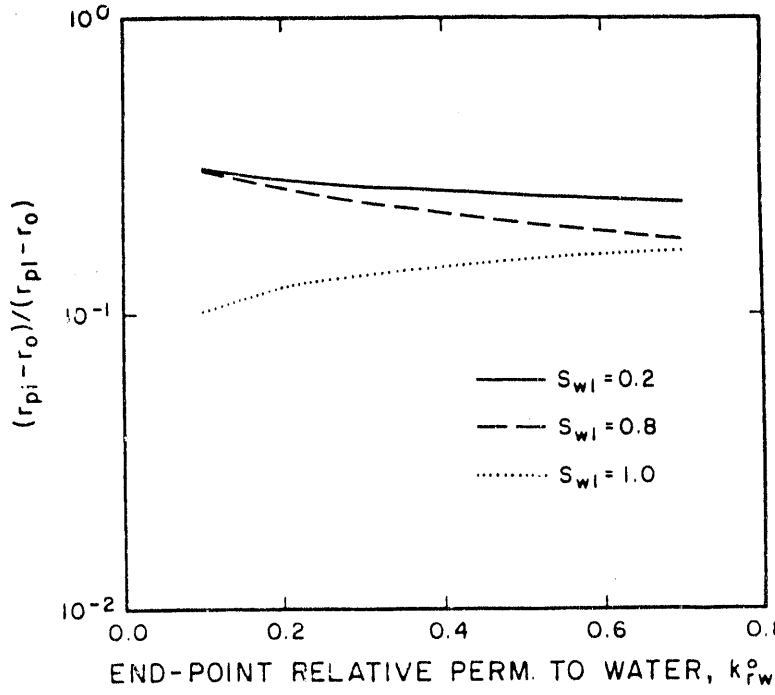


Fig. 46. Degree of Penetration into Core i; Effects of End-Point Permeability to Water and S_{wl} ($k_l/k_i = 10$, $S_{wi} = 0.2$).

Flow in Reservoirs

In actual field applications in unfractured wells, gelants usually penetrate a relatively short distance into the formation (e.g., 50 ft into the most-permeable layer). Thus, in this study, the greatest distance that gelants penetrate into the most-permeable layer (r_{p1}) is set at 50 ft from the wellbore. Since an oil bank often precedes the gelant front, a gel treatment can affect fluid saturations at distances beyond the greatest depth of penetration of gelant. A distance, r_{pm}, will be chosen such that the gel treatment never has any effect on fluid saturations at distances greater than r_{pm} from the wellbore. Somewhat arbitrarily, we will assume that r_{pm} has a value of 100 ft.

For the case of waterflood in a five-spot pattern, the factor Ψ in Eq. 47 can be approximated by the following equation.[106,107]

$$\Psi_i = \frac{\ln\left(\frac{r_e}{r_{pm}}\right) + \frac{1}{M}\ln\left(\frac{r_e}{r_o}\right)}{\ln\left(\frac{r_{pm}}{r_o}\right)} \tag{50}$$

For simplicity, the water front is assumed to coincide with the external drainage radius of the reservoir. However, the Ψ value is not sensitive to the position of the water front. According to Eq. 50, Ψ is strongly dependent upon the water-oil mobility ratio. The value of Ψ is fairly insensitive to other factors, such as well spacing and the choice of r_{pm}.[24]

Consider an example where the most-permeable layer is completely watered-out (Table 28 on page 92). Since water is the only mobile fluid in the most-permeable layer, the mobility ratio, M, in Eq. 50 is equal to 1. Hence, in the most-permeable layer, Ψ_1 is about 1.5. However, in the less-permeable layers, Ψ_i could have any value (in this example) in the practical range from 0.3 to 16, depending on the water-oil mobility ratio.

Figure 47 illustrates the effect of Ψ on the degree of penetration of gelants. The results presented in Fig. 47 were generated by using Eq. 47. As can be seen in Fig. 47, the degree of penetration of gelants into the less-permeable layer increases with increasing Ψ_i value. However, the effect is not as great as that in the injection well treatment cases.[24] The degree of penetration becomes insensitive to the Ψ_i value for high gelant resistance factors (F_r).

Numerical Model

To verify the solutions from Eqs. 44, 45, 46, 47, and 49, a numerical-simulation model was developed. The IM*plicit* P*ressure* E*xplicit* S*aturation* method (IMPES) and upstream weighting on mobilities were used. Good agreement between numerical solutions and solutions from Eqs. 44-49 was found.

In the simulation, each layer was discretized into subdomains (blocks or nodes) with a fixed pressure drop across layers. Pressures profiles were solved with given time intervals while saturations were updated at every time step. During gelant injection, the gelant was assumed to displace all water behind the gelant-water interface. Therefore, the interface could be determined at each time step as long as the total injection was known. Numerical dispersion and oscillation were found near the shock-front areas and were minimized by using small time intervals—allowing nodal saturation changes no more than 0.1 at each time step. Appendix H provides a more detailed description of the formulation of the numerical model.

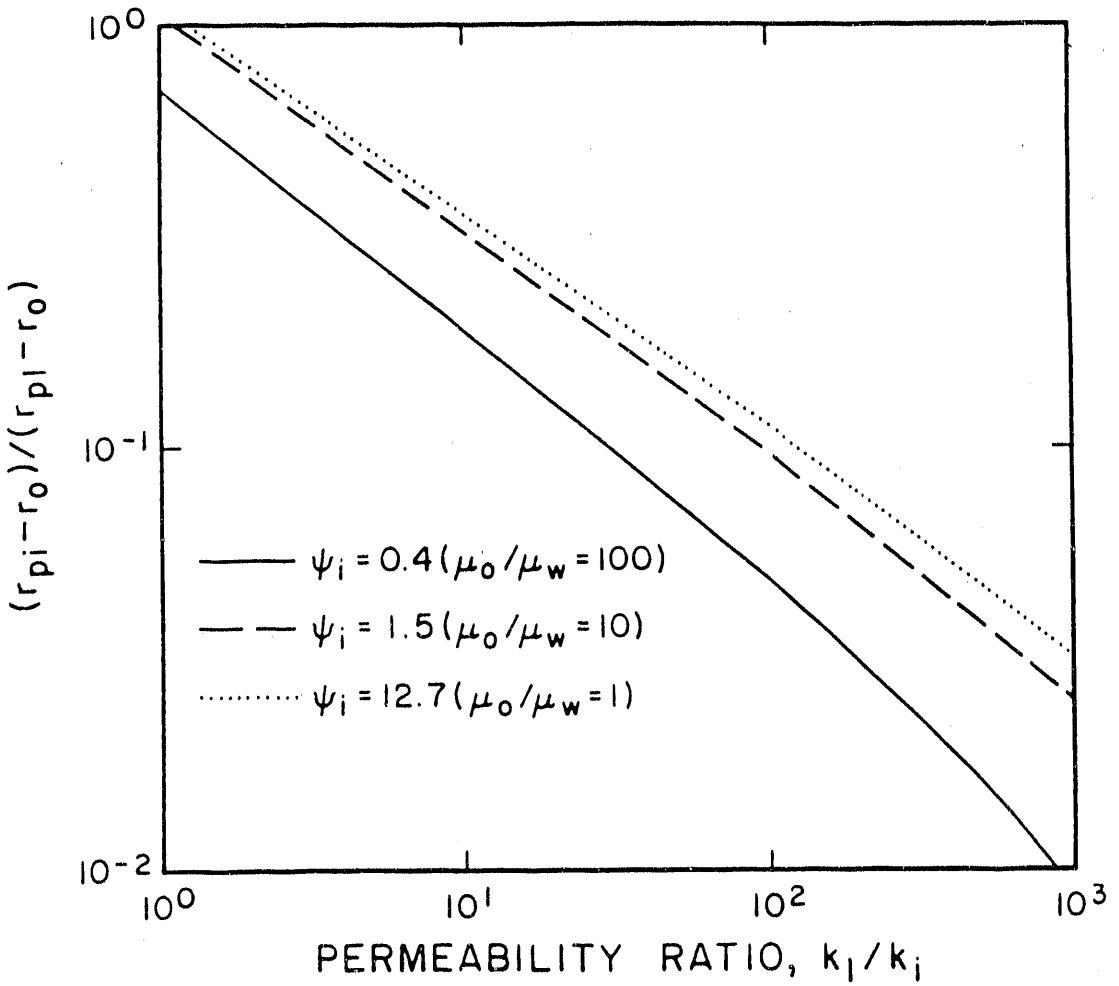


Fig. 47. Effect of Ψ_i Variations ($F_r = 1$) on Degree of Penetration into Layer i.

Generally, one hundred grid blocks were assigned to each layer using equal spacing between nodes. In radial cases, the differences in the predictions from the theoretical model and the numerical model were greater than those found in linear cases. Differences beween the theoretical and the numerical model become more pronounced as the permeability ratio increases. (An exception to this occurs when F_r=1, in which case, the differences appear to decrease with increased permeability ratio.) These differences can be reduced by increasing the number of nodes in the numerical model. For example, when k_1/k_i=100 and F_r=100, the differences in the predictions from the two models are reduced from 40.5% to 17.2% when the number of nodes per layer is increased from 100 to 1000, respectively. Figure 48 compares results from the theoretical model and the numerical model for F_r = 1, F_r = 2, and F_r = 100 cases. When F_r = 10, the penetration ratio is very close to that for F_r = 100. Please refer to Table 29 (on page 92) for the rock and fluid properties involved in this example.

Relative Permeability Changes After Treatment

Many researchers[56-60] have reported that water-soluble polymers reduce permeability to water significantly more than they reduce permeability to oil. Needham *et al.*[56] also reported that crosslinking of water-soluble polymers with multivalent cations results in a greater and more permanent reduction of water relative permeability.

In examining the potential impact of this selective permeability reduction, we will initially assume that the permeability to oil is not affected by the gel treatment. The water relative permeability is, however, decreased in proportion to the residual resistance factor (F_{rr}) of the particular gelant involved.

For near-wellbore gel treatments in unfractured production wells, gelants penetrate a relatively short distance into the formation (e.g., 50 ft into the most-permeable zone). The water saturation, the water and oil relative permeability curves, and the fluid fractional flow curves remain unchanged in the region that is not contacted by the gelant. However, the reduced water permeability in the gel-treated region reduces production of all fluids from the treated zone. This can be understood by considering the following example.

Consider a reservoir that consists of a single stratum. Let the rock properties and relative permeabilities be described by the parameters listed in Table 30 (on page 100). As shown in Fig. 49, the water relative permeability curve is shifted downward as a result of a gel treatment while the oil relative permeability curve remains unchanged. This shift also changes the fractional flow curve governing the fluid flow in the treated region (Fig. 50). Since gels usually only invade a relatively short distance into the formation during treatments, it is reasonable to expect that a local steady-state flow condition can be achieved in the vicinity of the treated region after the resumption of flow. Under steady-state conditions, the fractional flow of water in the gel-treated region must be the same as that in the untreated region (a consequence of mass balance). Therefore, the water saturation in the gel-treated region must shift (as illustrated in Fig. 50) from 0.5 (the initial water saturation before treatment) to 0.625 after treatment to maintain the same fractional flow of water under the new fractional flow curve. This increase in water saturation after treatment can cause significant reduction in oil relative permeability in the treated region. As indicated in Fig. 49, the oil relative permeability is reduced from 0.125 before treatment to 0.025 after treatment as a result of the water saturation increase. The impact of the reduced oil permeability on oil productivity will be discussed in the next section.

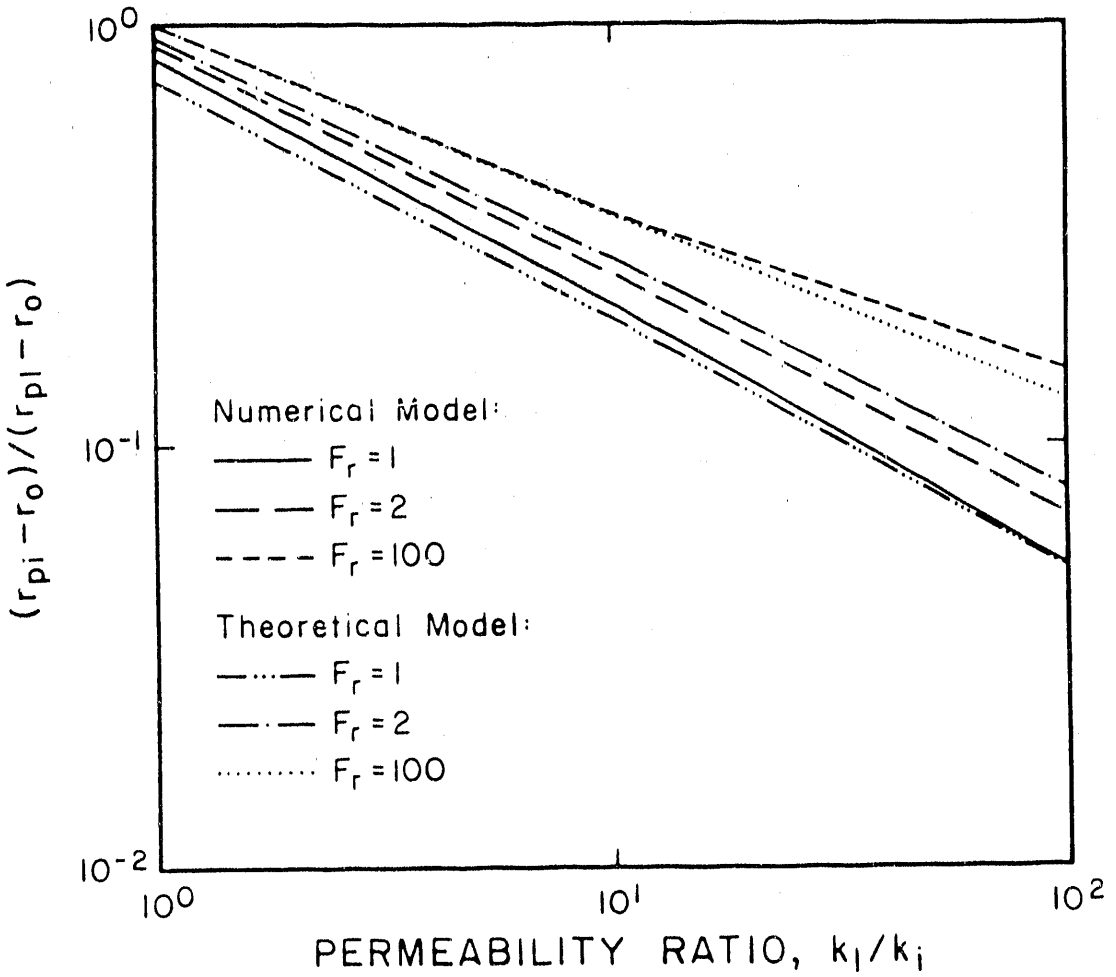


Fig. 48. Theoretical Model vs. Numerical Model; Degree of Penetration into Core i: Radial Flow.

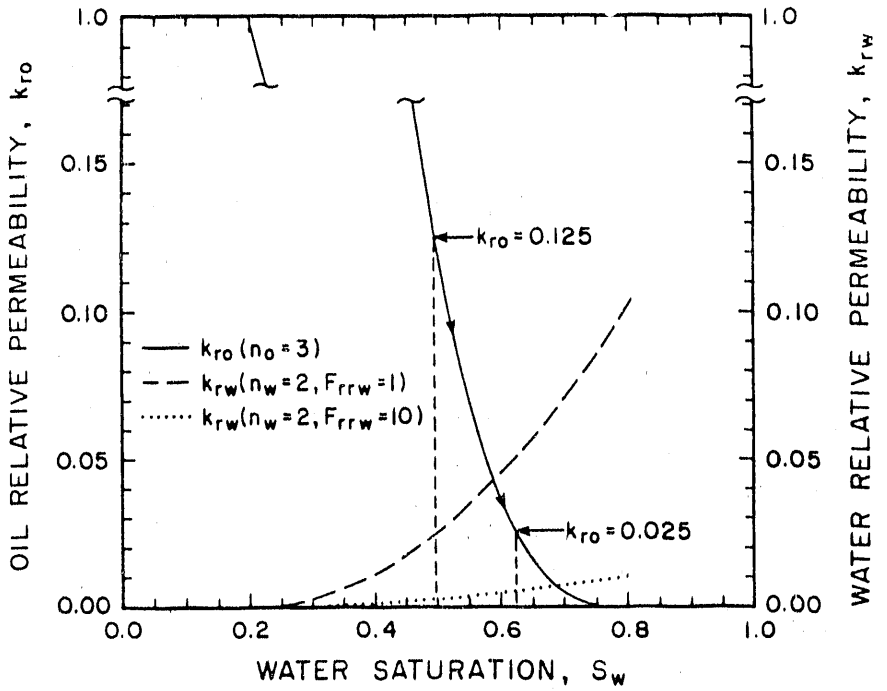


Fig. 49. Oil and Water Relative Permeability Curves Before and After Gel Treatment.

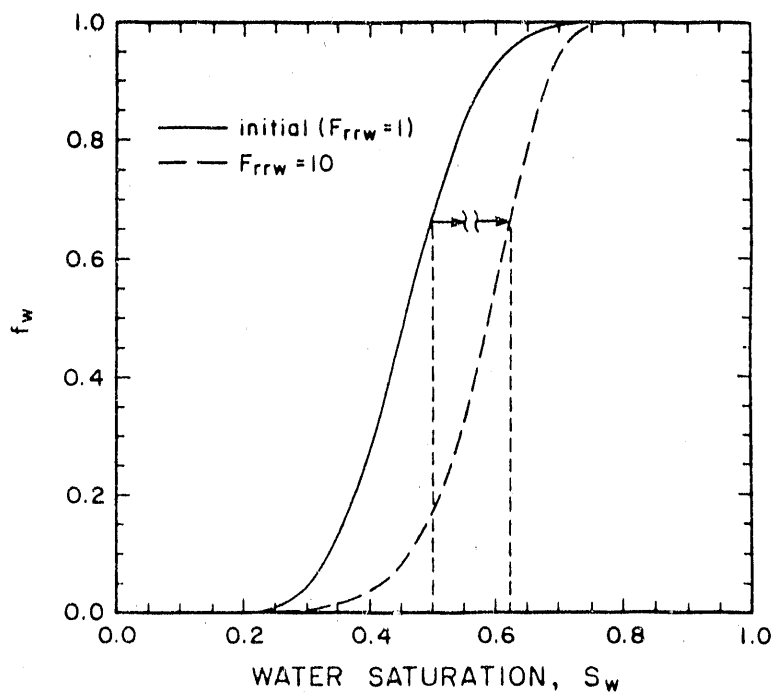


Fig. 50. Water Fractional Flow Curves Before and After Gel Treatment.

TABLE 30
Parameters After Gelation

$k'_{rw} = 0.1$	$k'_{ro} = 1$
$n_w = 2$	$n_o = 3$
$S_{wr} = 0.2$	$S_{or} = 0.2$
$S_{wi} = 0.5$	$F_r = 1$
$F_{rrw} = 10$	$F_{rro} = 1$
$\mu_o/\mu_w = 10$	

TABLE 31
Parameters for Hysteresis Cases

$k'_{rw} = 0.1$	$k'_{ro} = 1$
$n_w = 2$	$n_o = 3$
$n'_w = 6$ (hysteresis)	$n'_o = 3$
$S_{wr} = 0.2$	$S_{or} = 0.2$
$\mu_o/\mu_w = 10$	$F_r = 1$
Well pattern:	20-acre 5-spot
$r_o = 0.5$ ft	$r_e = 372.4$ ft
$r_{pm} = 100$ ft	

TABLE 32
Parameters for Productivity Loss Calculations

$k'_{rw} = 0.1$	$k'_{ro} = 1$
$n_w = 2$	$n_o = 3$
$S_{wr} = 0.2$	$S_{or} = 0.2$
$\mu_o/\mu_w = 10$	$F_r = 1$
$F_{rrw} = 10$	$F_{rro} = 1$
Well pattern:	20-acre 5-spot
$r_o = 0.5$ ft	$r_e = 372.4$ ft
$r_{pm} = 100$ ft	

Productivity Loss After Treatament

The goal of near-wellbore gel treatments in oil production wells is to reduce water production without sacrificing oil production. For the case of constant pressure dr , the fraction of the original water productivity in zone i that remains after the gel treatment is

$$\frac{q_{wi}}{q_{woi}} = \frac{(\Psi_i + 1)\ln\left(\frac{r_{pm}}{r_o}\right)}{\frac{k_{rwi}}{k_{rwti}}\ln\left(\frac{r_{pi}}{r_o}\right) + \ln\left(\frac{r_{pm}}{r_{pi}}\right) + \Psi_i \ln\left(\frac{r_{pm}}{r_o}\right)}, \tag{51}$$

and the fraction of the original oil productivity in zone i that remains after gel treatment is

$$\frac{q_{oi}}{q_{ooi}} = \frac{(\Psi_i + 1)\ln\left(\frac{r_{pm}}{r_o}\right)}{\frac{k_{roi}}{k_{roti}}\ln\left(\frac{r_{pi}}{r_o}\right) + \ln\left(\frac{r_{pm}}{r_{pi}}\right) + \Psi_i \ln\left(\frac{r_{pm}}{r_o}\right)} \tag{52}$$

where k_{rwti} and k_{roti} are the water and oil relative permeabilities in the treated region of zone i. The relative permeabilities in the treated region can be calculated based on the new oil-water relative permeability curves and the new oil and water saturations. Thus, the productivity loss in a given zone depends on the degree of penetration of the gelant, on the Ψ value of the zone, on the changes in the oil and water relative permeabilities, and on the resulting changes in saturations in the treated region.

As mentioned earlier, the fractional flow of water and oil from a given zone must remain fixed. As a consequence, if the water productivity from a given zone changes, then the oil productivity from that zone must change by the same fraction. In other words, the right- and left-hand sides of Eqs. 51 and 52 are all equal.

Hysteresis of Oil and Water Relative Permeability Curves

The relative permeability of a given phase is often both path and history dependent.[107] Jones and Roszelle[108] reported that the relative permeability to oil is relatively unchanged from the imbibition values. However, for a water-wet core, the water relative permeability curves during imbibition (waterflooding) can be different than those during drainage (oilflooding after waterflooding). Since gel treatments in production wells involve both an imbibition cycle (the injection of an aqueous gelant) and a drainage cycle (the resumption of oil production), the effect of this hysteresis should be considered.

To examine the impact of this hysteresis, consider injection of a small volume of water into an unfractured production well (Table 31 on page 100). The relative permeability curves of both the imbibition and drainage cycles are presented in Fig. 51.

After production is resumed and a steady state is achieved, the water saturation in the region contacted by the injection water must be increased to maintain the level of water fractional flow. However, the increase in water saturation would reduce the oil relative permeability and impair the oil productivity of the oil productive zones. Figure 52 illustrates the effect of the hysteresis of relative permeability curves on the productivity loss at various initial water saturations. For this example, a single layer is used, and the waterfront is allowed to penetrate 50 ft into the layer. (Remember that oil productivity and water productivity must experience the same fractional change.)

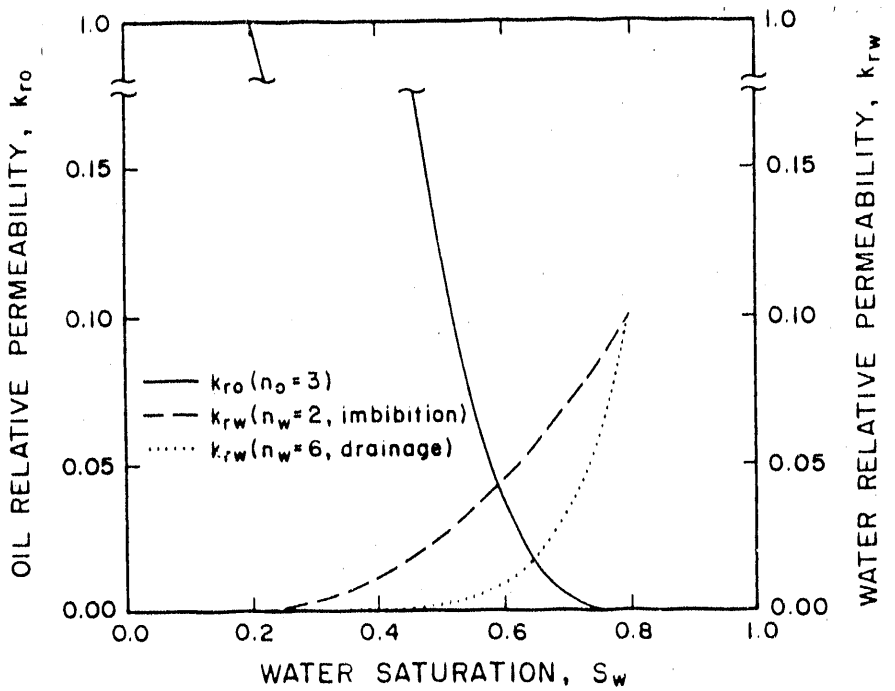


Fig. 51. Oil and Water Relative Permeability Curves with/without Hysteresis.

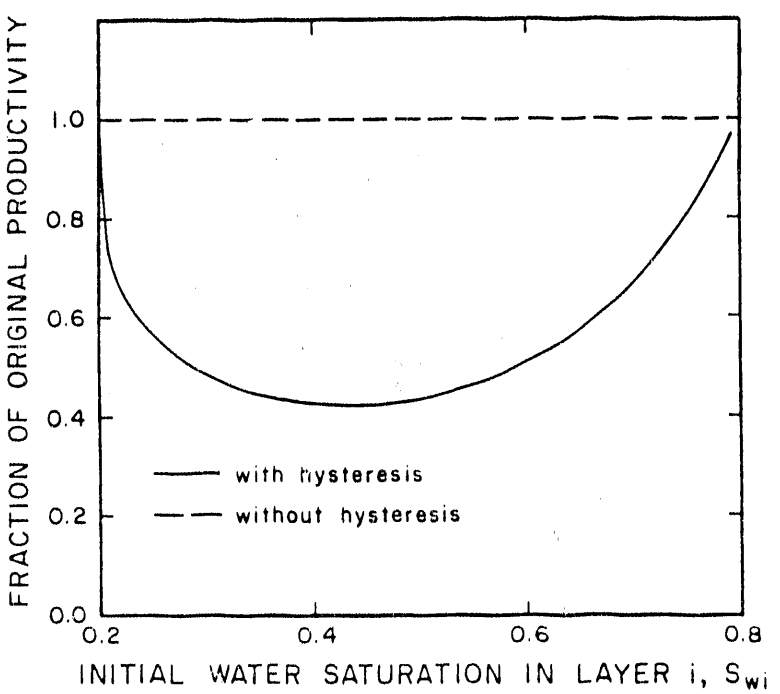


Fig. 52. Effect of Hysteresis of Relative Permeability Curves on Productivity Loss (depth of water penetration = 50ft, radial flow).

As can be seen in Fig. 52, hysteresis of the water relative permeability curve can cause significant damage to oil productivity for most water saturations. Thus, hysteresis of relative permeability curves should be considered when applying gel treatments.

Productivity Loss After Gelation

Since hysteresis alone can impair oil productivity, the effects of a gel treatment on productivity loss with and without hysteresis are both examined. Consider the case where no hysteresis is involved. Table 32 (on page 100) is a list of the parameters used in the example. The relative permeability curves and the corresponding fractional flow curves are shown in Fig. 49 and Fig. 50, respectively. The oil and water productivity losses after gel treatment (expressed as the fraction of the original productivity) are plotted against the depth of penetration of the gelant into the formation in Fig. 53a. Since the material balance dictates that the level of water fractional flow in a given zone in the formation remain unchanged after treatment, the fraction of productivity loss of oil for a given zone after treatment is the same as that of water after treatment.

A key point to be made from Fig. 53a and 53b is that the gels will cause some loss of oil productivity, unless the oil saturation is very high. This occurs even though the gel did not affect the oil permeability in the gel-treated region. Figure 53a also demonstrates that the productivity loss after treatment increases as the water saturation increases in the zone of interest. As expected, the productivity after treatment declines with increasing depth of penetration of gelant.

The productivity loss after gel treatment with hysteresis is illustrated in Fig. 53b. A comparison of Fig. 53a and Fig. 53b reveals that, as expected, the hysteresis of relative permeability curves further impairs oil productivity.

Fractured Systems

In this section, our analysis will focus on vertically fractured wells. The fractures are assumed to extend through all of the productive zones. These productive zones are separated by impermeable layers (except at the fracture face). Since the length of a vertical fracture is generally much longer than the wellbore radius, and the "permeability" of a fracture is much greater than that of the porous medium, the flow of a gelant from the fracture face into the rock matrix is considered linear.

Eqs. 45 and 50 can be applied to solve for the degree of penetration of gelants into the rock matrix that is adjacent to a fracture face. However, L_{pi} is now defined as the distance from the fracture face into the formation that a gelant has propagated in layer i when the oil bank reaches L_{pm} in the most-permeable layer (layer 1). Also, r_o and r_{pm} in Eq. 50 are replaced by L and L + L_{pm}, respectively.

An example similar to the one used in the previous section for unfractured wells is used here to examine the placement of gels in vertically fractured wells (Table 32 on page 100). The degree of penetration of a gelant is plotted against the permeability ratio at different Ψ values in Fig. 54. Figure 54 shows that the degree of penetration of a gelant increases as the Ψ value increases. A comparison of Fig. 47 and Fig. 54 reveals that the degree of penetration of gelants in the less-permeable layers is generally less in the fractured cases. Thus, the need for zone isolation is less when treating vertically fractured wells than when treating unfractured wells.

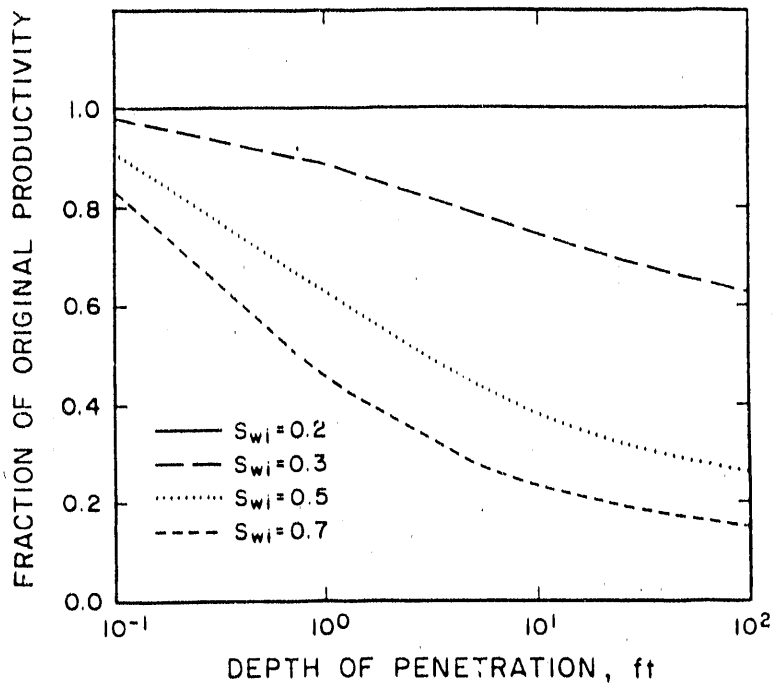


Fig. 53a. Effects of Depth of Penetration and S_{wi} on Productivity Retained after Gel Treatment (F_{rrw} = 10, F_{rro} = 1, no hysteresis, n_w = 2, n_o = 3, radial flow).

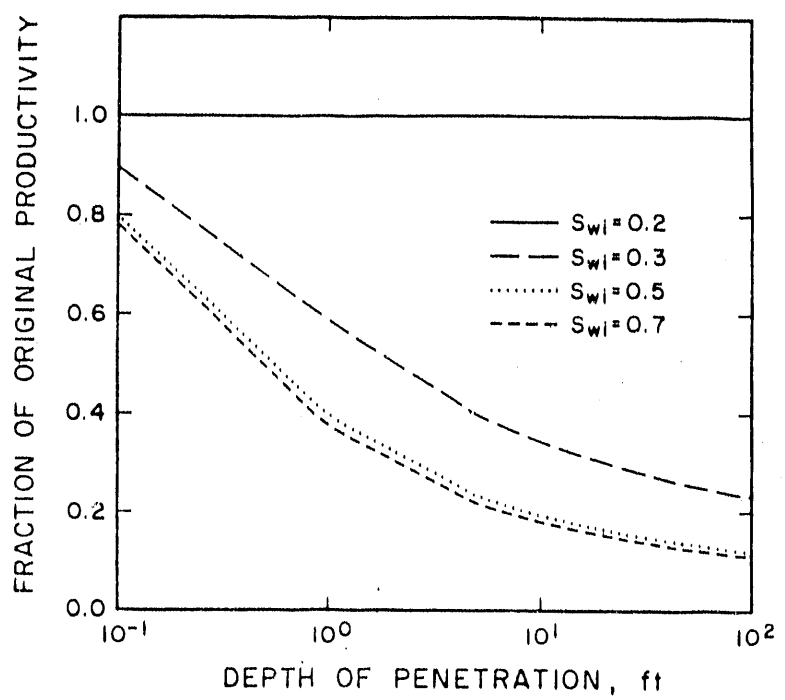


Fig. 53b. Productivity Retained after Gel Treatment with Hysteresis of Relative Permeability Curves (F_{rrw} = 10, F_{rro} = 1, n_w = 6, n_o = 3, radial flow).

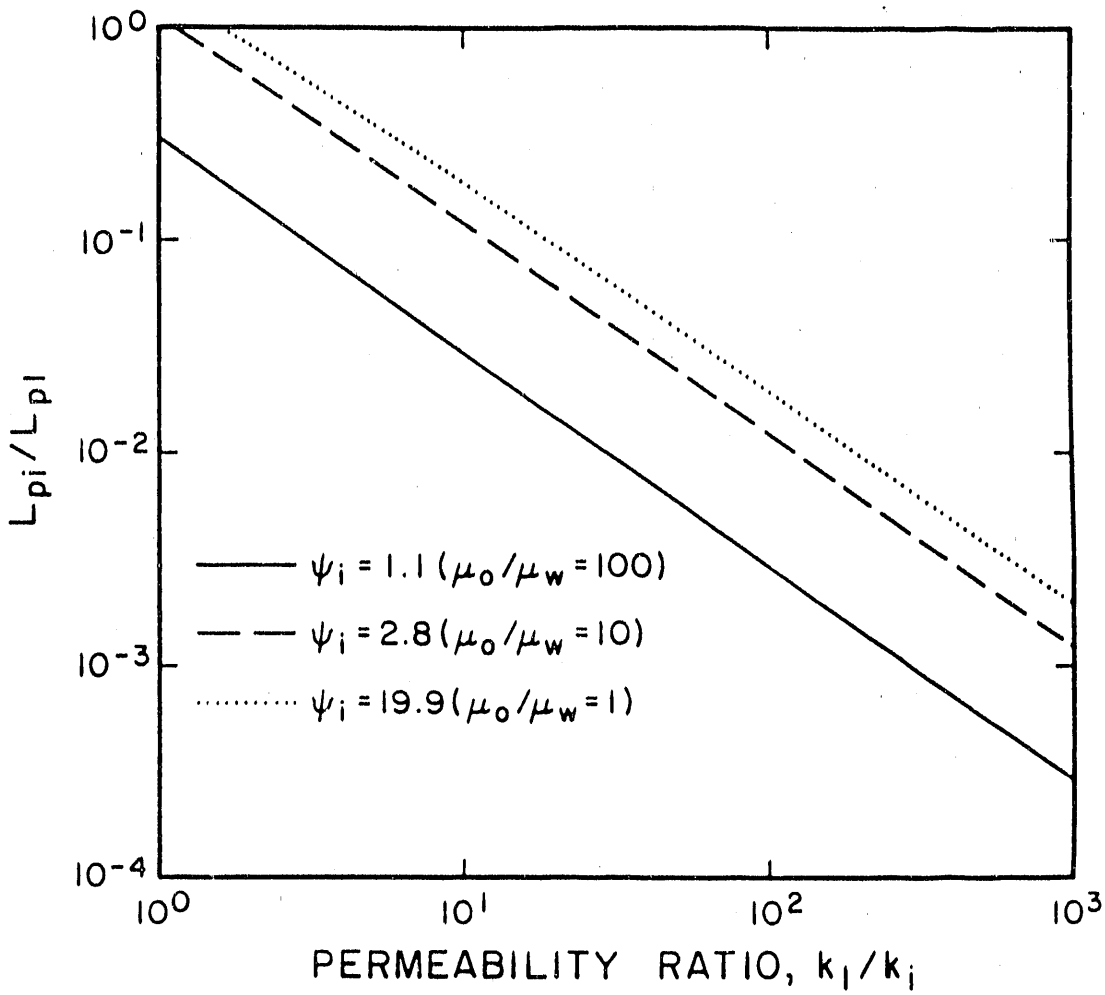


Fig. 54. Effect of Ψ_i Variations ($F_r = 1$) on Degree cf Penetration in Vertically Fractured Zones.

For the case of constant pressure drop, the fractions of the original water and oil productivities after treatment in vertically fractured reservoirs are:

$$\frac{q_{wi}}{q_{woi}} = \frac{(\Psi_i + 1)L_{pm}}{\frac{k_{rwi}}{k_{rwii}} L_{pi} + (L_{pm} - L_{pi}) + \Psi_i L_{pm}} \tag{53}$$

$$\frac{q_{oi}}{q_{ooi}} = \frac{(\Psi_i + 1)L_{pm}}{\frac{k_{roi}}{k_{roii}} L_{pi} + (L_{pm} - L_{pi}) + \Psi_i L_{pm}} \tag{54}$$

As in the cases of unfractured wells, the material balance dictates that the fraction of productivity loss of oil for a given zone after treatment is the same as that of water after treatment.

As shown in Fig. 55a, the productivity loss after treatment in a vertically fractured reservoir is relatively insensitive to invasion by the gelant (up to ~ 10 ft). Figure 55a also shows that the productivity loss increases with increasing water saturation. A comparison of Fig. 53a and Fig. 55a discloses that under similar circumstances the productivity loss after treatment in a vertically fractured reservoir is less than that in an unfractured reservoir. A similar comparison between Fig. 53b and Fig. 55b reveals that, even by taking hysteresis into account, the decline in productivity (that results from the invasion of gelants) is far less dramatic in vertically fractured wells than in unfractured wells.

Effects of Crossflow

In the analysis presented to this point, no crossflow occurs between adjacent layers. If crossflow can occur between layers or flow paths in a reservoir, viscous gelants will penetrate into low-permeability layers to a greater extent than if crossflow is not possible. In fact under some circumstances (if the gelant/water mobility ratio is less than the permeability contrast between adjacent layers), the depth of penetration of gelant in a low-permeability layer can be the same as that in an adjacent high-permeability layer.[72] Thus, if crossflow can occur, viscous gelants will damage oil-productive zones to a greater extent than if crossflow is not possible. Discussion presented in previous sections regarding cases without crossflow can still serve as important guidelines in designing polymer gel treatments in reservoirs with vertical communication between layers.

Control of Water Coning

Field experience in the Arbuckle formation in western Kansas[2] demonstrates that polymer gels can be very effective in treating production wells with water coning problems.

Water coning is a rate-sensitive phenomenon. The rise of a water table under a partially penetrated oil well is caused by the motion of oil above it. Hence, the maximum cone height at a given oil production rate is dictated by the balance between the hydrostatic head of the elevated water column and the upward pressure gradients associated with the oil flow.

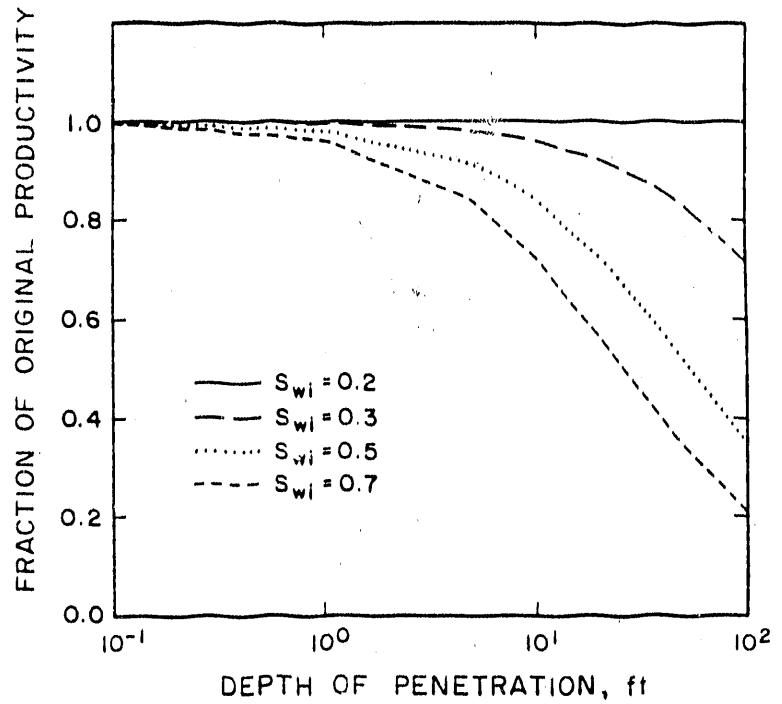


Fig. 55a. Effects of Degree of Penetration and S_{wi} on Productivity Loss after Gel Treatment (F_{rrw} = 10, F_{rro} = 1, n_w = 2, n_o = 3) in Vertically Fractured Zones.

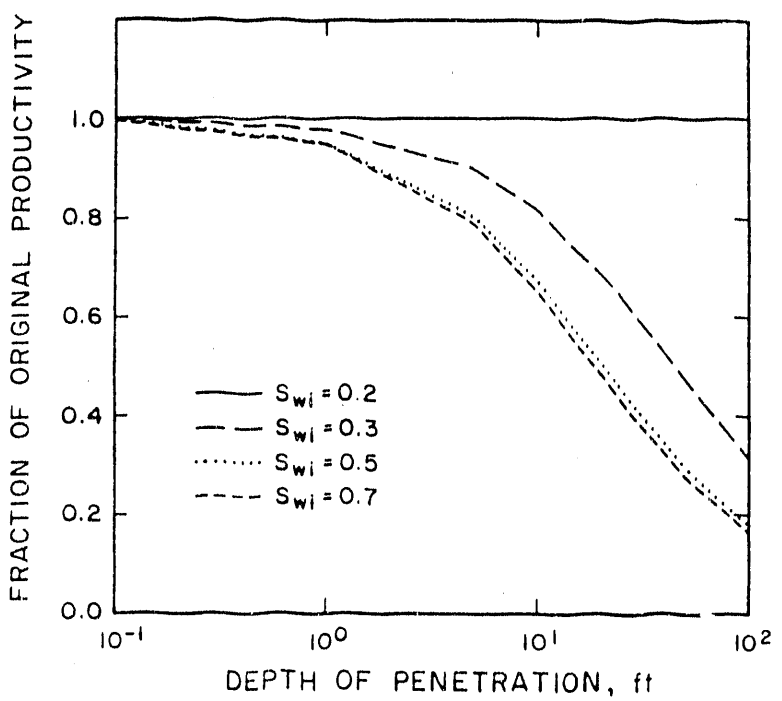


Fig. 55b. Productivity Retained after Gel Treatment with Hysteresis of Relative Permeability Curves (F_{rrw} = 10, F_{rro} = 1, n_w = 6, n_o = 3) in Vertically Fractured Zones.

Based upon the free-surface concept, the following equation (proposed by Muskat *et al.*)[109] is used to solve for the maximum production rate at which a well can maintain water-free production.

$$q_o = \frac{\pi k_m g(\rho_w - \rho_o)(h_e^2 - h_w^2)}{\mu_o \ln(r_e/r_o)} \tag{55}$$

where h_e is the thickness of the oil zone and h_w is the depth of well penetration. The cone shape at the critical production rate is defined by the following equation.[110]

$$Z(r) = h_e - \sqrt{h_e^2 - (h_e^2 - h_w^2)\frac{\ln(r_e/r)}{\ln(r_e/r_o)}} \tag{56}$$

where Z(r) is the cone height at a certain radius r. Karp *et al.*[110] suggested that water coning can be controlled or completely suppressed by means of horizontal barriers. The placement of horizontal barriers increases the effective wellbore radius. According to Eq. 55, this would increase the critical rate for water-free production.

Gelant can be injected into a formation to serve as a horizontal barrier. If polymer gels can reduce relative permeability to water without reducing oil permeability, then oil productivity can be maintained while suppressing excess water production.

In some reservoirs, water from the underlying water zone migrates through a fracture system into oil-producing wells. The permeability of a fracture is much greater than the permeability of the adjacent formation rock. Thus, the behavior of fluid flow from the underlying water zone through a fracture into a production well can be approximated by a 2-D linear flow model rather than by a 3-D radial flow model. The critical rate for water-free production in a 2-D linear system can be estimated using the following equation.[111]

$$q_o = \frac{k_f g W(\rho_w - \rho_o)(h_e^2 - h_w^2)}{2\mu_o(L - x_o)} \tag{57}$$

where W is the width of the fracture, L is the length of the fracture, x is the distance of gelant penetration into the fracture, and x_o is the wellbore radius. The equation presented below defines the cone shape at the critical production rate in the 2-D model. This equation was derived by following the same procedure used by Karp *et al.*[110] in deriving Eq. 56.

$$Z(x) = h_e - \sqrt{h_e^2 - (h_e^2 - h_w^2)\frac{(L - x)}{(L - x_o)}} \tag{58}$$

During the treatment process, gelants flow preferentially into the fracture because of the enormous permeability contrast between the fracture and the formation rock. By filling up the fracture with a polymer gel, we essentially convert the 2-D linear flow geometry into a 3-D radial flow geometry. Dividing the critical rate given in Eq. 55 by that in Eq. 57 provides a means of comparing the severity of coning problems in a fractured well vs. that in an unfractured well.

For the given set of parameters shown in the following example calculation, the critical production rate is found to be about 2 orders of magnitude higher in an unfractured well than in a fractured well.

$$\frac{q_{o(3-D)}}{q_{o(2-D)}} = \frac{2\pi(L - x_o)k_m}{W \ln(r_e/r_o)k_f} = \frac{2\pi(372 - 0.5)1}{(0.01/12)\ln(372/0.5)1000} \tag{59}$$

$$\approx 400$$

Thus, some of the successes observed in field applications can be attributed to the significant increase in critical production rate resulting from the flow-geometry conversion after gel treatment.

However, under other circumstances, the effect of this flow-geometry conversion may be less. If, for example, we change the fracture length (L) in the previous example to 50 ft, then the increase in critical production rate will be about one order of magnitude less than that shown above. Other parameters, such as the permeability contrast between the fracture and the adjacent formation rock, the fracture width, and the drainage radius, also have an important influence on the critical production rate.

A small amount of gelant still penetrates into the rock matrix, forming a thin layer of gel around the wellbore. However, damage to oil productivity in the well can be minimized if polymer gels reduce the relative permeability to water without reducing that to oil.

In the examples presented in this report, we have assumed that gel will not affect the relative permeability to oil. If gel does reduce oil permeability, then some of our calculations will underestimate the loss of oil productivity. Thus, determination of permeability reductions for *both* oil and water are very important when planning field applications of gels in production wells. The equations and analyses in this report are general and will accommodate permeability reductions to oil as well as to water.

Conclusions

1. If zones are not isolated during gel placement in production wells, gelants can penetrate to a significant degree into all open zones—not just those with high water saturations.

2. For gels that reduce permeability to water more than to oil, induced changes in the relative permeability curves near-wellbore will not necessarily enhance oil recovery from a particular zone. Depending on the steady-state fractional flows of fluid outside of the gel-treated region, oil production could be impaired even though the gel reduces water permeability without affecting oil permeability. The principal advantage of the disproportionate reduction of the water and oil relative permeabilities is in reducing the need for zone isolation during gel placement. Realizing this advantage generally requires high fractional oil flow from oil-productive zones.

3. Under similar circumstances, the productivity loss after treatment in vertically fractured wells is expected to be less than that in unfractured wells.

4. An explanation is provided for why some successful applications of gels have occurred in fractured wells that are produced by bottom-water drive. With the right properties, gels could significantly increase the critical rate for water coning.

NOMENCLATURE

A	=	cross-sectional area of core, cm^2
a_r	=	dimensionless retention of a given species (pore volumes of formulation injected to satisfy the retentive sites in one pore volume of rock)
a_v	=	inaccessible pore volume
D	=	apparent diffusion coefficient in porous media, cm^2/s
D_o	=	molecular binary diffusion coefficient, cm^2/s
E	=	effective viscosity ratio for mixing zone (Eq. 38)
E_p	=	effective viscosity ratio for mixing zone (Eq. 41)
F	=	formation electrical resistivity
F_r	=	resistance factor (brine mobility prior to gel placement divided by gelant mobility prior to gelation
F_{rr}	=	residual resistance factor (brine mobility prior to gel placement divided by brine mobility after gel placement)
f_w	=	fractional flow of water
f_{wI}	=	fractional flow of water before gel treatment
f_w^p	=	fractional flow of aqueous gelant
$f(\ )$	=	function describing the degree of penetration
g	=	acceleration of gravity, m/s^2
H	=	Koval heterogeneity factor
h_e	=	thickness of oil zone, ft [m]
h_i	=	height of layer i, ft [m]
h_w	=	depth of well penetration, ft [m]
K	=	constant in Eq. 22
k_b	=	absolute permeability to brine, md [μm^2]
k_f	=	fracture permeability, md [μm^2]
k_i	=	permeability of layer i, md [μm^2]
k_m	=	matrix permeability, md [μm^2]
k_{ro}	=	oil relative permeability
k'_{ro}	=	end-point oil relative permeability
k_{rot}	=	oil relative permeability in treated region
k_{rw}	=	water relative permeability
k_{rwI}	=	water relative permeability before gel treatment
k'_{rw}	=	end-point water relative permeability
k_{rwt}	=	water relative permeability in treated region
L	=	bank length, ft [m]
L_f	=	final bank length after dispersion, ft [m]
L_m	=	length of mixing zone, ft [m]
L_p	=	depth of penetration of gelant front in linear flow system, ft [m]
L_{pf}	=	length of postflush in absence of fingering, ft [m]
L_{pi}	=	distance the chemical species has propagated in a linear core or from the face of a vertical fracture (into the rock matrix) in layer i, ft [m]
L_{pk}	=	depth of penetration of oil bank in linear flow system, ft [m]
L_{pm}	=	maximum distance that the gelant will propagate from the fracture face in the most-permeable core, ft [m]
L_t	=	total length of core, cm

L_{vf}	=	length of fingered zone in linear flow, ft [m]
M	=	water-oil mobility ratio
N_{pe}	=	Peclet number (Eq. 33)
n	=	power-law exponent
n_{max}	=	ion-exchange capacity, eq/kg
n_o	=	exponent for oil relative permeability equation
n_{rock}	=	amount of a specific chemical that is removed by the rock from a certain pore volume of fluid under a particular set of conditions, eq/l
n_{sol}	=	amount of the species of interest in solution per unit of volume of the injected formulation, eq/l
n_w	=	exponent for water relative permeability equation
ΔP	=	pressure drop, psi [Pa]
ΔP_{pi}	=	pressure drop across gel bank in layer i, psi [Pa]
ΔP_t	=	total pressure drop between injector and producer, psi [Pa]
ΔP_{wi}	=	pressure drop between end of gel bank and r_{pm} in layer i, psi [Pa]
$\Delta P_{\psi i}$	=	pressure drop between end r_{pm} and the producer in layer i, psi [Pa]
q_i	=	injectivity in layer i after gel placement, B/D [m^3/s]
q_{io}	=	injectivity in layer i before gel placement, B/D [m^3/s]
q_o	=	oil production rate after gel treatment, B/D [m^3/s]
q_{oo}	=	oil production rate before gel treatment, B/D [m^3/s]
q_w	=	water production rate after gel treatment, B/D [m^3/s]
q_{wo}	=	water production rate before gel treatment, B/D [m^3/s]
r	=	radius, ft [m]
r_D	=	dimensionless radius (the square of the ratio of the radius of penetration to the drainage radius)
r_{Do}	=	dimensionless wellbore radius
r_{Dp}	=	dimensionless radius of penetration of gelant front
r_{Dpk}	=	dimensionless radius of penetration of oil bank
r_{Dpm}	=	a dimensionless reference distance from the wellbore beyond which the gel treatment has no effect on fluid saturations
r_e	=	external drainage radius, ft [m]
r_{fi}	=	final inner radius of viscous fluid after postflush, ft [m]
r_{fo}	=	final outer radius of viscous fluid after postflush, ft [m]
r_o	=	wellbore radius, ft [m]
r_p	=	radius of penetration of gelant front, ft [m]
r_{pi}	=	radius of penetration of a chemical species in layer i, ft [m]
r_{pm}	=	maximum radius of penetration of gelant in most permeable layer, ft [m]
r_{vf}	=	length of fingered zone in radial flow, ft [m]
r_{pk}	=	radius of penetration of oil bank, ft [m]
S_{or}	=	residual oil saturation
S_w	=	water saturation
$\bar{S}_w$	=	average water saturation behind gelant front
S_{wI}	=	water saturation before gel treatment
S_{wpf}	=	water saturation at gelant front
S_{wpk}	=	water saturation at oil bank
S_{wr}	=	residual water saturation
t	=	time, s

t_g	=	gelation time, days [s]
u	=	fluid flux or superficial velocity, ft/d [m/s]
u_i	=	fluid flux at the wellbore sand face in layer i, ft/d [m/s]
V_{pf}	=	apparent remaining pore volume, cm^3
V_{pi}	=	initial pore volume of the core, cm^3
v	=	interstitial fluid velocity, ft/d [cm/s]
x	=	distance of gelant penetration in 2-D system, ft [m]
x_o	=	wellbore radius in Eqs. 16 and 17, ft [m]
Z	=	cone height, ft [m]
α	=	dispersivity, ft [cm]
α_f	=	dispersivity at the given stage in the experiment, cm
α_i	=	initial dispersivity of the core, cm
β	=	exponent in Eq. 34
μ_o	=	oil viscosity, cp [mPa-s]
μ_w	=	viscosity of brine, cp [mPa-s]
ρ_o	=	density of oil, g/cc
ρ_r	=	rock density, g/cm^3
ρ_w	=	density of water, g/cc
ϕ_i	=	effective aqueous-phase porosity in layer i
Ψ_i	=	pressure drop between r_{pm} (or L_{pm}) and the production well divided by the pressure drop between the injection well and r_{pm} (or L_{pm}) in layer i

REFERENCES

1. DuBois, B.M.: "North Stanley Polymer Demonstration Project, Third Annual and Final Report," Report BETC/RI-78/19, U.S. Dept. of Energy, Washington, D.C. (Nov. 1978).

2. Hessert, J.E. and Fleming, P.D., III: "Gelled Polymer Technology for Control of Water in Injection and Production Wells," Proc., 1979 Third Tertiary Oil Recovery Conference, Wichita, KS (Apr. 25-26) 58-70.

3. Woods, P. *et al.*: "In-Situ Polymerization Controls CO_2/Water Channeling at Lick Creek," SPE/DOE paper 14958 presented at the 1986 SPE/DOE Symposium on Enhanced Oil Recovery held in Tulsa, OK (Apr. 20-23).

4. Wagner, O.R., Weisrock, W.P., and Patel, C.: "Field Application of Lignosulfonate Gels to Reduce Channeling, South Swan Hills Miscible Unit, Alberta, Canada," SPE paper 15547 presented at the 1986 SPE Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition held in New Orleans, LA (Oct. 5-8).

5. Leonard, J.: "Increased Rate of EOR Brightens Outlook," *Oil & Gas J.* (Apr. 14, 1986) 88-94.

6. Schurz, G. *et al.*: "Polymer Augmented Waterflooding and Control of Reservoir Heterogeneity," Proceedings of the 1989 Petroleum Technology Into the Second Century Symposium held in Socorro, NM (Oct. 16-19).

7. "Near-Wellbore Technology," Phillips brochure 1024-87LT (1987).

8. Willhite, G.P., Green, D.W., Young, T.S., Thiele, J.L., Michnick, M.J., Vossoughi, S., and Terry, R.E.: "Evaluation of Methods of Reducing Permeability in Porous Media by In-Situ Polymer Treatments," Final Report to DOE, Contract No. AS19-80BC10354, National Technical Information Service DOE/BC/10354-16 (Feb. 1986).

9. Sydansk, R.D.: "A New Conformance Improvement Treatment Chromium (III) Gel Technology," paper SPE/DOE 17329 presented at the 1988 SPE/DOE Enhanced Oil Recovery Symposium, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 17-20).

10. Terry, R.E. *et al.*: "Correlation of Gelation Times for Polymer Solutions Used as Sweep Improvement Agents," *SPEJ* (Apr. 1981) 229-235.

11. Jordan, D.S. *et al.*: "The Effect of Temperature on Gelation Time for Polyacrylamide-Chromium (III) System," *SPEJ* (Aug. 1982) 463-471.

12. Batycky, J.P., Maini, B.B., and Milosz, G.: "A Study of the Application of Polymeric Gels in Porous Media," paper SPE 10620 presented at the 1982 SPE International Symposium on Oilfield and Geothermal Chemistry, Dallas, TX (Jan. 25-27).

13. DiGiacomo, P.M. and Schramm, C.M.: "Mechanism of Polyacrylamide Gel Syneresis Determined by C-13 NMR," paper SPE 11787 presented at the 1983 SPE International Symposium on Oilfield and Geothermal Chemistry, Denver, CO (Jun. 1-3).

14. Prud'homme, R.K. *et al.*: "Rheological Monitoring of the Formation of Polyacrylamide/Cr^{+3} Gels," *SPEJ* (Oct. 1983) 804-808.

15. Aslam, S., Vossoughi, S., and Willhite, G.P.: "Viscometric Measurement of Chromium(III)-Polyacrylamide Gels by Weissenberg Rheogoniometer," paper SPE/DOE 12639 presented at the 1984 SPE/DOE Fourth Symposium on Enhanced Oil Recovery, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 15-18).

16. Prud'homme, R.K. and Uhl, J.T.: "Kinetics of Polymer/Metal-Ion Gelation," paper SPE/DOE 12640 presented at the 1984 SPE/DOE Fourth Symposium on Enhanced Oil Recovery, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 15-18).

17. Southard, M.Z., Green, D.W., and Willhite, G.P.: "Kinetics of the Chromium(VI)/Thiourea Reaction in the Presence of Polyacrylamide," paper SPE 12715 presented at the 1984 SPE/DOE Fourth Symposium on Enhanced Oil Recovery, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 15-18).

18. Ghazali, H.A. and Willhite, G.P.: "Permeability Modifications Using Aluminum Citrate/Polymer Treatments: Mechanisms of Permeability Reduction in Sandpacks," paper SPE 13583 presented at the 1985 SPE International Symposium on Oilfield and Geothermal Chemistry, Phoenix, AZ (Apr. 9-11).

19. Hubbard, S., Roberts, L.J., and Sorbie, K.S.: "Experimental and Theoretical Investigation of Time-Setting Polymer Gels in Porous Media," paper SPE/DOE 14959 presented at the 1986 SPE/DOE Fifth Symposium on Enhanced Oil Recovery, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 20-23).

20. Hedges, J.H.: "Chromium-Polyacrylamide Gelation and Quality Control for Field Applications," paper SPE 15790, unsolicited (1986).

21. Huang, C.G., Green, D.W., and Willhite, G.P.: "An Experimental Study of the In-Situ Gelation of Chromium(III)/Polyacrylamide Polymer in Porous Media," *SPE Reservoir Engineering* (Nov. 1986) 583-592.

22. Aslam, S., Vossoughi, S., and Willhite, G.P.: "Viscometric Measurement of Chromium (III)-Polyacrylamide Gels," *Chem. Eng. Commun.* 48 (1986) 287-301.

23. Nanda, S.K. *et al.*: "Characterization of Polyacrylamide-Cr^{+6} Gels Used for Reducing Water/Oil Ratio," paper SPE 16253 presented at the 1987 SPE International Symposium on Oilfield and Geothermal Chemistry, San Antonio, TX (Feb. 4-6).

24. Seright, R.S.: "Placement of Gels to Modify Injection Profiles," paper SPE/DOE 17332 presented at the 1988 SPE/DOE Enhanced Oil Recovery Symposium, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 17-20).

25. Seright, R.S.: "Effect of Rheology on Gel Placement," paper SPE 18502 presented at the 1989 SPE International Symposium on Oilfield Chemistry, Houston, TX (Feb. 8-10).

26. Seright, R.S.: "Impact of Dispersion on Gel Placement for Profile Control," paper SPE 20127 presented at the 1990 SPE Permian Basin Oil & Gas Recovery Conference, Midland, TX (Mar. 8-9).

27. Liang, J., Lee, R.L., and Seright, R.S.: "Placement of Gels in Production Wells," paper SPE/DOE 20211 presented at the 1990 SPE/DOE Enhanced Oil Recovery Symposium, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 22-25).

28. Campbell, B.T. and Orr, F.M., Jr.: "Flow Visualization for CO_2/Crude-Oil Displacements," *SPEJ* (Oct. 1985) 665-678.

29. Martin, F.D. and Kovarik, F.S.: "Chemical Gels for Diverting CO_2: Baseline Experiments," paper SPE 16728 presented at the 1987 Technical Conference and Exhibition, Dallas, TX (Sept. 27-30).

30. Martin, F.D., Kovarik, F.S., Chang, P.W., and Phillips, J.C.: "Gels for CO_2 Profile Modification," paper SPE/DOE 17330 presented at the 1988 SPE/DOE Symposium on Enhanced Oil Recovery, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 17-20).

31. Chang, P.W., Goldman, I.M., and Stingley, K.J.: "Laboratory Studies and Field Evaluation of a New Gelant for High-Temperature Profile Modification," paper SPE 14235 presented at the 1985 SPE Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, Las Vegas (Sep. 22-25).

32. Chang, P.W. *et al.*: "Enhanced Hydrocarbon Recovery by Permeability Modification with Phenolic Gels," U.S. Patent No. 4,708,974 (1987).

33. Avery, M.R., Burkholder, L.A., and Gruenenfelder, M.A.: "Use of Crosslinked Xanthan Gels in Actual Profile Modification Field Projects," paper SPE 14114 presented at the 1986 SPE International Meeting on Petroleum Engineering, Beijing (Mar. 17-20).

34. Sydansk, R.D. and Smith, T.B.: "Field Testing of a New Conformance - Improvement Treatment - Chromium (III) Gel Technology," paper SPE/DOE 17383 presented at the 1988 SPE/DOE Enhanced Oil Recovery Symposium held in Tulsa, OK (Apr. 17-20).

35. Morrocco, M.L.: "Gel for Retarding Water Flow," U.S. Patent No. 4,498,540 (1985).

36. Jurinak, J.J., Summers, L.E., and Bennett, K.E.: "Oilfield Application of Colloidal Silica Gel," paper SPE 18505 presented at the 1989 SPE International Symposium on Oilfield Chemistry, Houston, TX (Feb. 8-10).

37. Eggert Jr., R.W., Willhite, G.P., and Green, D.W.: "Experimental Measurment of the Persistence of Permeability Reduction in Porous Media Treated With Xanthan/Cr(III) Gel Systems," paper SPE 19630 presented at the 1989 Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, San Antonio, TX (Oct. 8-11).

38. Bunge, A.L. and Radke, C.J.: "Migration of Alkaline Pulses in Reservoir Sands," *SPEJ* (Dec. 1982) 998-1012.

39. Crolet, J.L. and Bonis, M.R.: "pH Measurements under High Pressures of CO_2 and H_2S," *Materials Performance* (May, 1984) 35-42.

40. Vela, S., Peaceman, D.W., and Sandvik, E.I.: "Evaluation of Polymer Flooding in a Layered Reservoir With Crossflow, Retention, and Degradation," *SPEJ* (Apr. 1976) 82-96.

41. Walsh, M.P. *et al.*: "Chemical Interactions of Aluminum-Citrate Solutions with Formation Minerals," SPE paper 11799 presented at the 1983 SPE International Symposium on Oilfield Chemistry, Denver, CO (Jun. 1-3).

42. Garver, F.J., Sharma, M.M., and Pope, G.A.: "The Competition for Chromium Between Xanthan Biopolymer and Resident Clays in Sandstones," SPE paper 19632 presented at the 1989 SPE Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, San Antonio, TX (Oct. 8-11).

43. Parmeswar, R. and Willhite, G.P.: "A Study of the Reduction of Brine Permeability in Berea Sandstone with the Aluminum Citrate Process," *SPE Reservoir Eng.* (Aug. 1988) 959-966.

44. Morrison, R.T. and Boyd, R.N.: *Organic Chemistry*, fourth edition, Allyn and Bacon, Boston, MA (1983) 978-979.

45. Navratil, M., Sovak, M., and Mitchell, M.S.: "Formation Blocking Agents: Applicability in Water- and Steamflooding," SPE paper 12006 presented at the 1983 Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, San Francisco, CA (Oct. 5-8).

46. Nagra, S.S. *et al.*: "Stability of Waterflood Diverting Agents at Elevated Temperatures in Reservoir Brines," SPE paper 15548 presented at the 1986 Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, New Orleans, LA (Oct. 5-8).

47. Mohnot, S.M., Bae, J.H., and Foley, W.L.: "A Study of Mineral/Alkali Reactions," *SPE Reservoir Eng.* (Nov. 1987) 653-663.

48. Sydansk, R.D.: "Elevated-Temperature Caustic/Sandstone Interaction: Implications for Improving Oil Recovery," *SPEJ* (Aug. 1982) 453-462.

49. Mohnot, S.M. and Bae, J.H.: "A Study of Mineral/Alkali Reactions--Part 2," *SPE Reservoir Eng.* (Aug. 1989) 381-390.

50. Kia, S.F., Fogler, H.S., and Reed, M.G.: "Effect of pH on Colloidally Induced Fines Migration," *J. Colloid & Interfac. Sci.* 118(1) (1987) 158-168.

51. Reppert, T.R. *et al.*: "Second Ripley Surfactant Flood Pilot Test," paper SPE/DOE 20219 presented at the 1990 SPE/DOE Enhanced Oil Recovery Symposium, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 22-25).

52. Perkins, T.K. and Johnston, O.C.: "A Review of Diffusion and Dispersion in Porous Media," *SPEJ* (Mar. 1963) 70-84.

53. Coats, K.H. and Smith, B.D.: "Dead-End Pore Volume and Dispersion in Porous Media," *SPEJ* (Mar. 1964) 73-84.

54. Jensen, J.A. and Radke, C.J.: "Chromatographic Transport of Alkaline Buffers Through Reservoir Rock," *SPE Reservoir Eng.* (Aug. 1988) 849-856.

55. Lorenz, P.B. and Peru, D.A.: "Guidelines help select reservoirs for $NaHCO_3$ EOR," *Oil & Gas J.* (Sep. 11, 1989) 53-57.

56. Needham, R.B., Threlkeld, C.B., and Gall, J.W.: "Control of Water Mobility Using Polymers and Multivalent Cations," paper SPE 4747 presented at the 1974 SPE-AIME Improved Oil Recovery Symposium, Tulsa, OK (April).

57. Sandiford, B.B. and Graham, G.A.: "Injection of Polymer Solutions in Producing Wells," *AIChE Symposium Series*, Vol. 69, 127 (1973) 38.

58. Schneider, F.N. and Owens, W.W.: "Steady-State Measurements of Relative Permeability for Polymer/Oil Systems," *SPEJ* (Feb. 1982) 79.

59. Sloat, B.: "Increasing Oil Recovery by Chemical Control of Producing Water-Oil Ratios," paper SPE 5341 presented at the 1975 SPE-AIME Rocky Mountain Regional Meeting, Denver (April).

60. Zaitoun, A. and Kohler, N.: "Two-Phase Flow Through Porous Media: Effect of an Adsorbed Polymer Layer," paper SPE 18085 presented at the 1988 Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, Houston, TX (Oct. 2-5).

61. Bird, R.B., Stewart, W.E., and Lightfoot, E.N.: *Transport Phenomena*, John Wiley, New York (1960) 197-207.

62. Christopher, R.H. and Middleman, S.: "Power-Law Flow Through a Packed Tube," *Ind. Eng. Chem. Fundam.*, 4, No. 4 (Nov. 1965) 422-426.

63. Gogarty, W.B., Levy, G.L., and Fox, V.G.: "Viscoelastic Effects in Polymer Flow Through Porous Media," paper SPE 4025 presented at the 1972 SPE Annual Meeting, San Antonio, TX (Oct. 8-11).

64. Teeuw, D. and Hesselink, F.T.: "Power-Law Flow and Hydrodynamic Behavior of Biopolymer Solutions in Porous Media," paper SPE 8982 presented at the 1980 SPE Fifth International Symposium on Oilfield and Geothermal Chemistry, Stanford, CA (May 28-30).

65. Chang, P.W. *et al.*: "Selective Emplacement of Xanthan/Cr(III) Gels in Porous Media," SPE paper 17589 presented at the 1988 SPE International Meeting on Petroleum Engineering, Tianjin, China (Nov. 1-4).

66. Hejri, S., Green, D.W., and Willhite, G.P.: "In-Situ Gelation of a Xanthan/Cr(III) Gel System in Porous Media," paper SPE 19634 presented at the 1989 SPE Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, San Antonio, TX (Oct. 8-11).

67. Jousset, F. *et al.*: "Effect of High Shear Rate on In-Situ Gelation of a Xanthan/Cr(III) System," paper SPE/DOE 20213 presented at the 1990 SPE/DOE Symposium on Enhanced Oil Recovery, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 22-25).

68. Todd, B.J., Green, D.W., and Willhite, G.P.: "A Mathematical Model of In-Situ Gelation of Polyacrylamide by a Redox Process," paper SPE/DOE 20215 presented at the 1990 SPE/DOE Symposium on Enhanced Oil Recovery, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 22-25).

69. Zapata, V.J. and Lake, L.W.: "A Theoretical Analysis of Viscous Cross flow," paper SPE 10111 presented at the 1981 SPE Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, San Antonio, TX (Oct. 5-7).

70. Zapata, V.J.: "A Theoretical Analysis of Viscous Crossflow," PhD Dissertation, The University of Texas (1981).

71. Young, T.S., Willhite, G.P., and Green, D.W.: "Study of Intra-Molecular Crosslinking of Polyacrylamide in Cr(III)-Polyacrylamide Gelation by Size-Exclusion Chromatography, Low-Angle Laser Light Scattering, and Viscometry," *Water-Soluble Polymers for Petroleum Recovery*, G.A. Stahl and D.N. Schulz (eds.), Plenum Press, New York (1988) 329-342.

72. Erdey-Gruz, T.: *Transport Phenomena in Aqueous Solutions*, John Wiley, New York (1974) 151-163.

73. Southwick, J.G., Jamieson, A.M., and Blackwell, J.: "Conformation of Xanthan Dissolved in Aqueous Urea and Sodium Chloride Solutions," *Carbohydrate Research* (1982) **99**, 117-127.

74. Arya, A. *et al.*: "Dispersion and Reservoir Heterogeneity," *SPERE* (Feb. 1988) 139-148.

75. Kolodziej, E.J.: "Transport Mechanisms of Xanthan Biopolymer Solutions in Porous Media," paper SPE 18090 presented at the 1988 SPE Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, Houston, TX (Oct. 2-5).

76. Heller, J.P.: "The Interpretation of Model Experiments for the Displacement of Fluids Through Porous Media," *AIChE J.* **9**, No. 4 (1963) 452-459.

77. Perkins, T.K., Johnston, O.C., and Hoffman, R.N.: "Mechanics of Viscous Fingering in Miscible Systems," *SPEJ* (Dec. 1965) 301-317.

78. Tang, D.H.E. and Peaceman, D.W.: "New Analytical and Numerical Solutions for the Radial Convection-Dispersion Problem," *SPERE* (Aug. 1987) 343-359.

79. Tang, D.H. and Babu, D.K.: "Analytical Solution of a Velocity Dependent Dispersion Problem," *Water Resources Research* **15** (Dec. 1979) 1471-78.

80. Koval, E.J.: "A Method for Predicting the Performance of Unstable Miscible Displacement in Heterogeneous Media," *SPEJ* (Jun. 1963) 145-154.

81. Claridge, E.L.: "Prediction of Recovery in Unstable Miscible Flooding," *SPEJ* (Apr. 1972) 143-55.

82. Claridge, E.L.: "Control of Viscous Fingering in Enhanced Oil Recovery Processes: Effect of Heterogeneities," paper SPE 7662 (May 1978).

83. Todd, M.R. and Longstaff, W.J.: "The Development, Testing, and Application Of a Numerical Simulator for Predicting Miscible Flood Performance," *JPT* (Jul. 1972) 874-882.

84. Stalkup, F.I.: *Miscible Displacement*, SPE Monograph Vol. 8, SPE, New York (1983) 39-44.

85. Stoneberger, M.W. and Claridge, E.L.: "Graded-Viscosity-Bank Design With Pseudoplastic Fluids," *SPERE* (Nov. 1988) 1221-1232.

86. Clifford, P.J. and Sorbie, K.S.: "The Effects of Chemical Degradation on Polymer Flooding," paper SPE 13586 presented at the 1985 International Symposium on Oilfield and Geothermal Chemistry, Phoenix, AZ (Apr. 9-11).

87. Clifford, P.J.: "Simulation of Small Chemical Slug Behavior in Heterogeneous Reservoirs," paper SPE/DOE 17339 presented at the 1988 SPE/DOE Enhanced Oil Recovery Symposium, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 17-20).

88. Sorbie, K.S. and Clifford, P.J.: "The Simulation of Polymer Flow in Heterogeneous Porous Media," in *Water-Soluble Polymers for Petroleum Recovery*, G.A. Stahl and D.N. Schulz (eds.), Plenum Press, New York (1988) 69-99.

89. Allen, E. and Boger, D.V.: "The Influence of Rheological Properties on Mobility Control in Polymer-Augmented Waterflooding," paper SPE 18097 presented at the 1988 SPE Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, Houston, TX (Oct. 2-5).

90. Bragg, J.R.: Private communication (Nov. 1988).

91. Abdo, M.K. *et al.*: "Field Experience with Floodwater Diversion by Complexed Biopolymers," SPE/DOE paper 12642 presented at the 1984 SPE/DOE Fourth Symposium on Enhanced Oil Recovery, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 15-18).

92. Burkholder, L.A., Carruthers, M.S., and Rashan, J.M.: "Xanthan Gels for Injection Profile Control," presented at the 1984 Fifth Annual Advances in Petroleum Recovery & Upgrading Technology (Jun. 14-15).

93. Sampath, K. *et al.*: "A New Biopolymer for High-Temperature Profile Control: Part II--Field Results," SPE paper 19867 presented at the 1989 Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, San Antonio, TX (Oct. 8-11).

94. Dalrymple, D., Sutton, D., and Creel, P.: "Conformance Control in Oil Recovery," presented at the 1985 Southwest Petroleum Short Course, Lubbock, TX (April).

95. "Water Control Services," Halliburton Services brochure WCS-0244.

96. Hanlon, D.J., Fulton, S., and Beny, M.: "New Chemical and Mechanical Technology for Injection Profile Control," presented at the 1987 Southwestern Petroleum Short Course, Lubbock, TX.

97. Doll, T.E.: "Polymer Mini-Injectivity Test: Shannon Reservoir, Naval Petroleum Reserve No. 3, Natrona County, WY," SPE paper 12925 presented at the 1984 Rocky Mountain Regional Meeting, Casper, WY (May 21-23).

98. Dovan, H.T. and Hutchins, R.D.: "Development of a New Aluminum-Polymer Gel System for Permeability Adjustment," SPE/DOE paper 12641 presented at the 1984 SPE/DOE Symposium on Enhanced Oil Recovery, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 15-18).

99. Howard, G.C. and Fast, C.R.: *Hydraulic Fracturing*, SPE, New York (1970) 149.

100. Koch, R.R. and McLaughlin, H.C.: "Field Performance of New Technique for Control of Water Production or Injection in Oil Recovery," paper SPE 2847 presented at the 1970 SPE Practical Aspects of Improved Recovery Techniques Meeting, Fort Worth, TX (March 8-10).

101. Avery, M.R. and Wells, T.A.: "Field Evaluation of a New Gelant for Water Control in Production Wells," paper SPE 18201 presented at the 1988 SPE Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, Houston, TX (Oct. 2-5).

102. Olsen, E.H.: "Case History: Water Shutoff Treatment in the Phosphoria Formation, Hot Springs County, Wyoming," paper SPE 15163 presented at the 1986 SPE Rocky Mountain Regional Meeting, Billings, MT (May 19-21).

103. Lake, L.W.: *Enhanced Oil Recovery*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey (1989) 58-62.

104. Pope, G.A.: "The Application of Fractional Flow Theory to Enhanced Oil Recovery," *SPEJ* (June 1980) 191-205.

105. Dake, L.P.: *Fundamentals of Reservoir Engineering*, Elsevier Scientific Publishing Co., New York (1982) 356-362.

106. Deppe, J.C.: "Injection Rates—The Effect of Mobility Ratio, Area Sweep, and Pattern," *SPEJ* (June 1961) 81-91.

107. Willhite G.P.: *Waterflooding*, SPE Textbook Series, Vol. 3 (1986).

108. Jones, S.C. and Roszelle, W.O.: "Graphical Techniques for Determining Relative Permeability From Displacement Experiments," *JPT* (May 1978) 807-817.

109. Muskat, M.: *Physical Principles of Oil Production*, McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc., N.Y. (1949) 226.

110. Karp, J.C., Lowe, D.K., and Marusov, N.: "Horizontal Barriers for Controlling Water Coning," *JPT* (July 1962) 783-790.

111. Muskat, M.: *Flow of Homogeneous Fluids Through Porous Media*, McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc., N.Y. (1946) 377.

APPENDIX A

PROCEDURE FOR FABRICATION OF TWO-DIMENSIONAL GLASS MICROMODELS

APPENDIX A
PROCEDURE FOR FABRICATION OF TWO-DIMENSIONAL GLASS MICROMODELS

This report details techniques for preparing the two-dimensional glass micromodels that are being used in the project, "Fluid Diversion and Sweep Improvement with Chemical Gels in Oil Recovery Processes." McKellar and Wardlaw[1], Chatzis[2], and Campbell[3] described the methods first used at the New Mexico Petroleum Recovery Research Center for fabricating two-dimensional glass micromodels. These micromodels were used in a number of flow-visualization studies.[4-10] The techniques described here represent improvements on methods that were developed earlier.[1-3]

SOLUTION PREPARATION

The following are solutions needed for micromodel fabrication.

Mirror-backing strippers:

Alkyd backing stripper: (WARNING!!! Store only in glass. Use only in a glass or steel pan.)
- 5% Formic acid
- 5% Acetic acid (Glacial)
- 5% Phenol
- 85% Methylene chloride

Epoxy backing stripper:
- 50% Paint remover (e.g., Strippteze®)
- 50% Methylene chloride

Copper etcher:
- 40% Nitric acid
- 60% Distilled water

Copper stripper:
- 60% Nitric acid
- 40% Distilled water

Glass etcher: (WARNING!!! Store and use only with fluorine-proof materials.)
- 110 g Ammonium hydrogen difluoride
- 600 ml Distilled water
- 15 ml Sulfuric acid
- Bring up to 1 liter with distilled water

SOLUTION HAZARDS

All of the chemicals used in micromodel construction are harmful if swallowed, inhaled, or absorbed through skin. The materials are extremely destructive to tissue of the mucous membranes and upper respiratory tract, eyes, and skin. Inhalation may be fatal as a result of spasm, inflammation and edema of the larynx and bronchi, chemical pneumonitis, or pulmonary edema. Symptoms of exposure may include burning sensation, coughing, wheezing, laryngitis, shortness of breath, headache, nausea, or vomiting. A fume hood should be used when working with these chemicals, and the worker should be properly clothed for protection from inhalation or physical contact with these chemicals.

Specific Chemical Hazards:

Photo-resist and xylene => Skin irritant. Reproductive hazard.

Phenol => Highly toxic. Possible teratogen. Vesicant. Reproductive hazard. Readily absorbed through skin. Light-sensitive. Combustible liquid.

Acetic acid => Corrosive. Combustible liquid. Readily absorbed through skin.

Methylene chloride => Possible carcinogen. Toxic. Neurologic hazard. Irritant.

Nitric acid => Causes severe burns. Strong oxidizer.

Sulfuric acid => Poison. Causes severe burns.

Ammonium hydrogen difluoride => Etches glass readily. Corrosive. Toxic. Hygroscopic.

SOLUTION DISPOSAL

Four separate hazardous wastes are generated using the techniques described in this report. Each should be stored separately and disposed using appropriate hazardous-waste procedures. The four wastes are as follows:

1. Waste mirror-backing stripper and stripped backing.

2. Waste photo-resist and xylene.

3. Waste nitric acid solutions. These should be neutralized with sodium bicarbonate, then allowed to evaporate and the solids collected. The solids are copper and silver salts.

4. Waste glass-etching solutions. These should first be mixed with enough calcium hydroxide to precipitate all of the fluorine. Then neutralize the solution with either sodium bicarbonate or sulfuric acid, depending on which way the pH needs to be adjusted. Let the solution settle for a few days, then pour the liquid down the sink and collect the calcium fluoride precipitate.

FABRICATION STEPS

Step 1. Choice of Mirror and Glass Plate

First, obtain plate-glass mirror and plate glass of the appropriate dimensions to accommodate the micromodel pattern. In our work, four micromodel patterns are in use. These are shown (actual size) in Figs. A-1 through A-4. Pore space is shown in black in these figures. Figure 1 is a block pattern (0.2 cm x 10 cm) that we use to obtain inherent permeabilities of gels. Figure 2 is a very - regular pattern with overall dimensions of 8 cm x 12.8 cm. The node diameters are 0.1 cm, and the connections between nodes have widths of 0.025 cm and lengths of 0.2 cm. The pattern shown in Fig. 3 represents a homogeneous rock structure (7 cm x 13.3 cm). Finally, the pattern shown in Fig. 4 (4.7 cm x 6.5 cm) is a 10X magnification of a thin section from a San Andres carbonate rock.

Fig. A-1. Pattern for Determining Gel Permeabilities

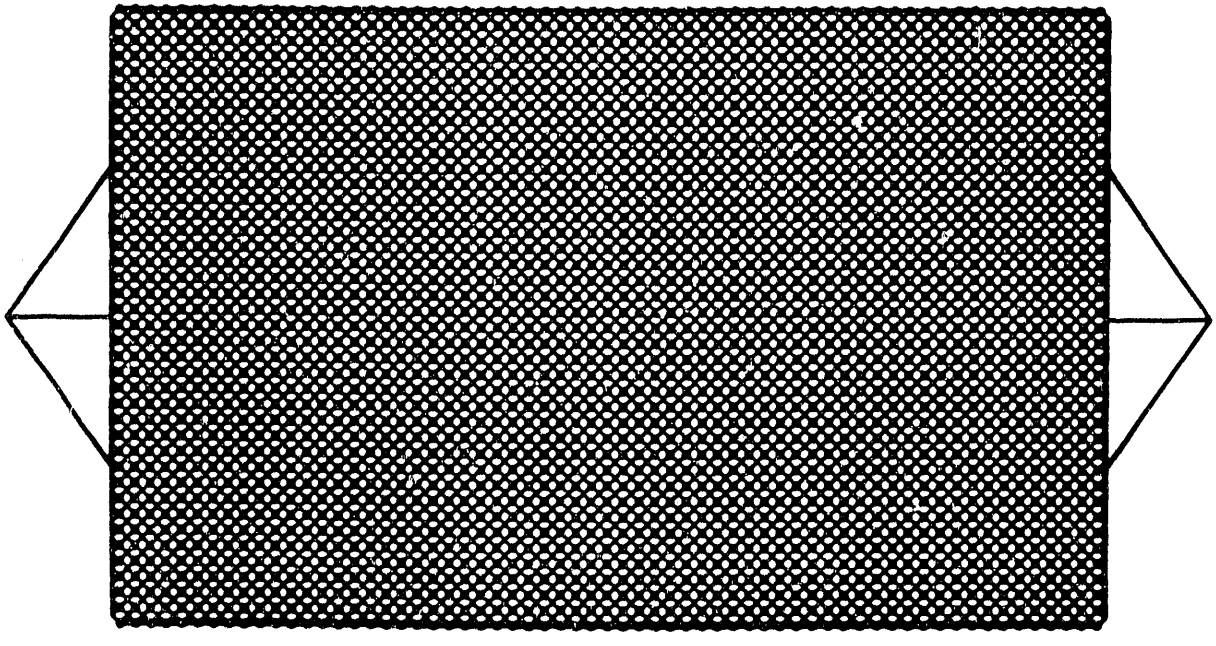


Fig. A-2. Regular Pattern

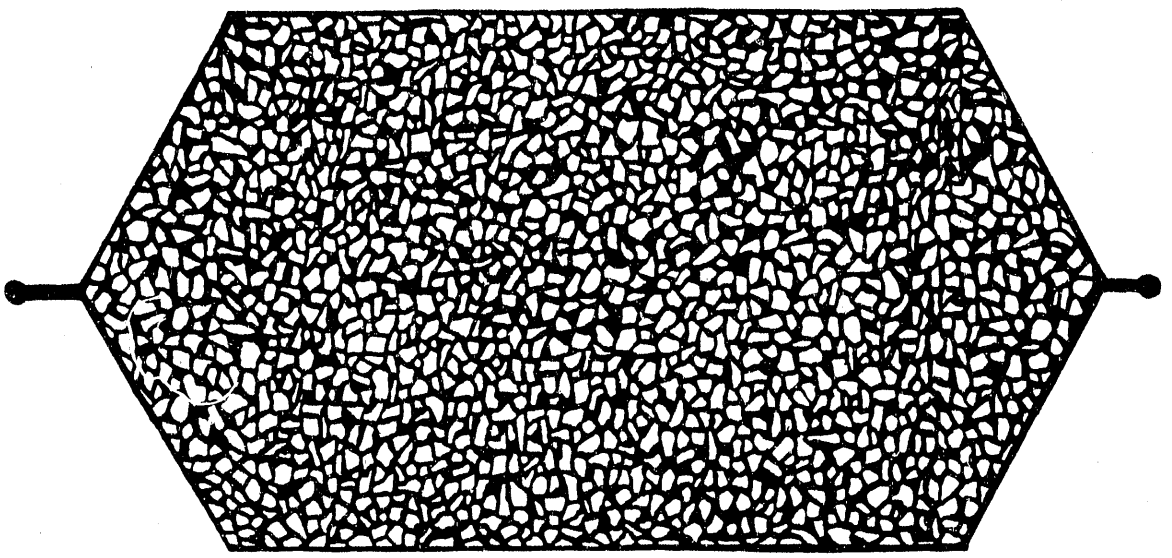


Fig. A-3. Homogeneous Rock Pattern

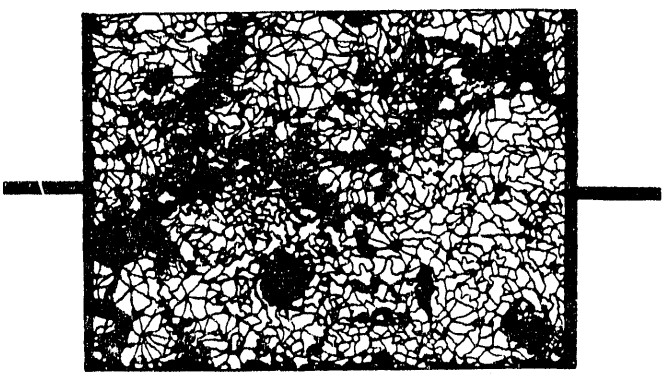


Fig. A-4. San Andres Carbonate Pattern

If a pattern is to be etched into both the top and bottom plates, then two pieces of plate-glass mirror must be used per micromodel. The pattern will be etched into one plate, while the mirror image of the pattern will be etched into the complementary plate. If a pattern is to be etched into only one plate of the micromodel, then an unetched piece of plate glass is used as the complementary plate.

Step 2. Removing the Mirror Backing

There are two different solutions that can be used to remove the backing from the mirror. There is an epoxy stripper and an alkyd stripper. Try a sample piece of mirror in each solution to determine the best solution to use. The best solution will be the one that leaves a shiny clean copper surface upon which water will not bead.

Step 2a. Alkyd Stripper

This step should be performed in a fume hood. Use a glass or steel pan that is just large enough for the mirror to lie horizontally. Then cover the mirror with about one centimeter of stripper. Place the mirror in the solution with the backing side facing up. It should take 15 to 25 seconds for the backing to peel from the copper surface. When the backing is free of the copper, remove the mirror and rinse thoroughly with tap water. Once the stripping solution has been rinsed from the mirror, pour a liberal amount of paint remover onto the copper surface and rub with fingers until the copper is shiny. The copper is now ready to be rinsed.

Step 2a. (alternate) Epoxy Stripper

This step should be performed in a fume hood. Apply a two-millimeter coat of the epoxy stripper on the mirror backing. Leave the stripper on the backing until the backing bubbles off the copper or for five minutes, whichever comes first. When the backing is free of the copper, rinse thoroughly with tap water. Now, pour a liberal amount of paint remover onto the copper surface and rub it into the copper with fingers until the copper is shiny. The copper is now ready to be rinsed.

Step 2b. Rinse

Rinse the paint remover from the mirror using tap water and apply a coat of a non-abrasive detergent (e.g., Sunlight®). Leave the detergent on the copper for ten to twenty seconds. Rinse the copper with tap water and apply another coating of detergent. Rub the detergent into the copper gently with a soft wet sponge. Rinse the copper well with tap water. Immediately after rinsing, hold the mirror vertically. If the water sheets, rinse with distilled water and blow the copper surface dry with compressed air. Then, prepare to coat with photo-resist. If the water beads on the copper, try washing the area with more detergent. If this does not work, apply some paint remover to the area. Then, rinse and wash with detergent; rinse with tap water; rinse with distilled water; and blow the copper surface dry with compressed air.

Step 3. Applying the Photo-Resist

Mix Kodak photo-resist concentrate (KTFR 146-1961) with xylene using a 1:2 ratio, respectively. Store the mixture in a dark bottle, and keep the bottle in a dark place when not in use.

To apply the resist, hold the mirror horizontally with the copper side facing up, and pour on enough resist to coat the copper evenly. Leave the excess resist on the copper for ten seconds. Then, place the mirror vertically to drain most of the excess resist. Now, place the mirror vertically on a paper towel so that the bottom edge is on the towel and the top edge is leaning on something. Leave the mirror in a dark place for 20 to 30 minutes. After this time, place the mirror, resist-side up, in a dark place overnight. The mirror is now ready to be exposed.

Step 4. Exposure

Place the mirror under the printing lamp and put the pattern on the mirror with the emulsion side on the resist. Then place a clear piece of glass on top of the pattern in order to hold the pattern in contact with the resist.

Most photo-resists need to be exposed with a UV lamp that has a peak wavelength of 365 nm. The amount of energy that the lamp emits, as well as the distance the lamp is from the mirror, will control the time necessary for the correct exposure. The time needed for an eight-watt lamp six inches from the work is about five hours. A forty-watt lamp fifteen inches from the work needs about an hour, and a fifteen-hundred-watt lamp twenty-four inches from the work will need about ten seconds. However, the exact exposure time needs to be determined by trial and error. If the resist washes off the mirror during development, the resist was under exposed. If the resist stays on the mirror and the pattern does not show up during development, the resist was over exposed.

Exposure is the most critical part of the entire micromodel process. Collimated light is essential for a sharp image. The light can be collimated by using a collimated light source or by moving the lamp further away from the work. Unfortunately, by moving the lamp further away from the work, the intensity of the light on the work surface decreases, thus increasing the exposure time and decreasing feature resolution. Table A1 gives recommended exposure times for the patterns in Figs. A-1 through A-4 when a 70-watt lamp (Spectroline Model XX-15A, Long Wave, UV-365 nm) is used to expose patterns at a distance of 11 inches from the light source.

TABLE A1
Exposure Times for Patterns in Figs. A-1 through A-4

Pattern	Exposure Time
Fig. 1	1 hour
Fig. 2	1 hour
Fig. 3	1 hour
Fig. 4	5 minutes

Step 5. Development

After the mirror has been exposed, place it in an oven at 200°F for 30 minutes. Then remove the mirror and let it cool for 10 minutes. The remaining steps in this paragraph should be performed in a fume hood. Now, holding the mirror horizontally with the resist side up, pour enough xylene on the resist to cover the surface completely. Slightly tilt the mirror back and forth so that the xylene washes across the surface. Do not let the resist get dry! Pour on xylene as needed to keep the resist

wet for 90 seconds. Once this time has elapsed, drain the excess xylene and then rinse the mirror under a gentle stream of tap water. Finally, gently rinse the resist with distilled water and place it back in the oven for 30 minutes.

Place the developed mirror in a 60% nitric acid solution for 15 seconds. Remove the mirror and rinse thoroughly with tap water, followed by a rinse with distilled water. Then, dry with compressed air. The pattern is either perfect, or the exposure time was incorrect. If the pattern is acceptable, all exposed glass that is not to be etched should be masked with resist or wax. This is done using a small paint brush. When the mask is fully dry, the mirror is ready to etch.

Step 6. Etching

The steps in this paragraph must be performed in a fume hood, and the worker must be fully protected with a mask and clothed with acid-resistant garments. The glass-etching solution used in this process will etch at a rate of 0.20 mm/hr. A good rule of thumb is that the depth of etch should be equal to the average throat width. However, the etch time should not exceed two hours as the mask will start to degrade. If a deeper etch is required, add proportionately more ammonium hydrogen difluoride and sulfuric acid to the solution. Of course, the trade-off here is that the more concentrated the etch solution is, the rougher it will be on the photo-resist, copper, and mask. Now, place the mirror in a plastic container, add the etching solution, heat to 100°F, and gently agitate—a stir bar works well for this.

NOTE: One liter of the glass etching solution will properly etch five 4" x 7" mirrors. After this, the solution should be disposed.

When the desired depth of etch has been reached, remove the mirror and rinse it thoroughly with tap water. Then, scrub the photo-resist/metal vigorously using a wire brush or sandpaper. Ideally, the scrubbing will remove most of the brown or copper material. Next, dip the mirror in 60% nitric acid for a few seconds to remove the silver. Then remove the remaining photo-resist and metal by placing the mirror in a very strong oxidizer such as concentrated sulfuric acid and Nochromix.® [Nochromix is a trademark of Godax Laboratories. This is prepared using the vendor's procedure (1 size package/2 liters concentrated H_2SO_4).] The oxidizer solution should be heated (≈60°C) and stirred while in contact with the mirror. Depending on how much photo-resist remains on the mirror, this cleaning process may take from 30 minutes to several hours. When all photo-resist and metal has been removed, rinse the model plate well.

Step 7. Drilling Inlet and Outlet Holes

Using a diamond bit, drill inlet and outlet holes (e.g., one-eighth-inch diameter) in the appropriate location in one of the etched plates. For each hole, we recommend drilling half way through a plate from the etched side of the plate. Then, finish drilling the hole from the unetched side of the plate. This procedure will maximize the chances of making an acceptable hole.

Step 8. Fusing

Make sure the model plate and the cover plate are clean and free of contamination. Align the two plates, and place a small drop of Super Glue® at each corner to keep the plates from slipping. The fusing temperature is 690°C and the annealing temperature is 545°C. A suggested temperature cycle for the fusing process is as follows:

TABLE A2
Suggested Temperature Cycle for Fusing

Temperature (°C)	Time (hrs)
195	2.0
370	2.0
545	2.0
690	2.0
545	2.0
370	2.0
195	2.0
off	10.0

CONCLUSION

The purpose of this paper is to serve as a guideline for micromodel construction. Variations of this method may work equally well, and further improvements are certainly possible. Technique, attention to detail, patience, and creativity are the true keys to fabricating perfect micromodels.

REFERENCES

1. McKellar, M. and Wardlaw, N.C.: "A Method of Making Two-Dimensional Glass Micromodels of Pore Systems," tech. note, *J. Canadian Pet. Tech.* (1982) 21(4).

2. Chatzis, I.: "Photofabrication Technique of 2-D Glass Micromodels," PRRC Report No. 82-12, New Mexico Petroleum Recovery Research Center, Socorro, NM (Mar. 1982).

3. Campbell, B.T: "Photofabrication of Porous Networks in Two-Dimensional Glass Plate Micromodels," PRRC Report No. 83-3, New Mexico Petroleum Recovery Research Center, Socorro, NM (1983).

4. Chatzis, I., Morrow, N.R., and Lim, H.T.: "Magnitude and Detailed Structure of Residual Oil Saturation," *SPEJ* (Apr. 1983) 311-326.

5. Bahralolom, I.M., Bretz, R.E., and Orr, F.M., Jr.: "Experimental Investigation of the Interaction of Phase Behavior With Microscopic Heterogeneity in a CO_2 Flood," paper SPE 14147 presented at the 1985 SPE Technical Conference and Exhibition, Las Vegas, NV (Sept. 22-25).

6. Campbell, B.T. and Orr, F.M., Jr.: "Flow Visualization for CO_2/Crude-Oil Displacements," *SPEJ* (Oct. 1985) 665-678.

7. Bahralolom, I.M. and Orr, F.M., Jr.: "Solubility and Extraction in Multiple-Contact Miscible Displacements: Comparison of N_2 and CO_2 Flow Visualization Experiments," paper SPE 15079 presented at the 1986 SPE California Regional Meeting, Oakland, CA (Apr. 2-4).

8. Martin, F.D. and Kovarik, F.S.: "Chemical Gels for Diverting CO_2: Baseline Experiments," paper SPE 16728 presented at the 1987 Technical Conference and Exhibition, Dallas, TX (Sept. 27-30).

9. Martin, F.D., Kovarik, F.S., Chang, P.W., and Phillips, J.C.: "Gels for CO_2 Profile Modification," paper SPE/DOE 17330 presented at the 1988 SPE/DOE Symposium on Enhanced Oil Recovery, Tulsa, OK (Apr. 17-20).

10. Huh, D., Cochrane, T., and Kovarik, F.S.: "The Effect of Microscopic Heterogeneity on CO_2-Foam Mobility--A Mechanistic Study," *JPT* (Aug. 1989) 872-879.

APPENDIX B

GELATION STUDIES AT THE OPTIMUM REACTION pH

APPENDIX B
GELATION STUDIES AT THE OPTIMUM REACTION pH

TABLE B1
6% Floperm 325 (3% Floperm 325R, 3% Floperm 325F), 0.5% KCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=9.0 Gelation time: 10 hrs

Table B1a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	I/I	I/I	I/I	I/I
7	I/I	I/I	I/I	I/I
12.5	I/B	I/H	I/G	I/H

Table B1b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	1.32	1.39	1.39	0.75
7	1.26	1.32	1.39	0.84
12.5	0.00	0.55	0.62	0.65

Table B1c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	7.5	8.0	7.2	6.4
7	7.6	8.0	7.2	6.4
12.5	11.5	10.2	9.7	10.4

TABLE B2
0.4% Xanthan (Flocon 4800), 100 ppm HCHO,
73 ppm Cr^{3+} (X-link 2000), 0.5% KCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=4.2 Gelation time: 8.5 hrs

Table B2a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	I/I	I/I	I/I	H/G
7	I/I	I/I	I/I	I/H
12.5	I/A	H/B	I/A	I/A

Table B2b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	1.08	0.60	0.41	0.42
7	1.08	0.68	0.44	0.18
12.5	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

Table B2c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.0
7	3.6	3.3	3.0	3.2
12.5	12.6	12.5	12.3	11.1

TABLE B3
0.4% Xanthan (Flocon 4800), 100 ppm HCHO,
154 ppm Cr^{3+} (X-link 2000), 0.5% KCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=3.9 Gelation time: 6 hrs

Table B3a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	I/I	I/I	I/I	J/I
7	I/I	I/I	I/I	J/I
12.5	I/G	H/B	I/A	J/A

Table B3b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	---	0.34	0.27	0.15
7	0.72	0.40	0.32	0.16
12.5	0.92	0.00	0.00	0.00

Table B3c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	3.2	3.1	3.0	2.9
7	3.4	3.2	3.1	3.0
12.5	12.5	12.5	11.7	11.0

TABLE B4
2.8% Polyacrylamide (Cyanagel 100),
500 ppm $Na_2Cr_2O_7$, 1500 ppm $Na_2S_2O_4$, 0.5% KCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=5.0 Gelation time: 13.5 hrs

Table B4a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	H/H	H/F	H/C	H/B
7	H/H	H/C	H/C	H/B
12.5	H/B	H/A	H/A	H/A

Table B4b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	1.48	1.29	1.72	1.32
7	1.48	1.54	1.72	1.32
12.5	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

Table B4c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	6.1	6.3	6.6	7.2
7	6.4	6.4	6.6	7.3
12.5	12.2	12.0	10.9	11.1

TABLE B5
0.994% Polyacrylamide (MARCIT),
150 ppm Cr^{3+} (as carboxylate from Marathon), 1% NaCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=5.8 Gelation time: 12.5 hrs

Table B5a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	H/H	H/H	H/H	H/H
7	H/H	H/H	H/H	H/H
12.5	H/C	H/B	H/B	H/B

Table B5b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	1.00	0.89	0.89	1.03
7	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
12.5	2.00	2.00	0.73	0.63

Table B5c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	5.1	4.8	5.0	6.2
7	5.3	5.0	4.9	6.0
12.5	12.2	12.0	10.9	10.8

TABLE B6
1.39% Polyacrylamide (MARCIT),
212 ppm Cr^{3+} (as carboxylate from Marathon), 1% NaCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=5.8 Gelation time: 11.5 hrs

Table B6a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	I/I	I/I	I/I	I/I
7	I/I	I/I	I/I	I/I
12.8	I/B	I/B	I/B	I/B

Table B6b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	0.97	1.00	0.91	1.00
7	1.03	1.00	0.94	0.97
12.8	1.34	0.66	1.14	1.09

Table B6c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	5.0	4.8	4.6	5.8
7	5.0	5.5	4.7	5.9
12.5	12.1	11.9	10.5	10.1

TABLE B7
2.5% Floperm 465P, 3% Floperm 465 B_2,
0.25% Floperm 465X, 0.5% KCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=5.1 Gelation time: 14.5 hrs

Table B7a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	I/I	I/I	I/I	I/I
7	I/I	I/H	I/I	I/I
12.5	I/I	I/I	I/I	I/I

Table B7b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	0.49	0.15	0.14	0.10
7	0.55	0.14	0.10	0.10
12.5	0.68	0.24	0.14	0.10

Table B7c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	4.0	4.0	4.6	4.3
7	4.1	4.0	4.2	4.2
12.5	5.0	5.0	5.0	5.0

TABLE B8
10% Colloidal Silica (Ludox HS-40), 2.1% NaCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=8.25 Gelation time: 9.5 hrs

Table B8a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	J/I	J/I	J/I	J/I
7	J/I	J/I	J/I	J/I
12.5	J/I	J/I	J/I	J/I

Table B8b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	1.17	1.14	1.17	1.26
7	1.17	1.20	1.14	1.11
12.5	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92

Table B8c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	7.6	8.4	8.5	6.2
7	8.0	8.4	8.6	6.3
12.5	10.8	10.8	10.8	10.8

TABLE B9
10% Colloidal Silica (Ludox SM), 0.7% NaCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=8.25 Gelation time: 31 hrs

Table B9a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	J/J	J/J	J/I	J/I
7	J/J	J/J	J/I	J/I
12.5	J/I	J/I	J/I	J/I

Table B9b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	0.92	0.93	0.92	0.97
7	0.94	0.92	0.92	0.95
12.5	0.78	0.76	0.79	0.84

Table B9c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
3	8.0	8.6	9.1	9.4
7	8.2	8.7	9.1	9.4
12.5	10.8	10.8	10.9	11.0

APPENDIX C

GELATION STUDIES AT pH=7

APPENDIX C
GELATION STUDIES AT pH=7

TABLE C1
6% Floperm 325 (3% Floperm 325R, 3% Floperm 325F), 0.5% KCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=7 Gelation time: 6.5 hrs

Table C1a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	I/I	I/I	I/I	I/I

Table C1b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	1.14	1.17	1.14	1.17

Table C1c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	4.5	4.0	3.3	3.25

TABLE C2
0.4% Xanthan (Flocon 4800), 100 ppm HCHO,
73 ppm Cr^{3+} (X-link 2000), 0.5% KCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=7 Gelation time: 7.25 hrs

Table C2a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	E/C	E/B	E/B	E/B

Table C2b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	1.14	1.17	---	0.15

Table C2c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	5.8	6.4	5.5	5.2

TABLE C3
0.4% Xanthan (Flocon 4800), 100 ppm HCHO,
154 ppm Cr^{3+} (X-link 2000), 0.5% KCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=7 Gelation time: 4.25 hrs

Table C3a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	I/I	I/I	I/I	I/I

Table C3b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	0.95	0.79	0.84	0.62

Table C3c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	4.8	5.5	5.0	4.6

TABLE C4
2.8% Polyacrylamide (Cyanagel 100),
500 ppm $Na_2Cr_2O_7$, 1500 ppm $Na_2S_2O_4$, 0.5% KCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=7

Gelation time: no gelation seen

Table C4a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	A/A	A/A	A/A	A/A

Table C4b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	---	---	---	---

Table C4c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	7.0	7.3	8.0	8.4

TABLE C5
0.994% Polyacrylamide (MARCIT),
150 ppm Cr^{3+} (as carboxylate from Marathon), 1% NaCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=7 Gelation time: 11 hrs

Table C5a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	H/H	H/H	H/H	H/H

Table C5b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	0.97	0.90	0.92	0.97

Table C5c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	5.2	5.1	5.3	6.4

TABLE C6
1.39% Polyacrylamide (MARCIT),
212 ppm Cr^{3+} (as carboxylate from Marathon), 1% NaCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=7 Gelation time: 9.5 hrs

Table C6a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	I/I	I/I	I/I	I/I

Table C6b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.06

Table C6c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	5.3	5.0	4.9	6.0

TABLE C7
2.5% Floperm 465P, 3% Floperm 465 B_2,
0.25% Floperm 465X, 0.5% KCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=7

Gelation time: no gelation seen

Table C7a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	A/A	A/A	A/A	A/A

Table C7b. Gel volume after 30 days + Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	---	---	---	---

Table C7c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	7.2	6.9	6.5	6.4

TABLE C8
10% Colloidal Silica (Ludox HS-40), 2.1% NaCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=7 Gelation time: 6.5 hrs

Table C8a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	J/I	J/I	J/I	J/I

Table C8b. Gel volume after 30 days ÷ Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	1.20	1.17	1.17	1.23

Table C8c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	7.0	7.5	7.8	7.9

TABLE C9
10% Colloidal Silica (Ludox SM), 0.7% NaCl

Gelation conditions: 105°F, pH=7 Gelation time: 4.5 hrs

Table C9a. Initial gel code/Gel code after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	J/I	J/J	J/I	J/I

Table C9b. Gel volume after 30 days + Initial gel volume

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	0.95	0.95	0.92	0.95

Table C9c. pH of free water after 30 days

Initial pH of Free Water	Temperature ≈70°F	105°F	160°F	200°F
7	7.2	7.8	8.7	9.1

APPENDIX D

RESULTS FROM CORE EXPERIMENTS WITH RESORCINOL-FORMALDEHYDE GELANTS

APPENDIX D
RESULTS FROM CORE EXPERIMENTS WITH RESORCINOL-FORMALDEHYDE GELANTS

TABLE D1
Results From Brine Injection After Gelation of 3% Resorcinol, 3% Formaldehyde, 105°F

Rock	Brine	Flux (ft/d)	Pressure Gradient (psi/ft)	Final k (md)	F_{rr}
390-md Berea Sandstone ϕ=0.188	0.5% KCl pH=7 μ_w=0.65 cp	15.47	298	5.3	73.6
		3.094	63	5.0	77.6
		0.619	14	4.6	85.7
57-md Berea Sandstone ϕ=0.182	0.5% KCl pH=7 μ_w=0.65 cp	0.622	160	0.40	143
		3.112	771	0.42	138
		9.337	2130	0.45	127
		3.112	727	0.44	130
		0.622	142	0.45	127
		0.124	29	0.44	131
		0.025	6	0.45	127
13-md Indiana Limestone ϕ=0.179	0.5% KCl pH=7 μ_w=0.65 cp	0.622	24	2.7	4.8
		3.109	115	2.8	4.7
		0.622	24	2.7	4.8
		3.109	111	2.9	4.5
		15.55	504	3.0	4.1
570-md Berea Sandstone ϕ=0.223	0.5% KCl 0.05 M $NaHCO_3$ pH=9 μ_w=0.67 cp	0.621	251	0.26	2170
		3.103	750	0.44	1300
		0.621	154	0.43	1330
		0.124	29	0.45	1270
		0.621	140	0.47	1216
		3.103	664	0.50	1151
7.4-md Indiana Limestone ϕ=0.174	0.5% KCl 0.05 M $NaHCO_3$ pH=9 μ_w=0.67 cp	0.025	1006	0.0026	2800
		0.012	569	0.0022	3300
		0.006	302	0.0021	3500

TABLE D2

Results During Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 455-md Berea Sandstone
(Gelant contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, 0.5% KCl, 0.05 M phosphate, pH=7)
ϕ=0.224, μ_w=0.70 cp, 105°F

Flux (ft/d)	Pressure Gradient (psi/ft)	Final k (md)	F_{rr}	
0.025	18.2	0.152	3000	
0.050	28.0	0.198	2300	$F_{rr}=845\ u^{-0.33}$
0.025	17.6	0.157	2900	
0.201	56.2	0.396	1150	
0.025	8.8	0.314	1450	$F_{rr}=970\ u^{-0.11}$
0.100	30.6	0.361	1260	
0.393	73.6	0.591	770	$F_{rr}=662\ u^{-0.19}$
0.025	7.9	0.350	1300	
0.100	26.3	0.421	1080	
0.785	100	0.868	524	
0.100	18.0	0.615	740	$F_{rr}=500\ u^{-0.17}$
0.025	5.8	0.474	960	
1.570	147	1.182	385	
0.393	38.0	1.143	398	$F_{rr}=386\ u^{-0.10}$
0.025	3.5	0.789	577	
15.70	1103	1.574	289	
6.280	454	1.532	297	
3.140	218	1.591	286	
1.570	76.0	1.522	299	
0.785	53.3	1.631	279	$\overline{F}_{rr}=286$
0.393	27.9	1.558	292	
0.100	6.6	1.672	272	
0.050	3.3	1.691	269	
0.025	1.8	1.564	291	

TABLE D3

Results From Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 7-md Indiana Limestone
(Gelant contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, 0.5% KCl, 0.05 M phosphate, pH=7)
ϕ=0.186, μ_w=0.70 cp, 105°F

Flux (ft/d)	Pressure Gradient (psi/ft)	Final k (md)	F_{rr}	
0.025	160	0.0174	404	
0.050	283	0.0195	358	$\overline{F}_{rr}$=365
0.025	147	0.0188	373	
0.100	534	0.0297	338	$\overline{F}_{rr}$=355
0.025	151	0.0183	382	
0.100	545	0.0203	345	
0.202	910	0.0246	285	$\overline{F}_{rr}$=326
0.100	511	0.0217	323	
0.050	266	0.0208	337	
0.025	142	0.0195	360	

TABLE D4

Results From Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 28-md Berea Sandstone
(Gelant contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, 0.5% KCl, 0.05 M phosphate, pH=6.5)
ϕ=0.185, μ_w=0.70 cp, 105°F

Flux (ft/d)	Pressure Gradient (psi/ft)	Final k (md)	F_{rr}
0.025	7.9	0.35	80
0.100	12.6	0.88	32
0.050	11.6	0.48	59
0.025	8.4	0.33	85
0.393	34.2	1.27	22
0.201	20.7	1.08	26
0.100	12.6	0.88	32
0.025	9.7	0.29	98
1.57	130	1.33	21
0.393	38.8	1.12	25
0.100	15.8	0.70	40
0.025	9.0	0.31	91
6.28	422	1.65	17
3.14	233	1.55	18
0.785	62.0	1.40	20
0.393	32.6	1.33	21
0.025	8.5	0.33	86
15.7	930	1.87	15
6.28	397	1.75	16
3.14	223	1.55	18
1.57	112	1.48	19
0.785	58.9	1.48	19
0.393	31.1	1.40	20
0.100	13.8	0.80	35
0.050	9.3	0.60	47
0.025	7.3	0.38	74

TABLE D5

Results From Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 288-md Berea Sandstone
(Gelant contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, 0.5% KCl, 0.05 M $NaHCO_3$, pH=6.5)
ϕ=0.209, μ_w=0.67 cp, 105°F

Flux (ft/d)	Pressure Gradient (psi/ft)	Final k (md)	F_{rr}	
0.025	10.5	0.253	1140	
0.100	29.0	0.364	790	$F_{rr}=417u^{-0.28}$
0.025	10.7	0.249	1160	
0.202	40.8	0.524	550	$F_{rr}=404u^{-0.19}$
0.100	23.2	0.458	630	
0.393	47.7	0.87	330	
0.100	17.6	0.600	480	$F_{rr}=242u^{-0.31}$
0.025	7.2	0.369	780	
0.785	69.3	1.20	240	
0.393	35.4	1.18	245	$\overline{F}_{rr}=248$
0.100	9.6	1.11	260	
3.14	169	1.98	146	
0.785	45.3	1.84	157	$\overline{F}_{rr}=153$
0.393	24.1	1.72	167	
0.100	5.3	2.00	144	
15.7	629	2.64	109	
6.28	261	2.55	113	
3.14	137	2.42	119	
1.57	76.2	2.18	132	$\overline{F}_{rr}=123$
0.785	39.2	2.12	136	
0.393	17.0	2.44	118	
0.202	9.9	2.16	133	

TABLE D6
Results From Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 7.4-md Indiana Limestone
(Gelant contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, 0.5% KCl, 0.05 M $NaHCO_3$, pH=6.5)
ϕ=0.191, μ_w=0.67 cp, 105°F

Flux (ft/d)	Pressure Gradient (psi/ft)	Final k (md)	F_{rr}	
0.393	0.8	4.91	1.5	
1.57	3.1	5.27	1.4	$F_{rr}=1.5u^{-0.07}$
0.785	1.9	4.33	1.7	
3.14	6.2	5.27	1.4	
6.28	11.4	5.67	1.3	
15.7	28.6	5.67	1.3	
3.14	6.2	5.27	1.4	
0.393	0.9	4.33	1.7	

Table D7
Results From Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 61-md Berea Sandstone
(Gelant contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, 0.5% KCl, 0.05 M $NaHCO_3$, pH=6.0)
ϕ=0.195, μ_w=0.67 cp, 105°F

Flux (ft/d)	Pressure Gradient (psi/ft)	Final k (md)	F_{rr}	
1.57	5.2	32	1.9	
3.14	9.8	34	1.8	$F_{rr}=2.1u^{-0.14}$
6.28	17.5	38	1.6	
15.7	40.9	41	1.5	
6.28	16.4	41	1.5	
3.14	9.8	34	1.8	
1.57	5.7	29	2.1	

TABLE D8
Results From Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 704-md Berea Sandstone
(Gelant contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, 0.5% KCl, 0.05 M $NaHCO_3$, pH=6.0)
ϕ=0.200, μ_w=0.67 cp, 105°F

Flux (ft/d)	Pressure Gradient (psi/ft)	Final k (md)	F_{rr}	
3.14	0.9	381	1.8	
6.28	1.6	408	1.7	
15.7	4.0	411	1.7	
31.4	8.1	411	1.7	$\overline{F}_{rr}$=1.8
15.7	4.0	414	1.7	
6.28	1.7	458	1.8	
3.14	0.9	370	1.9	

TABLE D9
Results From Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 77-md Berea Sandstone
(Gelant contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, 0.5% KCl, 0.05 M phosphate, pH=6)
ϕ=0.196, μ_w=0.70 cp, 105°F

Flux (ft/d)	Pressure Gradient (psi/ft)	Final k (md)	F_{rr}	
1.57	3.2	55	1.4	
3.14	5.4	64	1.2	
1.57	3.6	48	1.6	
6.28	10.8	64	1.2	$\overline{F}_{rr}$=1.3
3.14	5.9	59	1.3	
15.7	27.1	64	1.2	
6.28	11.7	59	1.3	

TABLE D10
Results From Brine Injection After Gel Placement in 573-md Berea Sandstone
(Gelant contains 3% resorcinol, 3% formaldehyde, 0.5% KCl, 0.05 M acetate, pH=5)
ϕ=0.207, μ_w=0.67 cp, 105°F

Flux (ft/d)	Pressure Gradient (psi/ft)	Final k (md)	F_{rr}	
15.7	2.9	573	1.0	
31.4	5.2	573	1.0	$\overline{F}_{rr}$=1.0

APPENDIX E

DATA FROM VISCOUS FINGERING EXPERIMENTS

APPENDIX E
DATA FROM VISCOUS FINGERING EXPERIMENTS

See Fig. 40 and Nomenclature for definitions of r_p, r_{fo}, r_{fl}, and r_{vf}.

Table E1
Results Using 11-cp Ethanediol and 1-cp Water

Run	Bead Pack	r_p (cm)	r_{fo} (cm)	r_{fl} (cm)	r_{vf} (cm)	No. of fingers	1st Break-through	$r_{vf}/(r_{fo}-r_{fl})$	$(r_{vf}+r_{fl})/r_{fl}$
1	1	36.8	48.0	27.0	21.0	7	X	1.00	1.78
	2	18.5	20.5	11.0	7.0	4		0.74	1.64
2	1	37.4	45.0	29.0	16.0	7	X	1.00	1.55
	2	15.0	16.5	11.3	3.5	20		0.67	1.31
3	1	36.8	44.2	22.0	18.0	4		0.81	1.82
	2	13.0	15.5	6.2	9.3	12	X	1.00	2.50
4	1	34.5	39.0	17.0	18.0	4		0.82	2.06
	2	13.2	15.0	6.2	8.8	11	X	1.00	2.42
5	1	33.9	39.0	16.4	22.6	6	X	1.00	2.38
	2	15.4	16.8	9.4	3.8	22		0.51	1.40
6	1	34.2	39.8	16.3	23.5	4	X	1.00	2.44
	2	14.0	15.0	11.0	2.5	21		0.63	1.23
7	1	34.2	40.0	18.5	21.5	6	X	1.00	2.16
	2	14.7	16.0	12.0	2.0	27		0.50	1.17
8	1	34.0	40.0	15.5	17.3	5		0.71	2.12
	2	13.0	14.6	12.0	2.6	25	X	1.00	1.22
9	1	35.0	41.2	18.5	22.7	4	X	1.00	2.22
	2	11.7	14.0	7.5	2.0	20		0.31	1.27
10	1	35.3	42.5	19.0	23.5	7	X	1.00	2.24
	2	12.3	14.5	9.1	3.9	15		0.72	1.43
ave.	1	35.2	41.9	19.9	20.4	5		0.93	2.08
	2	14.1	15.8	9.6	4.5	18		0.71	1.56

Table E2
Results Using 2000-ppm Xanthan and 1-cp Water

Run	Bead Pack	r_p (cm)	r_{fo} (cm)	r_{fi} (cm)	r_{vf} (cm)	No. of fingers	1st Break-through	$r_{vf}/(r_{fo}-r_{fi})$	$(r_{vf}+r_{fi})/r_{fi}$
1	1	36.0	39.5	4.0	33.5	10		0.94	9.38
	2	14.0	14.1	4.1	9.9	10	X	1.00	3.41
2	1	35.5	36.1	7.7	28.4	8	X	1.00	4.69
	2	12.3	13.2	5.0	6.8	11		0.83	2.36
3	1	35.6	39.0	5.5	33.5	11	X	1.00	7.09
	2	12.0	12.5	3.5	8.0	10		0.89	3.29
4	1	36.0	39.1	5.5	30.7	14		0.91	6.58
	2	11.2	12.0	4.3	7.7	15	X	1.00	2.79
5	1	35.9	39.8	6.4	33.4	9	X	1.00	6.22
	2	11.5	12.0	4.5	6.4	9		0.85	2.42
6	1	35.6	38.5	9.0	29.5	15	X	1.00	4.28
	2	12.0	12.5	4.3	7.1	15		0.87	2.65
7	1	35.8	38.4	8.0	30.4	20	X	1.00	4.80
	2	11.6	12.0	4.5	5.9	27		0.79	2.31
8	1	35.6	38.4	10.8	27.6	10	X	1.00	3.56
	2	11.9	12.5	4.5	6.3	19		0.79	2.40
9	1	36.0	39.0	11.0	28.0	15	X	1.00	3.55
	2	11.5	12.2	4.0	5.5	20		0.67	2.38
10	1	36.0	39.5	10.0	29.5	9	X	1.00	3.95
	2	11.1	11.8	5.0	5.4	11		0.79	2.08
11	1	36.0	39.0	8.5	28.5	12		0.93	4.35
	2	10.3	10.8	3.5	7.3	18	X	1.00	3.09
12	1	36.3	39.0	10.0	29.0	12	X	1.00	3.90
	2	11.0	11.4	4.5	5.9	12		0.86	2.31
ave.	1	35.8	38.8	8.0	30.2	12		0.98	5.20
	2	11.6	12.2	4.3	6.9	15		0.86	2.62

Table E3
Results Using 2000-ppm HPAM and 1-cp Water

Run	Bead Pack	r_p (cm)	r_{fo} (cm)	r_{fl} (cm)	r_{vf} (cm)	No. of fingers	1st Break-through	$r_{vf}/(r_{fo}-r_{fl})$	$(r_{vf}+r_{fl})/r_{fl}$
1	1	35.7	40.4	14.5	25.9	9	X	1.00	2.79
	2	14.0	14.5	5.4	4.1	6		0.45	1.76
2	1	36.0	41.2	13.0	28.2	5	X	1.00	3.17
	2	10.0	11.0	3.6	4.4	3		0.59	2.22
3	1	33.7	39.5	13.2	26.3	8	X	1.00	2.99
	2	16.4	17.2	5.7	4.3	8		0.37	1.75
4	1	33.7	41.5	11.2	27.8	6		0.92	3.48
	2	16.6	17.5	3.6	13.9	4	X	1.00	4.86
5	1	32.9	37.4	8.9	28.5	8	X	1.00	4.20
	2	15.4	16.0	5.0	5.4	7		0.60	2.08
6	1	33.5	40.4	11.2	29.2	9	X	1.00	3.61
	2	16.2	16.8	4.7	7.8	7		0.64	2.66
7	1	32.4	38.3	12.0	26.3	7	X	1.00	3.19
	2	16.0	16.5	5.9	6.9	6		0.65	2.17
8	1	32.8	38.5	11.9	26.6	6	X	1.00	3.24
	2	15.8	16.3	4.2	7.1	6		0.59	2.69
9	1	32.8	40.3	12.0	28.3	7	X	1.00	3.36
	2	15.2	16.0	5.3	7.4	10		0.69	2.40
ave.	1	33.7	39.7	12.0	27.5	7		0.99	3.34
	2	15.1	15.8	4.8	6.8	6		0.62	2.51

APPENDIX F

FORTRAN CODING FOR THEORETICAL MODEL: RADIAL FLOW

```
      PROGRAM RADIAL
C
C PROGRAM INFORMATION:
C
C   BASED UPON THE THEORETICAL MODEL DEVELOPED IN THIS PAPER, A
C   FORTRAN PROGRAM WAS DEVELOPED TO DETERMINE THE DEGREE OF
C   PENETRATION OF GELANTS INTO OIL-PRODUCTIVE STRATA AS WELL AS
C   INTO WATER-SOURCE ZONES. THE TECHNIQUES USED IN THIS PROGRAM
C   TO CALCULATE FRONTAL SATURATIONS, SATURATION PROFILES, AND
C   AVERAGE SATURATIONS CAN BE FOUND IN REFS. 103, 104, AND 105.
C
C PROGRAM LIMITATIONS:
C   IN ADDITION TO THE ASSUMPTIONS MADE IN DEVELOPING THE
C   THEORETICAL MODEL, THE LIMITATIONS OF THIS FORTRAN PROGRAM
C   ARE LISTED BELOW:
C    1. THIS PROGRAM DEALS WITH RADIAL CASES ONLY.
C    2. IT IS ASSUMED IN THIS PROGRAM THAT, IN ANY LAYER, THE
C       OIL BANK (FR>1) OR THE WATER FRONT (FR=1) DOESN'T
C       PROPAGATE BEYOND (A) THE OUTLET OF THE CORE (COREFLOOD
C       CASES) OR (B) RPM (FIELD CASES).
C    3. IT IS ASSUMED IN THIS PROGRAM THAT THE FIELD PATTERN IS
C       5-SPOT.
C    4. SHOULD THE INITIAL SATURATION IN ANY GIVEN LAYER EXCEED
C       THE CRITICAL SATURATION (SWCT) (WHERE THE VELOCITY OF
C       OIL BANK EQUALS THAT OF GELANT FRONT), THIS PROGRAM
C       WOULD ATTEMPT AN APPROXIMATION BY RESETTING THE INITIAL
C       SATURATION TO (1-SOR).
C
C DEFINITION OF VARIABLES:
C
C   AINF1    =   FIRST GUESS OF THE WATER SATURATION AT THE
C                INFLECTION POINT OF THE FRACTIONAL FLOW CURVE
C                (LAYER 1)
C   AINF2    =   SECOND GUESS OF THE WATER SATURATION AT THE
C                INFLECTION POINT OF THE FRACTIONAL FLOW CURVE
C                (LAYER 1)
C   AINFI1   =   FIRST GUESS OF THE WATER SATURATION AT THE
C                INFLECTION POINT OF THE FRACTIONAL FLOW CURVE
C                (LAYER I)
C   AINFI2   =   SECOND GUESS OF THE WATER SATURATION AT THE
C                INFLECTION POINT OF THE FRACTIONAL FLOW CURVE
C                (LAYER I)
C   AK       =   PERMEABILITY, MD
C   AKRO     =   OIL RELATIVE PERMEABILITY
C   AKROO    =   END-POINT OIL RELATIVE PERMEABILITY
C   AKRW     =   WATER RELATIVE PERMEABILITY
C   AKRWO    =   END-POINT WATER RELATIVE PERMEABILITY
C   AL1      =   THE FIRST INTEGRATION TERM (GELANT FRONT) ON THE
C                LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION
C                (LAYER I)
C   ALHS     =   LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION
C   AMO      =   WATER-OIL MOBILITY
```

```
C   AMOP    =   GELANT-OIL MOBILITY
C   AMUO    =   OIL VISCOSITY, CP
C   AMUP    =   GELANT VISCOSITY, CP
C   AMUW    =   WATER VISCOSITY, CP
C   ANO     =   EXPONENT FOR OIL RELATIVE PERMEABILLITY EQUATION
C   ANW     =   EXPONENT FOR WATER RELATIVE PERMEABILITY EQUATION
C   AR1     =   THE FIRST INTEGRATION TERM (GELANT FRONT) ON THE
C               RIGHT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION
C               (LAYER 1)
C   DFW     =   FIRST DERIVATIVE OF THE WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW
C               FUNCTION (FW)
C   DDFW    =   SECOND DERIVATIVE OF THE WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW
C               FUNCTION (FW)
C   DP      =   DEGREE OF PENETRATION OF GELANTS (AS DEFINED IN
C               THE PAPER)
C   EPS     =   CONVERGENCE CRITERIA
C   FKR11   =   FW/AKRW AT SW1K (OIL BANK IN LAYER 1)
C   FKR12   =   FW/AKRW AT SW1I (INITIAL CONDITION IN LAYER 1)
C   FKRI1   =   FW/AKRW AT SWIK (OIL BANK IN LAYER I)
C   FKRI2   =   FW/AKRW AT SWII (INITIAL CONDITION IN LAYER I)
C   FR      =   RESISTANCE FACTOR (BRINE MOBILITY DIVIDED BY
C               MOBILITY OF THE GELANT)
C   FW      =   WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW FUNCTION
C   FW1I    =   WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW AT INITIAL WATER
C               SATURATION IN LAYER 1
C   FW1K    =   WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW AT OIL BANK FRONT IN
C               LAYER 1
C   FWII    =   WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW AT INITIAL WATER
C               SATURATION IN LAYER I
C   FWIK    =   WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW AT OIL BANK FRONT IN
C               LAYER I
C   FWP     =   WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW AT GELANT FRONT
C   ITER    =   COUNTER OF THE NUMBER OF ITERATIONS
C   NI      =   NUMBER OF INTERVALS USED IN SUBROUTINE TRAPEZ TO
C               EVALUATE THE INSIDE INTEGRATION TERMS
C               NUMERICALLY
C   NO      =   NUMBER OF INTERVALS USED IN EVALUATING THE
C               OUTSIDE INTEGRATIONS
C   PHI1    =   POROSITY IN LAYER 1
C   PHII    =   POROSITY IN LAYER I
C   PSI     =   PRESSURE DROP BETWEEN RPM AND THE INJECTION WELL
C               DIVIDED BY THE PRESSURE DROP BETWEEN THE
C               PRODUCTION WELL AND RPM JUST PRIOR TO GELANT
C               INJECTION
C   R1      =   THE VELOCITY RATIO OF GELANT FRONT AND OIL BANK
C               IN LAYER 1
C   RE      =   DRAINAGE RADIUS, FT
C   RI      =   THE VELOCITY RATIO OF GELANT FRONT AND OIL BANK
C               IN LAYER I
C   RD      =   DIMENSIONLESS RADIUS (THE SQUARE OF THE RATIO OF
C               THE RADIUS OF PENETRATION TO THE DRAINAGE
C               RADIUS)
```

```
C   RD1       =   DIMENSIONLESS RADIUS OF GELANT PENETRATION INTO
C                 LAYER 1
C   RDO       =   DIMENSIONLESS WELLBORE RADIUS
C   RDPM      =   A DIMENSIONLESS REFERENCE DISTANCE FROM THE
C                 WELLBORE BEYOND WHICH THE GEL TREATMENT HAS NO
C                 EFFECT ON FLUID SATURATION
C   RO        =   WELLBORE RADIUS, FT
C   RP1       =   RADIUS OF GELANT PENETRATION INTO LAYER 1, FT
C   RPM       =   A REFERENCE DISTANCE FROM THE WELLBORE BEYOND
C                 WHICH THE GEL TREATMENT HAS NO EFFECT ON FLUID
C                 SATURATION, FT
C   RR1       =   THE VELOCITY RATIO OF GELANT FRONT AND WATER
C                 FRONT IN LAYER 1
C   RRI       =   THE VELOCITY RATIO OF GELANT FRONT AND WATER
C                 FRONT IN LAYER I
C   SHK11     =   FIRST GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE GELANT
C                 FRONT (LAYER 1)
C   SHK12     =   SECOND GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE GELANT
C                 FRONT (LAYER 1)
C   SHKI11    =   FIRST GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE GELANT
C                 FRONT (LAYER I)
C   SHKI12    =   SECOND GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE GELANT
C                 FRONT (LAYER I)
C   SHK21     =   FIRST GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE OIL BANK
C                 (LAYER 1)
C   SHK22     =   SECOND GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE OIL BANK
C                 (LAYER 1)
C   SHKI21    =   FIRST GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE OIL BANK
C                 (LAYER I)
C   SHKI22    =   SECOND GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE OIL BANK
C                 (LAYER I)
C   SOR       =   RESIDUAL OIL SATURATION
C   SWAVG     =   AVERAGE WATER SATURATION BEHIND GELANT FRONT
C   SWCT1,SWCT2 =  INITIAL GUESSES OF THE CRITICAL WATER
C                 SATURATION
C   SWCT      =   CRITICAL WATER SATURATION
C   SW1F      =   WATER SATURATION AT THE WATER FRONT (FR=1,
C                 LAYER 1)
C   SW1I      =   INITIAL WATER SATURATION (LAYER 1)
C   SW1INF    =   WATER SATURATION AT THE INFLECTION POINT OF THE
C                 FRACTIONAL FLOW CURVE (LAYER 1)
C   SW1K      =   WATER SATURATION AT THE OIL BANK  (LAYER 1)
C   SW1PF     =   WATER SATURATION AT THE GELANT FRONT (LAYER 1)
C   SWIF      =   WATER SATURATION AT THE WATER FRONT (FR=1,
C                 LAYER I)
C   SWII      =   INITIAL WATER SATURATION (LAYER I)
C   SWIINF    =   WATER SATURATION AT THE INFLECTION POINT OF THE
C                 FRACTIONAL FLOW CURVE (LAYER I)
C   SWIK      =   WATER SATURATION AT THE OIL BANK  (LAYER I)
C   SWIPF     =   WATER SATURATION AT THE GELANT FRONT (LAYER I)
C   SWR       =   RESIDUAL WATER SATURATION
C   TD        =   DIMENSIONLESS TIME DEFINED AS FRACTION OF A PORE
```

```
C            VOLUME
C
C
C
C ******************** MAIN PROGRAM ******************************
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $        RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
     $          SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
      COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
     $          SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
     $          ANIFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
C
C ----INPUT NECESSARY INFORMATION----
      CALL INPUT
C
C ----CALCULATE DIMENSIONLESS RADII AND PSI VALUES----
      CALL CALCF(PSI1,PSII)
C
C ----CALCULATE NECESSARY CONSTANTS TO BE USED IN EVALUATING THE
C    LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION (LAYER I)----
      CALL CALCI(RI,RRI,SWAVGI,DFWI)
C
C ----CALCULATE NECESSARY CONSTANTS TO BE USED IN EVALUATING THE
C    RIGHT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION (LAYER 1)----
      CALL CALC1(R1,RI,RR1,SWAVG1,DFW1)
C
C ----CALCULATE THE RIGHT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL
C    EQUATION----
      CALL RHSF(R1,PSI1,SWAVG1,DFW1,RHS)
C
C ----USE SECANT METHOD TO SOLVE FOR THE DEGREE OF PENETRATION OF
C    GELANTS INTO LAYER I----
C
      EPS=1.0E-07
      ITER=1
      X=RDO
      XOLD=0.5
C
C --EVALUATE THE LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION--
   10 CALL ALHSF(X,RI,PSII,SWAVGI,DFWI,ALHS)
      FX=ALHS-RHS
      CALL ALHSF(XOLD,RI,PSII,SWAVGI,DFWI,ALHSO)
      FXOLD=ALHSO-RHS
C
      XNEW=X-FX*(X-XOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF(  (ABS(X-XNEW) .LT. EPS)
     $    .OR. (ITER.GT.30)    ) GO TO 20
      XOLD=X
      X=XNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
```

```
 20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
    PRINT *,'****************WARNING***************************'
    PRINT *,'   DP DOES NOT CONVERGE AFTER 30 ITERATIONS.'
    PRINT *,'****************WARNING***************************'
   ELSE
    ROOT=XNEW
   ENDIF
C ----IF THE GELANT FRONT OR OIL BANK IN LAYER I PROPAGATES BEYOND
C    (A) THE OUTLET OF THE CORE (COREFLOOD CASES) OR (B) RPM
C    (FIELD CASES), THE DEGREE OF PENETRATION WILL BE
C    RECALCULATED BY REPOSITIONING THE GELANT FRONT OR OIL BANK
C    IN LAYER I AT THE OUTLET OF THE CORE (COREFLOOD CASES) OR
C    RPM (FIELD CASES) AND SOLVING FOR THE POSITION OF THE GELANT
C    FRONT IN LAYER 1.----
   IF(IFLAG.EQ.1) THEN
    IF((ROOT.GT.1.0) .OR. ((ROOT*RI).GT.1.0)) THEN
     CALL RECALC(PSI1,PSII,R1,RI,RR1,RRI,SWAVG1,SWAVGI,
   $          DFW1,DFWI)
     STOP
    ENDIF
   ELSE
    IF((ROOT.GT.RDPM) .OR. ((ROOT*RI).GT.RDPM)) THEN
     CALL RECALC(PSI1,PSII,R1,RI,RR1,RRI,SWAVG1,SWAVGI,
   $          DFW1,DFWI)
     STOP
    ENDIF
   ENDIF
   DP=(SQRT(ROOT/RRI)-SQRT(RDO))/(SQRT(RD1/RR1)-SQRT(RDO))
C
C ----OUTPUT RESULTS OF THE CALCULATIONS----
C
   CALL OUTPUT(ITER,DP)
   STOP
   END
C **************** END OF MAIN PROGRAM **************************


   SUBROUTINE ALHSF(X,RI,PSII,SWAVGI,DFW,TALHS)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE
C THEORETICAL EQUATION. TRAPEZOIDAL RULE IS USED TO EVALUATE THE
C INTEGRATIONS NUMERICALLY.
C
   COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
  $        RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
   COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
  $         SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
   COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
  $          SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
  $          AINFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
   IF(ABS(SWII-(1.0-SOR)).LT.0.0001) THEN
C ----THERE IS AN ANALYTICAL SOLUTION AVAILABLE WHEN THE LAYER IS
```

```
C     WATERED-OUT.----
      TALHS=(1.0-SOR)/AKRWO*((FR-1.0)*((X*ALOG(X)-X)-
     $     (RDO*ALOG(RDO)-RDO))-(PSII+FR)*ALOG(RDO)*(X-RDO)+
     $     (PSII+1.0)*ALOG(RDPM)*(X-RDO))
      ELSE
      IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
C ----THERE IS NO OIL BANK WHEN FR=1.0.----
       CALL FWKRW(AMO,SWII,FKRI2)
       FKRI1=FKRI2
       IF(SWII.LT.SWIINF) THEN
        SWIPFC=SWIF
       ELSE
        IF(SWII.GT.SWIPF) THEN
         SWIPFC=SWII
        ELSE
         SWIPFC=SWII
        ENDIF
       ENDIF
      ELSE
C ----CALCULATE FW/KRW FOR BOTH OIL BANK AND INITIAL CONDITION
C     WHEN FR>1.0.----
       CALL FWKRW(AMO,SWIK,FKRI1)
       CALL FWKRW(AMO,SWII,FKRI2)
       SWIPFC=SWIPF
      ENDIF
C----USE TRAPEZOIDAL RULE TO EVALUATE THE INTEGRATIONS
C     NUMERICALLY.----
      H=(X-RDO)/NO
      SUM=0.0
      DO 200 I=1,NO-1
      T=RDO+I*H
      TD=T/DFW
      CALL TRAPEZ(RDO,T,SWIPFC,NI,AMOP,TD,AL1)
      IF(RI.LT.0.0001) THEN
       RIT=0.0
      ELSE
       RIT=ALOG(RI*T)
      ENDIF
      ALHS=(AL1*FR+FKRI1*(RIT-ALOG(T))+FKRI2*(ALOG(RDPM)
     $     -RIT+PSII*(ALOG(RDPM)-ALOG(RDO))))*SWAVGI
      SUM=SUM+ALHS
  200 CONTINUE
      TD=X/DFW
      CALL TRAPEZ(RDO,X,SWIPFC,NI,AMOP,TD,AL1)
      IF(RI.LT.0.0001) THEN
       RIX=0.0
       RIRDO=0.0
      ELSE
       RIX=ALOG(RI*X)
       RIRDO=ALOG(RI*RDO)
      ENDIF
      ALHSB=(AL1*FR+FKRI1*(RIX-ALOG(X))+FKRI2*(ALOG(RDPM)
```

```
$       -RIX+PSII*(ALOG(RDPM)-ALOG(RDO))))*SWAVGI
 ALHSA=(FKRI1*(RIRDO-ALOG(RDO))+FKRI2*(ALOG(RDPM)
$       -RIRDO+PSII*(ALOG(RDPM)-ALOG(RDO))))*SWAVGI
 TALHS=(H/2.0)*(ALHSB+2.0*SUM+ALHSA)
 ENDIF
 RETURN
 END

 SUBROUTINE CALCF(PSI1,PSII)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES DIMENSIONLESS CONSTANTS AND PSI
C VALUES.
C
 COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
$        RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
 COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
$        SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
 COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
$        SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
$        ANIFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
 IF( IFLAG.EQ.2 ) THEN
C ----CALCULATE DIMENSIONLESS CONSTANTS FOR FIELD CASES
C   (5-SPOT)----
  D=RE*3.14159**0.5
  RDO=(RO/D)**2.0
  RD1=(RP1/D)**2.0
  RDPM=(RPM/D)**2.0
 ELSE
C ----SET PSI VALUES TO ZERO AND CALCULATE THE DIMENSIONLESS
C   CONSTANTS FOR COREFLOOD CASES.----
  RDO=(RO/RE)**2.0
  RDPM=(RPM/RE)**2.0
  PSI1=0.0
  PSII=0.0
  RETURN
 ENDIF
C ----CALCULATE PSI VALUES FOR FIELD CASES (5-SPOT).----
 S1=(SW1I-SWR)/(1.0-SWR-SOR)
 SI=(SWII-SWR)/(1.0-SWR-SOR)
 AKRW1=AKRWO*S1**ANW
 AKRWI=AKRWO*SI**ANW
 AKRO1=AKROO*(1.0-S1)**ANO
 AKROI=AKROO*(1.0-SI)**ANO
 IF( AKRO1 .LT. 0.00001) THEN
  AM1=1.0
 ELSE
  AM1=AKRWO*AMUO/(AKRO1*AMUW)
 ENDIF
 IF( AKROI .LT. 0.00001) THEN
  AMI=1.0
 ELSE
  AMI=AKRWO*AMUO/(AKROI*AMUW)
```

```
      ENDIF
      PSI1=(ALOG(RE/RPM)+1.0/AM1*ALOG(RE/RO))/ALOG(RPM/RO)
      PSII=(ALOG(RE/RPM)+1.0/AMI*ALOG(RE/RO))/ALOG(RPM/RO)
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE CALCI(RI,RRI,SWAVGI,DFWI)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE CONSTANTS NECESSARY FOR
C EVALUATING THE LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION
C (LAYER I).
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $        RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
     $          SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
      COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
     $          SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
     $          AINFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
      FR=AMUP/AMUW
      AMO=AKRWO*AMUO/(AMUW*AKROO)
      AMOP=AKRWO*AMUO/(AMUP*AKROO)
      IF(ABS(FR-1.0).GT.0.0001) THEN
       CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHKI11,SHKI12,SWIPF)
       CALL SHOCK2(AMO,AMOP,SWIPF,SHKI21,SHKI22,SWIK)
       CALL SWLMT(AMO,AMOP,SWIPF,SWCT1,SWCT2,SWCT)
       IF(SWII.GT.SWCT) THEN
         PRINT *,'*************************WARNING*****************************'
         PRINT *,'******                                                  ******'
         PRINT *,'****** THE INITIAL SATURATION OF LAYER I IS             ******'
         PRINT *,'****** GREATER THAN THE CRITICAL SATURATION,            ******'
         PRINT *,'****** AN APPROXIMATE ESTIMATE OF THE DEGREE            ******'
         PRINT *,'****** OF PENETRATION IS ATTEMPTED BY                  ******'
         PRINT *,'****** RESETTING SWII TO (1-SOR).                      ******'
         PRINT *,'******                                                  ******'
         PRINT *,'*********************WARNING*********************************'
       SWII=1.0-SOR
       ENDIF
      ENDIF
      IF(ABS(SWII-(1.0-SOR)).LT.0.0001) THEN
       RRI=1.0
       RI=1.0
      ELSE
       IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
C ----CALCULATE THE FRONTAL SATURATIONS, SWAVG AND THE VELOCITY
C     RATIO OF OIL BANK AND GELANT FRONT WHEN FR=1.0.----
        RI=0.0
        CALL INF(AMO,AINFI1,AINFI2,SWIINF)
        IF( SWII .LT. SWIINF ) THEN
         CALL SHOCK(AMO,SWII,SHKI21,SHKI22,SWIF)
         CALL FW(AMO,SWIF,FWIF)
         CALL DFDS(AMO,SWIF,DFWI)
```

```
      CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHKI11,SHKI12,SWIPF)
      CALL FW(AMO,SWII,FWII)
      CALL FW(AMOP,SWIPF,FWPI)
      RRI=(FWIF-FWII)*SWIPF/(FWPI*(SWIF-SWII))
      SWAVGI=(SWIF+(1.0-FWIF)/DFWI)-SWR
     ELSE
      CALL FW(AMO,SWII,FWII)
      CALL DFDS(AMO,SWII,DFWI)
      CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHKI11,SHKI12,SWIPF)
      CALL FW(AMOP,SWIPF,FWPI)
      RRI=DFWI*SWIPF/FWPI
      IF(SWII.GT.SWIPF) THEN
       RRI=1.0
       SWAVGI=SWII+(1.0-FWII)/DFWI
      ELSE
       SWAVGI=(SWII+(1.0-FWII)/DFWI)-SWR
      ENDIF
     ENDIF
    ELSE
C ----CALCULATE THE FRONTAL SATURATIONS, SWAVG AND THE VELOCITY
C    RATIO OF OIL BANK AND GELANT FRONT WHEN FR>1.0.----
     RRI=1.0
     CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHKI11,SHKI12,SWIPF)
     CALL SHOCK2(AMO,AMOP,SWIPF,SHKI21,SHKI22,SWIK)
     CALL FW(AMO,SWIK,FWIK)
     CALL FW(AMO,SWII,FWII)
     CALL FW(AMOP,SWIPF,FWPI)
     RI=(FWIK-FWII)*SWIPF/(FWPI*(SWIK-SWII))
     CALL DFDS(AMOP,SWIPF,DFWI)
     SWAVGI=SWIPF+(1.0-FWPI)/DFWI
    ENDIF
   ENDIF
   RETURN
   END

   SUBROUTINE CALC1(R1,RI,RR1,SWAVG1,DFW1)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE CONSTANTS NECESSARY FOR
C EVALUATING THE RIGHT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION
C (LAYER 1).
C
   COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
  $        RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
   COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
  $         SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
   COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
  $          SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
  $          AINFI2, SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
   IF(ABS(FR-1.0).GT.0.0001) THEN
    CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHK11,SHK12,SW1PF)
    CALL SHOCK2(AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SHK21,SHK22,SW1K)
    CALL SWLMT(AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWCT1,SWCT2,SWCT)
```

```
      IF(SW1I.GT.SWCT) THEN
        PRINT *,'*************************WARNING*****************************'
        PRINT *,'******                                                  ******'
        PRINT *,'****** THE INITIAL SATURATION OF LAYER 1 IS             ******'
        PRINT *,'****** GREATER THAN THE CRITICAL SATURATION,            ******'
        PRINT *,'****** AN APPROXIMATE ESTIMATE OF THE DEGREE            ******'
        PRINT *,'****** OF PENETRATION IS ATTEMPTED BY                   ******'
        PRINT *,'****** RESETTING SWII TO (1-SOR).                       ******'
        PRINT *,'******                                                  ******'
        PRINT *,'*********************WARNING*********************************'
       SW1I=1.0-SOR
      ENDIF
     ENDIF
     IF(ABS(SW1I-(1.0-SOR)).LT.0.0001) THEN
      RR1=1.0
      R1=1.0
      IF( IFLAG.EQ.1 ) THEN
C ----CALCULATE THE FRONTAL SATURATIONS AND THE VELOCITY RATIO OF
C    OIL BANK AND GELANT FRONT WHEN THE LAYER IS WATERED-OUT
C    (COREFLOOD CASES).----
       IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
        RD1=1.0
        RETURN
       ENDIF
       RD1=1.0/RI
      ENDIF
     ELSE
      IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
C ----CALCULATE THE FRONTAL SATURATIONS, SWAVG AND THE VELOCITY
C    RATIO OF OIL BANK AND GELANT FRONT WHEN FR=1.0.----
      R1=0.0
      IF( IFLAG.EQ.1 ) THEN
C ----SET RD1=1.0 FOR COREFLOOD CASES WHEN FR=1.0.----
       RD1=1.0
      ENDIF
     CALL INF(AMO,AINF1,AINF2,SW1INF)
      IF( SW1I .LT. SW1INF ) THEN
       CALL SHOCK(AMO,SW1I,SHK21,SHK22,SW1F)
       CALL FW(AMO,SW1F,FW1F)
       CALL DFDS(AMO,SW1F,DFW1)
       CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHK11,SHK12,SW1PF)
       CALL FW(AMO,SW1I,FW1I)
       CALL FW(AMOP,SW1PF,FWP1)
       RR1=(FW1F-FW1I)*SW1PF/(FWP1*(SW1F-SW1I))
       SWAVG1=(SW1F+(1.0-FW1F)/DFW1)-SWR
      ELSE
       CALL FW(AMO,SW1I,FW1I)
       CALL DFDS(AMO,SW1I,DFW1)
       CALL FWKRW(AMO,SW1I,FKR1)
       CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHK11,SHK12,SW1PF)
       CALL FW(AMOP,SW1PF,FWP1)
       RR1=DFW1*SW1PF/FWP1
```

```
      IF(SW1I.GT.SW1PF) THEN
       RR1=1.0
       SWAVG1=SW1I+(1.0-FW1I)/DFW1
      ELSE
       SWAVG1=(SW1I+(1.0-FW1I)/DFW1)-SWR
      ENDIF
     ENDIF
    ELSE
C ----CALCULATE THE FRONTAL SATURATIONS, SWAVG AND THE VELOCITY
C    RATIO OF OIL BANK AND GELANT FRONT WHEN FR>1.0.----
     RR1=1.0
     CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHK11,SHK12,SW1PF)
     CALL SHOCK2(AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SHK21,SHK22,SW1K)
     CALL FW(AMO,SW1K,FW1K)
     CALL FW(AMO,SW1I,FW1I)
     CALL FW(AMOP,SW1PF,FWP1)
     R1=(FW1K-FW1I)*SW1PF/(FWP1*(SW1K-SW1I))
      IF( IFLAG.EQ.1 ) THEN
       RD1=1.0/R1
      ENDIF
     CALL DFDS(AMOP,SW1PF,DFW1)
     SWAVG1=SW1PF+(1.0-FWP1)/DFW1
    ENDIF
   ENDIF
   RETURN
   END

   SUBROUTINE DFDS(XMO,XSW,DFW)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE VALUE OF FIRST DERIVATIVE OF A
C WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW FUNCTION.
C
   COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
  $        RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
   S=(XSW-SWR)/(1.0-SWR-SOR)
   DFW=(ANW*XMO*S**(ANW-1)*(1.0-S)**ANO+ANO*XMO*S**ANW*
  $   (1.0-S)**(ANO-1))/((XMO*S**ANW+(1.0-S)**ANO)**2.0*
  $   (1.0-SWR-SOR))
   RETURN
   END

   SUBROUTINE D2FDS2(XMO,XSW,DDFW)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE VALUE OF SECOND DERIVATIVE OF A
C WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW FUNCTION.
C
   COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
  $        RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
   S=(XSW-SWR)/(1.0-SWR-SOR)
   DDFW=((XMO*S**ANW+(1.0-S)**ANO)*(ANW*(ANW-1)*XMO*
  $    S**(ANW-2)*(1.0-S)**ANO-ANO*(ANO-1)*XMO*S**ANW*
  $    (1.0-S)**(ANO-2))-2*(ANW*XMO*S**(ANW-1)*(1.0-S)**ANO+
```

```
     $    ANO*XMO*S**ANW*(1.0-S)**(ANO-1))*(ANW*XMO*S**(ANW-1)
     $    -ANO*(1.0-S)**(ANO-1)))/((XMO*S**ANW+(1.0-S)**ANO)
     $    **3.0*(1.0-SWR-SOR)**2.0)
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE FW(XMO,XSW,F)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $         RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      S=(XSW-SWR)/(1.0-SWR-SOR)
      F=XMO*S**ANW/(XMO*S**ANW+(1.0-S)**ANO)
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE FWKRW(XMO,XSW,FKR)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE FUNCTION FW/AKRW.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $         RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      S=(XSW-SWR)/(1.0-SWR-SOR)
      FKR=XMO/((XMO*S**ANW+(1.0-S)**ANO)*AKRWO)
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE INF(XMO,S1,S2,RT)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES SECANT METHOD TO CALCULATE THE WATER
C SATURATION AT THE INFLECTION POINT OF A WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW
C CURVE.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $         RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      EPS=0.00001
      ITER=1
      SOLD=S2
      S=S1
   10 CALL D2FDS2(XMO,S,FX)
      CALL D2FDS2(XMO,SOLD,FXOLD)
      SNEW=S-FX*(S-SOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF(  (ABS(S-SNEW).LT.EPS)
     $    .OR. (ITER.GT.30)  ) GO TO 20
      SOLD=S
      S=SNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
      PRINT *,'  SWINF DOES NOT CONVERGE.  '
      STOP
```

```
      ELSE
       RT=SNEW
      ENDIF
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE INPUT
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE READS THE NECESSARY INFORMATION FOR SUBSEQUENT
C CALCULATIONS.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $        RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
     $         SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
      COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
     $          SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
     $          AINFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
      PRINT *, 'INPUT SOR,SWR'
      READ(*,*) SOR,SWR
      PRINT *, 'INPUT SW1I,SWII'
      READ(*,*) SW1I,SWII
      PRINT *, 'INPUT KRWO,KROO'
      READ(*,*) AKRWO,AKROO
      PRINT *, 'INPUT ANW,ANO'
      READ(*,*) ANW,ANO
      PRINT *, 'INPUT PHI1,PHII'
      READ(*,*) PHI1,PHII
      PRINT *, 'INPUT K1,KI'
      READ(*,*) AK1,AKI
      PRINT *, 'INPUT MUW,MUO,MUP'
      READ(*,*) AMUW,AMUO,AMUP
      PRINT *, 'INPUT IFLAG; IFLAG=1--COREFLOOD, IFLAG=2--5-SPOT'
      READ(*,*) IFLAG
      IF(IFLAG.EQ.2) THEN
       PRINT *, 'INPUT RO,RP1,RPM,RE'
       READ(*,*) RO,RP1,RPM,RE
      ELSE
       PRINT *, 'INPUT RO,RE'
       READ(*,*) RO,RE
C ----LET RPM=RE FOR COREFLOOD CASES.----
       RPM=RE
      ENDIF
      PRINT *, 'INPUT SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12'
      READ(*,*) SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12
      PRINT *, 'INPUT SHK21,SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22'
      READ(*,*) SHK21,SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22
      PRINT *, 'INPUT AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,AINFI2'
      READ(*,*) AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,AINFI2
      PRINT *, 'INPUT SWCT1,SWCT2'
      READ(*,*) SWCT1,SWCT2
      PRINT *, 'INPUT NO. OF INTERVALS'
```

```
      READ(*,*) NI,NO
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE OUTPUT(ITER,ROOT)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE PRINTS RESULTS OF THE CALCULATIONS.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $        RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
     $          SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
      WRITE(*,100)
      WRITE(*,101) SOR,SWR
      WRITE(*,102) SW1I,SWII
      WRITE(*,103) AKRWO,AKROO
      WRITE(*,104) ANW,ANO
      WRITE(*,105) PHI1,PHII
      WRITE(*,106) AK1,AKI
      WRITE(*,107) AMUW,AMUO,AMUP
      WRITE(*,108)
      WRITE(*,109) SW1PF,SWIPF
      WRITE(*,110) SW1K,SWIK
      WRITE(*,111) SW1F,SWIF
      WRITE(*,112) SW1INF,SWIINF
      WRITE(*,113) SWCT
      WRITE(*,114) ITER
      WRITE(*,115) ROOT
  100 FORMAT(2X,'          ***** INPUT DATA *****'/)
  101 FORMAT(2X,'SOR   = ',F10.5,2X,'SWR   = ',F10.5)
  102 FORMAT(2X,'SW1I  = ',F10.5,2X,'SWII  = ',F10.5)
  103 FORMAT(2X,'KRWO  = ',F10.5,2X,'KROO  = ',F10.5)
  104 FORMAT(2X,'ANW   = ',F10.5,2X,'ANO   = ',F10.5)
  105 FORMAT(2X,'PHI1  = ',F10.5,2X,'PHII  = ',F10.5)
  106 FORMAT(2X,'K1    = ',F10.5,2X,'KI    = ',F10.5)
  107 FORMAT(2X,'MUW   = ',F10.5,2X,'MUO   = ',F10.5,2X,
     $     'MUP = ',F10.5)
  108 FORMAT(2X,'          ************************'//)
  109 FORMAT(2X,'SW1PF  = ',F10.5,2X,'SWIPF   = ',F10.5/)
  110 FORMAT(2X,'SW1K   = ',F10.5,2X,'SWIK    = ',F10.5/)
  111 FORMAT(2X,'SW1F   = ',F10.5,2X,'SWIF    = ',F10.5/)
  112 FORMAT(2X,'SW1INF = ',F10.5,2X,'SWIINF = ',F10.5/)
  113 FORMAT(2X,'SWCT   = ',F10.5/)
  114 FORMAT(2X,'AFTER ',I3,' ITERATIONS'/)
  115 FORMAT(2X,'DP     = ',F10.5)
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE RECALC(PSI1,PSII,R1,RI,RR1,RRI,SWAVG1,SWAVGI,
     $              DFW1,DFWI)
C
C    THIS SUBROUTINE RECALCULATES THE DEGREE OF PENETRATION
```

```
C     WHEN THE GELANT FRONT OR THE OIL BANK IN LAYER I PROPAGATES
C     BEYOND THE OUTLET OF THE CORE (COREFLOOD CASES) OR RPM
C     (FIELD CASES) BY REPOSITIONING THE GELANT FRONT OR THE OIL
C     BANK IN LAYER I AT THE OUTLET OF THE CORE OR RPM AND SOLVING
C     FOR THE POSITION OF THE GELANT FRONT IN LAYER 1.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $         RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
     $          SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
      COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
     $           SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
     $           AINFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
C ----REPOSITION THE GELANT FRONT OR THE OIL BANK IN LAYER I----
      IF(IFLAG.EQ.1) THEN
       IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
        RDI=1.0
       ELSE
        RDI=1.0/RI
       ENDIF
      ELSE
       IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
        RDI=RDPM
       ELSE
        RDI=RDPM/RI
       ENDIF
      ENDIF
C ----CALCULATE THE LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL
C     EQUAITON (LAYER I)----
      CALL ALHSF(RDI,RI,PSII,SWAVGI,DFWI,ALHS)
C ----USE SECANT METHOD TO SOLVE FOR THE DEGREE OF PENETRATION
C     OF GELANTS INTO LAYER 1----
      EPS=1.0E-07
      ITER=1
      X=0.0001
      XOLD=0.5
C ----EVALUATE THE RIGHT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL
C     EQUATION (LAYER 1)----
   10 RD1=X
      CALL RHSF(R1,PSI1,SWAVG1,DFW1,RHS)
      FX=ALHS-RHS
      RD1=XOLD
      CALL RHSF(R1,PSI1,SWAVG1,DFW1,RHSO)
      FXOLD=ALHS-RHSO
      XNEW=X-FX*(X-XOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF(  (ABS(X-XNEW) .LT. EPS)
     $     .OR. (ITER.GT.30)    ) GO TO 20
      XOLD=X
      X=XNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
```

```
      PRINT *,'****************WARNING***************************'
      PRINT *,'    DP DOES NOT CONVERGE AFTER 30 ITERATIONS.'
      PRINT *,'****************WARNING***************************'
     ELSE
      ROOT=XNEW
     ENDIF
     DP=(SQRT(RDI/RRI)-SQRT(RDO))/(SQRT(ROOT/RR1)-SQRT(RDO))
C ----OUTPUT RESULTS OF THE CALCULATIONS----
     CALL OUTPUT(ITER,DP)
     RETURN
     END

     SUBROUTINE RHSF(R1,PSI1,SWAVG1,DFW,RHS)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE RIGHT-HAND-SIDE OF THE
C THEORETICAL EQUATION. TRAPEZOIDAL RULE IS USED TO EVALUATE THE
C INTEGRATIONS NUMERICALLY.
C
     COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
    $         RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
     COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
    $          SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
     COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
    $           SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
    $           AINFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
     IF(ABS(SW1I-(1.0-SOR)).LT.0.0001) THEN
C ----THERE IS AN ANALYTICAL SOLUTION AVAILABLE WHEN THE LAYER IS
C    WATERED-OUT.----
      RHSC=PHI1*AKI*(1.0-SOR)/(PHII*AK1*AKRWO)
      RHS=RHSC*((FR-1.0)*((RD1*ALOG(RD1)-RD1)-
    $    (RDO*ALOG(RDO)-RDO))-(PSI1+FR)*ALOG(RDO)*(RD1-RDO)+
    $    (PSI1+1.0)*ALOG(RDPM)*(RD1-RDO))
     ELSE
      RHSC=PHI1*AKI*SWAVG1/(PHII*AK1)
      IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
C ----THERE IS NO OIL BANK WHEN FR=1.0.----
       CALL FWKRW(AMO,SW1I,FKR12)
       FKR11=FKR12
       IF(SW1I.LT.SW1INF) THEN
        SW1PFC=SW1F
       ELSE
        IF(SW1I.GT.SW1PF) THEN
         SW1PFC=SW1I
        ELSE
         SW1PFC=SW1I
        ENDIF
       ENDIF
      ELSE
C ----CALCULATE FW/KRW FOR BOTH OIL BANK AND INITIAL CONDITION
C    WHEN FR>1.0.----
       CALL FWKRW(AMO,SW1K,FKR11)
       CALL FWKRW(AMO,SW1I,FKR12)
```

```
      SW1PFC=SW1PF
      ENDIF
C----USE TRAPEZOIDAL RULE TO EVALUATE THE INTEGRATIONS
C   NUMERICALLY.----
      H=(RD1-RDO)/NO
      SUM=0.0
      DO 100 I=1,NO-1
      T=RDO+I*H
      TD=T/DFW
      CALL TRAPEZ(RDO,T,SW1PFC,NI,AMOP,TD,AR1)
      IF(R1.LT.0.0001) THEN
       R1T=0.0
      ELSE
       R1T=ALOG(R1*T)
      ENDIF
      RHS=(AR1*FR+FKR11*(R1T-ALOG(T))+FKR12*(ALOG(RDPM)
     $    -R1T+PSI1*(ALOG(RDPM)-ALOG(RDO))))*RHSC
      SUM=SUM+RHS
  100 CONTINUE
      TD=RD1/DFW
      CALL TRAPEZ(RDO,RD1,SW1PFC,NI,AMOP,TD,AR1)
      IF(R1.LT.0.0001) THEN
       R1RD1=0.0
       R1RDO=0.0
      ELSE
       R1RD1=ALOG(R1*RD1)
       R1RDO=ALOG(R1*RDO)
      ENDIF
      RHSB=(AR1*FR+FKR11*(R1RD1-ALOG(RD1))+FKR12*(ALOG(RDPM)
     $    -R1RD1+PSI1*(ALOG(RDPM)-ALOG(RDO))))*RHSC
      RHSA=(FKR11*(R1RDO-ALOG(RDO))+FKR12*(ALOG(RDPM)
     $    -R1RDO+PSI1*(ALOG(RDPM)-ALOG(RDO))))*RHSC
      RHS=(H/2.0)*(RHSB+2.0*SUM+RHSA)
      ENDIF
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE SECANT(XMO,TD,X,S1,S2,RT)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES SECANT METHOD TO SOLVE FOR THE WATER
C SATURATION PROFILE.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $         RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      EPS=0.0001
      ITER=1
      SOLD=S2
      S=S1
   10 CALL XDS(S,XMO,X,TD,FX)
      CALL XDS(SOLD,XMO,X,TD,FXOLD)
      SNEW=S-FX*(S-SOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF( (ABS(S-SNEW).LT.EPS)
```

```
     $     .OR. (ITER.GT.100)  ) GO TO 20
      SOLD=S
      S=SNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.100) THEN
       PRINT *,' SECANT METHOD DOES NOT CONVERGE.'
       STOP
      ELSE
       RT=SNEW*(1.0-SWR-SOR)+SWR
      ENDIF
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE SHOCK(XMO,SWI,S1,S2,XSWPF)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES SECANT METHOD TO CALCULATES THE FRONTAL
C SATURATION OF WATER WHEN FR=1.0.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $          RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      EPS=0.000001
      ITER=1
      SWOLD=S2
      SW=S1
      CALL FW(XMO,SWI,XFWI)
   10 CALL DFDS(XMO,SW,DFW)
      CALL FW(XMO,SW,XFW)
      FX=DFW*(SW-SWI)-(XFW-XFWI)
      CALL DFDS(XMO,SWOLD,DFW)
      CALL FW(XMO,SWOLD,XFW)
      FXOLD=DFW*(SWOLD-SWI)-(XFW-XFWI)
      SWNEW=SW-FX*(SW-SWOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF(  (ABS(SW-SWNEW).LT.EPS)
     $     .OR. (ITER.GT.30)  ) GO TO 20
      SWOLD=SW
      SW=SWNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
       PRINT *,' SHOCK DOES NOT CONVERGE.'
       STOP
      ELSE
       XSWPF=SWNEW
      ENDIF
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE SHOCK1(XMOP,S1,S2,XSWPF)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES SECANT METHOD TO CALCULATE THE FRONTAL
C SATURATIONS OF GELANTS.
```

```
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $          RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      EPS=0.000001
      ITER=1
      SWOLD=S2
      SW=S1
   10 CALL DFDS(XMOP,SW,DFW)
      CALL FW(XMOP,SW,XFW)
      FX=DFW*SW-XFW
      CALL DFDS(XMOP,SWOLD,DFW)
      CALL FW(XMOP,SWOLD,XFW)
      FXOLD=DFW*SWOLD-XFW
      SWNEW=SW-FX*(SW-SWOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF( (ABS(SW-SWNEW).LT.EPS)
     $    .OR. (ITER.GT.30) ) GO TO 20
      SWOLD=SW
      SW=SWNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
       PRINT *,' SHOCK1 DOES NOT CONVERGE'
       STOP
      ELSE
       XSWPF=SWNEW
      ENDIF
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE SHOCK2(XMO,XMOP,XSWPF,S1,S2,XSWK)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES SECANT METHOD TO CALCULATE THE FRONTAL
C SATURATIONS OF OIL BANKS.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $          RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      CALL FW(XMOP,XSWPF,FWP)
      FWPS=FWP/XSWPF
      EPS=0.00001
      ITER=1
      SWOLD=S2
      SW=S1
   10 CALL FW(XMO,SW,XFW)
      FX=XFW/SW-FWPS
      CALL FW(XMO,SWOLD,XFW)
      FXOLD=XFW/SWOLD-FWPS
      SWNEW=SW-FX*(SW-SWOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF( (ABS(SW-SWNEW).LT.EPS)
     $    .OR. (ITER.GT.30) ) GO TO 20
      SWOLD=SW
      SW=SWNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
```

```
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
       PRINT *,' SHOCK2 DOES NOT CONVERGE.'
       STOP
      ELSE
       XSWK=SWNEW
      ENDIF
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE TRAPEZ(A,B,SWPF,N,XMO,TD,R)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES TRAPEZOIDAL RULE TO EVALUATE INTEGRATIONS
C NUMERICALLY.
C
      DOUBLE PRECISION SUM
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $        RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      H=(ALOG(B)-ALOG(A))/N
      SUM=0.0
      DO 10 I=1,N-1
      X=ALOG(A)+I*H
      XX=EXP(X)
C
C ----SOLVE FOR SATURATION PROFILE USING SECANT METHOD----
      CALL SECANT(XMO,TD,XX,SWPF,1.0,SW)
C
C ----CALCULATE FW/AKRW AT THE SW OBTAINED FROM PREVIOUS STEP----
      CALL FWKRW(XMO,SW,F)
C
      SUM=SUM+F
   10 CONTINUE
C
C ----SOLVE FOR SATURATION PROFILE USING SECANT METHOD----
      CALL SECANT(XMO,TD,A,SWPF,1.0,SW)
C
C ----CALCULATE FW/AKRW AT THE SW OBTAINED FROM PREVIOUS STEP----
      CALL FWKRW(XMO,SW,FA)
C
C ----SOLVE FOR SATURATION PROFILE USING SECANT METHOD----
      CALL SECANT(XMO,TD,B,SWPF,1.0,SW)
C
C ----CALCULATE FW/AKRW AT THE SW OBTAINED FROM PREVIOUS STEP----
      CALL FWKRW(XMO,SW,FB)
      R=(H/2)*(FA+2.0*SUM+FB)
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE SWLMT(XMO,XMOP,XSWPF,S1,S2,XSWCT)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES SECANT METHOD TO EVALUATE THE CRITICAL
C WATER SATURATION.
```

```
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $          RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      EPS=0.00001
      ITER=1
      SWOLD=S2
      SW=S1
      CALL FW(XMOP,XSWPF,XFWP)
   10 CALL FW(XMO,SW,XFW)
      FX=XFW/SW-XFWP/XSWPF
      CALL FW(XMO,SWOLD,XFW)
      FXOLD=XFW/SWOLD-XFWP/XSWPF
      SWNEW=SW-FX*(SW-SWOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF( (ABS(SW-SWNEW).LT.EPS)
     $    .OR. (ITER.GT.30) ) GO TO 20
      SWOLD=SW
      SW=SWNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
       PRINT *,' SWCT DOES NOT CONVERGE.'
       STOP
      ELSE
       XSWCT=SWNEW
      ENDIF
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE XDS(S,XMO,X,TD,FS)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE FUNCTION FX=XD-DFW/DSW*TD FOR
C SUBROUTINE SECANT.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,RDO,RD1,
     $          RDPM,RE,RO,RP1,RPM,ANO,ANW
      FS=(ANW*XMO*S**(ANW-1)*(1-S)**ANO+ANO*XMO*S**ANW*
     $   (1.0-S)**(ANO-1))*TD-X*(XMO*S**ANW+(1.0-S)**ANO)**2.0*
     $   (1.0-SWR-SOR)
      RETURN
      END
```

APPENDIX G

FORTRAN CODING FOR THEORETICAL MODEL: LINEAR FLOW

```
      PROGRAM LINEAR
C
C PROGRAM INFORMATION:
C
C   BASED UPON THE THEORETICAL MODEL DEVELOPED IN THIS PAPER, A
C   FORTRAN PROGRAM WAS DEVELOPED TO DETERMINE THE DEGREE OF
C   PENETRATION OF GELANTS INTO OIL-PRODUCTIVE STRATA AS WELL AS
C   INTO WATER-SOURCE ZONES. THE TECHNIQUES USED IN THIS PROGRAM
C   TO CALCULATE FRONTAL SATURATIONS, SATURATION PROFILES, AND
C   AVERAGE SATURATIONS CAN BE FOUND IN REFS. 103, 104, AND 105.
C
C PROGRAM LIMITATIONS:
C   IN ADDITION TO THE ASSUMPTIONS MADE IN DEVELOPING THE
C   THEORETICAL MODEL, THE LIMITATIONS OF THIS FORTRAN PROGRAM
C   ARE LISTED BELOW:
C    1. THIS PROGRAM DEALS WITH LINEAR CASES ONLY.
C    2. IT IS ASSUMED IN THIS PROGRAM THAT, IN ANY LAYER, THE
C       OIL BANK (FR>1) OR THE WATER FRONT (FR=1) DOESN'T
C       PROPAGATE BEYOND (A) THE OUTLET OF THE CORE (COREFLOOD
C       CASES) OR (B) RPM (FIELD CASES).
C    3. IT IS ASSUMED IN THIS PROGRAM THAT THE FIELD PATTERN IS
C       5-SPOT.
C    4. SHOULD THE INITIAL SATURATION IN ANY GIVEN LAYER EXCEED
C       THE CRITICAL SATURATION (SWCT) (WHERE THE VELOCITY OF
C       OIL BANK EQUALS THAT OF GELANT FRONT), THIS PROGRAM
C       WOULD ATTEMPT AN APPROXIMATION BY RESETTING THE INITIAL
C       SATURATION TO (1-SOR).
C
C DEFINITION OF VARIABLES:
C
C   AINF1    =   FIRST GUESS OF THE WATER SATURATION AT THE
C                INFLECTION POINT OF THE FRACTIONAL FLOW CURVE
C                (LAYER 1)
C   AINF2    =   SECOND GUESS OF THE WATER SATURATION AT THE
C                INFLECTION POINT OF THE FRACTIONAL FLOW CURVE
C                (LAYER 1)
C   AINFI1   =   FIRST GUESS OF THE WATER SATURATION AT THE
C                INFLECTION POINT OF THE FRACTIONAL FLOW CURVE
C                (LAYER I)
C   AINFI2   =   SECOND GUESS OF THE WATER SATURATION AT THE
C                INFLECTION POINT OF THE FRACTIONAL FLOW CURVE
C                (LAYER I)
C   AK       =   PERMEABILITY, MD
C   AKRO     =   OIL RELATIVE PERMEABILITY
C   AKROO    =   END-POINT OIL RELATIVE PERMEABILITY
C   AKRW     =   WATER RELATIVE PERMEABILITY
C   AKRWO    =   END-POINT WATER RELATIVE PERMEABILITY
C   AL1      =   THE FIRST INTEGRATION TERM (GELANT FRONT) ON THE
C                LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION
C                (LAYER I)
C   ALHS     =   LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION
C   AMO      =   WATER-OIL MOBILITY
```

```
C   AMOP    =   GELANT-OIL MOBILITY
C   AMUO    =   OIL VISCOSITY, CP
C   AMUP    =   GELANT VISCOSITY, CP
C   AMUW    =   WATER VISCOSITY, CP
C   ANO     =   EXPONENT FOR OIL RELATIVE PERMEABILLITY EQUATION
C   ANW     =   EXPONENT FOR WATER RELATIVE PERMEABILITY EQUATION
C   AR1     =   THE FIRST INTEGRATION TERM (GELANT FRONT) ON THE
C               RIGHT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION
C               (LAYER 1)
C   DFW     =   FIRST DERIVATIVE OF THE WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW
C               FUNCTION (FW)
C   DDFW    =   SECOND DERIVATIVE OF THE WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW
C               FUNCTION (FW)
C   DP      =   DEGREE OF PENETRATION OF GELANTS (AS DEFINED IN
C               THE PAPER)
C   EPS     =   CONVERGENCE CRITERIA
C   FKR11   =   FW/AKRW AT SW1K (OIL BANK IN LAYER 1)
C   FKR12   =   FW/AKRW AT SW1I (INITIAL CONDITION IN LAYER 1)
C   FKRI1   =   FW/AKRW AT SWIK (OIL BANK IN LAYER I)
C   FKRI2   =   FW/AKRW AT SWII (INITIAL CONDITION IN LAYER I)
C   FR      =   RESISTANCE FACTOR (BRINE MOBILITY DIVIDED BY
C               MOBILITY OF THE GELANT)
C   FW      =   WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW FUNCTION
C   FW1I    =   WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW AT INITIAL WATER
C               SATURATION IN LAYER 1
C   FW1K    =   WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW AT OIL BANK FRONT IN
C               LAYER 1
C   FWII    =   WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW AT INITIAL WATER
C               SATURATION IN LAYER I
C   FWIK    =   WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW AT OIL BANK FRONT IN
C               LAYER I
C   FWP     =   WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW AT GELANT FRONT
C   ITER    =   COUNTER OF THE NUMBER OF ITERATIONS
C   NI      =   NUMBER OF INTERVALS USED IN SUBROUTINE TRAPEZ TO
C               EVALUATE THE INSIDE INTEGRATION TERMS
C               NUMERICALLY
C   NO      =   NUMBER OF INTERVALS USED IN EVALUATING THE
C               OUTSIDE INTEGRATIONS
C   PHI1    =   POROSITY IN LAYER 1
C   PHII    =   POROSITY IN LAYER I
C   PSI     =   PRESSURE DROP BETWEEN RPM AND THE INJECTION WELL
C               DIVIDED BY THE PRESSURE DROP BETWEEN THE
C               PRODUCTION WELL AND RPM JUST PRIOR TO GELANT
C               INJECTION
C   R1      =   THE VELOCITY RATIO OF GELANT FRONT AND OIL BANK
C               IN LAYER 1
C   RE      =   DRAINAGE RADIUS, FT
C   RI      =   THE VELOCITY RATIO OF GELANT FRONT AND OIL BANK
C               IN LAYER I
C   RO      =   WELLBORE RADIUS, FT
C   RPM     =   A REFERENCE DISTANCE FROM THE WELLBORE BEYOND
C               WHICH THE GEL TREATMENT HAS NO EFFECT ON FLUID
```

```
C                    SATURATION, FT
C   RR1        =     THE VELOCITY RATIO OF GELANT FRONT AND WATER
C                    FRONT IN LAYER 1
C   RRI        =     THE VELOCITY RATIO OF GELANT FRONT AND WATER
C                    FRONT IN LAYER I
C   SHK11      =     FIRST GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE GELANT
C                    FRONT (LAYER 1)
C   SHK12      =     SECOND GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE GELANT
C                    FRONT (LAYER 1)
C   SHKI11     =     FIRST GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE GELANT
C                    FRONT (LAYER I)
C   SHKI12     =     SECOND GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE GELANT
C                    FRONT (LAYER I)
C   SHK21      =     FIRST GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE OIL BANK
C                    (LAYER 1)
C   SHK22      =     SECOND GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE OIL BANK
C                    (LAYER 1)
C   SHKI21     =     FIRST GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE OIL BANK
C                    (LAYER I)
C   SHKI22     =     SECOND GUESS OF THE SATURATION AT THE OIL BANK
C                    (LAYER I)
C   SOR        =     RESIDUAL OIL SATURATION
C   SWAVG      =     AVERAGE WATER SATURATION BEHIND GELANT FRONT
C   SWCT1,SWCT2 =    INITIAL GUESSES OF THE CRITICAL WATER
C                    SATURATION
C   SWCT       =     CRITICAL WATER SATURATION
C   SW1F       =     WATER SATURATION AT THE WATER FRONT (FR=1,
C                    LAYER 1)
C   SW1I       =     INITIAL WATER SATURATION (LAYER 1)
C   SW1INF     =     WATER SATURATION AT THE INFLECTION POINT OF THE
C                    FRACTIONAL FLOW CURVE (LAYER 1)
C   SW1K       =     WATER SATURATION AT THE OIL BANK  (LAYER 1)
C   SW1PF      =     WATER SATURATION AT THE GELANT FRONT (LAYER 1)
C   SWIF       =     WATER SATURATION AT THE WATER FRONT (FR=1,
C                    LAYER I)
C   SWII       =     INITIAL WATER SATURATION (LAYER I)
C   SWIINF     =     WATER SATURATION AT THE INFLECTION POINT OF THE
C                    FRACTIONAL FLOW CURVE (LAYER I)
C   SWIK       =     WATER SATURATION AT THE OIL BANK  (LAYER I)
C   SWIPF      =     WATER SATURATION AT THE GELANT FRONT (LAYER I)
C   SWR        =     RESIDUAL WATER SATURATION
C   TD         =     DIMENSIONLESS TIME DEFINED AS FRACTION OF A PORE
C                    VOLUME
C   XD1        =     DIMENSIONLESS DISTANCE OF GELANT PENETRATION INTO
C                    LAYER 1
C   XDPM       =     A DIMENSIONLESS REFERENCE DISTANCE FROM THE
C                    WELLBORE OR FROM A FRACTURE SURFACE BEYOND WHICH
C                    THE GEL TREATMENT HAS NO EFFECT ON FLUID SATURATION
C   XF         =     FRACTURE LENGTH, FT
C   XLT        =     CORE LENGTH, FT
C   XP1        =     DISTANCE OF GELANT PENETRATION INTO LAYER 1, FT
C   XPM        =     A REFERENCE DISTANCE FROM THE WELLBORE OR FROM A
```

```
C                    FRACTURE SURFACE BEYOND WHICH THE GEL TREATMENT HAS
C                    NO EFFECT ON FLUID SATURATION, FT
C
C
C
C ******************** MAIN PROGRAM ******************************
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
     $       XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
      COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
     $         SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
      COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
     $          SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
     $          ANIFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
C
C ----INPUT NECESSARY INFORMATION----
      CALL INPUT
C
C ----CALCULATE DIMENSIONLESS RADII AND PSI VALUES----
      CALL CALCF(PSI1,PSII)
C
C ----CALCULATE NECESSARY CONSTANTS TO BE USED IN EVALUATING THE
C    LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION (LAYER I)----
      CALL CALCI(RI,RRI,SWAVGI,DFWI)
C
C ----CALCULATE NECESSARY CONSTANTS TO BE USED IN EVALUATING THE
C    RIGHT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION (LAYER 1)----
      CALL CALC1(R1,RI,RR1,SWAVG1,DFW1)
C
C ----CALCULATE THE RIGHT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL
C    EQUATION----
      CALL RHSF(R1,PSI1,SWAVG1,DFW1,RHS)
C
C ----USE SECANT METHOD TO SOLVE FOR THE DEGREE OF PENETRATION OF
C    GELANTS INTO LAYER I----
C
      EPS=1.0E-07
      ITER=1
      X=0.0001
      XOLD=0.5
C
C --EVALUATE THE LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION--
   10 CALL ALHSF(X,RI,PSII,SWAVGI,DFWI,ALHS)
      FX=ALHS-RHS
      CALL ALHSF(XOLD,RI,PSII,SWAVGI,DFWI,ALHSO)
      FXOLD=ALHSO-RHS
C
      XNEW=X-FX*(X-XOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF( (ABS(X-XNEW) .LT. EPS)
     $    .OR. (ITER.GT.30)    ) GO TO 20
      XOLD=X
      X=XNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
```

```
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
      PRINT *,'****************WARNING****************************'
      PRINT *,'    DP DOES NOT CONVERGE AFTER 30 ITERATIONS.'
      PRINT *,'****************WARNING****************************'
     ELSE
      ROOT=XNEW
     ENDIF
C ----IF THE GELANT FRONT OR OIL BANK IN LAYER I PROPAGATES BEYOND
C    (A) THE OUTLET OF THE CORE (COREFLOOD CASES) OR (B) RPM
C    (FIELD CASES), THE DEGREE OF PENETRATION WILL BE
C    RECALCULATED BY REPOSITIONING THE GELANT FRONT OR OIL BANK
C    IN LAYER I AT THE OUTLET OF THE CORE (COREFLOOD CASES) OR
C    RPM (FIELD CASES) AND SOLVING FOR THE POSITION OF THE GELANT
C    FRONT IN LAYER 1.----
     IF(IFLAG.EQ.1) THEN
      IF((ROOT.GT.1.0) .OR. ((ROOT*RI).GT.1.0)) THEN
       CALL RECALC(PSI1,PSII,R1,RI,RR1,RRI,SWAVG1,SWAVGI,
     $          DFW1,DFWI)
       STOP
      ENDIF
     ELSE
      IF((ROOT.GT.XDPM) .OR. ((ROOT*RI).GT.XDPM)) THEN
       CALL RECALC(PSI1,PSII,R1,RI,RR1,RRI,SWAVG1,SWAVGI,
     $          DFW1,DFWI)
       STOP
      ENDIF
     ENDIF
     DP=(ROOT/RRI)/(XD1/RR1)
C
C ----OUTPUT RESULTS OF THE CALCULATIONS----
C
     CALL OUTPUT(ITER,DP)
     STOP
     END
C ***************** END OF MAIN PROGRAM ***************************


     SUBROUTINE ALHSF(X,RI,PSII,SWAVGI,DFW,TALHS)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE
C THEORETICAL EQUATION. TRAPEZOIDAL RULE IS USED TO EVALUATE THE
C INTEGRATIONS NUMERICALLY.
C
     COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
     $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
     COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
     $          SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
     COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
     $          SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
     $          AINFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
     IF(ABS(SWII-(1.0-SOR)).LT.0.0001) THEN
```

```
C ----THERE IS AN ANALYTICAL SOLUTION AVAILABLE WHEN THE LAYER IS
C     WATERED-OUT.----
      TALHS=(1.0-SOR)/AKRWO*((FR-1.0)*0.5*X**2.0+(PSII+1.0)*
     $      X*XDPM)
      ELSE
      IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
C ----THERE IS NO OIL BANK WHEN FR=1.0.----
       CALL FWKRW(AMO,SWII,FKRI2)
       FKRI1=FKRI2
       IF(SWII.LT.SWIINF) THEN
        SWIPFC=SWIF
       ELSE
        IF(SWII.GT.SWIPF) THEN
         SWIPFC=SWII
        ELSE
         SWIPFC=SWII
        ENDIF
       ENDIF
      ELSE
C ----CALCULATE FW/KRW FOR BOTH OIL BANK AND INITIAL CONDITION
C     WHEN FR>1.0.----
       CALL FWKRW(AMO,SWIK,FKRI1)
       CALL FWKRW(AMO,SWII,FKRI2)
       SWIPFC=SWIPF
      ENDIF
C----USE TRAPEZOIDAL RULE TO EVALUATE THE INTEGRATIONS
C    NUMERICALLY.----
      H=X/NO
      SUM=0.0
      DO 200 I=1,NO-1
      T=I*H
      TD=T/DFW
      CALL TRAPEZ(0.0,T,SWIPFC,NI,AMOP,TD,AL1)
      IF(RI.LT.0.0001) THEN
       RIT=0.0
      ELSE
       RIT=RI*T
      ENDIF
      ALHS=(AL1*FR+FKRI1*(RIT-T)+FKRI2*(XDPM
     $      -RIT+PSII*XDPM))*SWAVGI
      SUM=SUM+ALHS
 200  CONTINUE
      TD=X/DFW
      CALL TRAPEZ(0.0,X,SWIPFC,NI,AMOP,TD,AL1)
      IF(RI.LT.0.0001) THEN
       RIX=0.0
      ELSE
       RIX=RI*X
      ENDIF
      ALHSB=(AL1*FR+FKRI1*(RIX-X)+FKRI2*(XDPM
     $      -RIX+PSII*XDPM))*SWAVGI
      ALHSA=(FKRI2*(XDPM
```

```
$      +PSII*XDPM))*SWAVGI
 TALHS=(H/2.0)*(ALHSB+2.0*SUM+ALHSA)
ENDIF
RETURN
END

SUBROUTINE CALCF(PSI1,PSII)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES DIMENSIONLESS CONSTANTS AND PSI
C VALUES.
C
COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
$        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
$          SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
$          SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
$          ANIFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
IF( IFLAG.EQ.2 ) THEN
C ----CALCULATE DIMENSIONLESS CONSTANTS FOR FIELD CASES
C   (5-SPOT)----
 D=RE*3.14159**0.5
 XD1=XP1/D
 XDPM=XPM/D
ELSE
C ----SET PSI VALUES TO ZERO AND CALCULATE THE DIMENSIONLESS
C   CONSTANTS FOR COREFLOOD CASES.----
 XDPM=XPM/XLT
 PSI1=0.0
 PSII=0.0
 RETURN
ENDIF
C ----CALCULATE PSI VALUES FOR FIELD CASES (5-SPOT).----
S1=(SW1I-SWR)/(1.0-SWR-SOR)
SI=(SWII-SWR)/(1.0-SWR-SOR)
AKRW1=AKRWO*S1**ANW
AKRWI=AKRWO*SI**ANW
AKRO1=AKROO*(1.0-S1)**ANO
AKROI=AKROO*(1.0-SI)**ANO
IF( AKRO1 .LT. 0.00001) THEN
 AM1=1.0
ELSE
 AM1=AKRWO*AMUO/(AKRO1*AMUW)
ENDIF
IF( AKROI .LT. 0.00001) THEN
 AMI=1.0
ELSE
 AMI=AKRWO*AMUO/(AKROI*AMUW)
ENDIF
RO=XF
RPM=XF+XPM
PSI1=(ALOG(RE/RPM)+1.0/AM1*ALOG(RE/RO))/ALOG(RPM/RO)
```

```
      PSII=(ALOG(RE/RPM)+1.0/AMI*ALOG(RE/RO))/ALOG(RPM/RO)
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE CALCI(RI,RRI,SWAVGI,DFWI)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE CONSTANTS NECESSARY FOR
C EVALUATING THE LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION
C (LAYER I).
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHII,PHII,AKI,AKI,XDI,
     $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XPI,XPM,ANO,ANW
      COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SWIPF,SWIPF,SWIF,
     $          SWIF,SWIK,SWIK,SWII,SWII,SWIINF,SWIINF,SWCT
      COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHKII,SHKI2,SHKIII,SHKIII2,SHK21,
     $          SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINFI,AINFI2,AINFII,
     $          AINFII2,SWCTI,SWCT2,IFLAG
      FR=AMUP/AMUW
      AMO=AKRWO*AMUO/(AMUW*AKROO)
      AMOP=AKRWO*AMUO/(AMUP*AKROO)
      IF(ABS(FR-1.0).GT.0.0001) THEN
       CALL SHOCKI(AMOP,SHKIII,SHKIII2,SWIPF)
       CALL SHOCK2(AMO,AMOP,SWIPF,SHKI21,SHKI22,SWIK)
       CALL SWLMT(AMO,AMOP,SWIPF,SWCTI,SWCT2,SWCT)
       IF(SWII.GT.SWCT) THEN
         PRINT *,'*****************************WARNING*****************************'
         PRINT *,'******                                                      ******'
         PRINT *,'****** THE INITIAL SATURATION OF LAYER I IS                 ******'
         PRINT *,'****** GREATER THAN THE CRITICAL SATURATION,                ******'
         PRINT *,'****** AN APPROXIMATE ESTIMATE OF THE DEGREE                ******'
         PRINT *,'****** OF PENETRATION IS ATTEMPTED BY                       ******'
         PRINT *,'****** RESETTING SWII TO (1-SOR).                           ******'
         PRINT *,'******                                                      ******'
         PRINT *,'***********************WARNING***********************************'
       SWII=1.0-SOR
       ENDIF
      ENDIF
      IF(ABS(SWII-(1.0-SOR)).LT.0.0001) THEN
       RRI=1.0
       RI=1.0
      ELSE
       IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
C ----CALCULATE THE FRONTAL SATURATIONS, SWAVG AND THE VELOCITY
C     RATIO OF OIL BANK AND GELANT FRONT WHEN FR=1.0.----
        RI=0.0
        CALL INF(AMO,AINFII,AINFI2,SWIINF)
        IF( SWII .LT. SWIINF ) THEN
         CALL SHOCK(AMO,SWII,SHKI21,SHKI22,SWIF)
         CALL FW(AMO,SWIF,FWIF)
         CALL DFDS(AMO,SWIF,DFWI)
         CALL SHOCKI(AMOP,SHKIII,SHKIII2,SWIPF)
         CALL FW(AMO,SWII,FWII)
```

```
      CALL FW(AMOP,SWIPF,FWPI)
      RRI=(FWIF-FWII)*SWIPF/(FWPI*(SWIF-SWII))
      SWAVGI=(SWIF+(1.0-FWIF)/DFWI)-SWR
     ELSE
      CALL FW(AMO,SWII,FWII)
      CALL DFDS(AMO,SWII,DFWI)
      CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHKI11,SHKI12,SWIPF)
      CALL FW(AMOP,SWIPF,FWPI)
      RRI=DFWI*SWIPF/FWPI
      IF(SWII.GT.SWIPF) THEN
       RRI=1.0
       SWAVGI=SWII+(1.0-FWII)/DFWI
      ELSE
       SWAVGI=(SWII+(1.0-FWII)/DFWI)-SWR
      ENDIF
     ENDIF
    ELSE
C ----CALCULATE THE FRONTAL SATURATIONS, SWAVG AND THE VELOCITY
C    RATIO OF OIL BANK AND GELANT FRONT WHEN FR>1.0.----
      RRI=1.0
      CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHKI11,SHKI12,SWIPF)
      CALL SHOCK2(AMO,AMOP,SWIPF,SHKI21,SHKI22,SWIK)
      CALL FW(AMO,SWIK,FWIK)
      CALL FW(AMO,SWII,FWII)
      CALL FW(AMOP,SWIPF,FWPI)
      RI=(FWIK-FWII)*SWIPF/(FWPI*(SWIK-SWII))
      CALL DFDS(AMOP,SWIPF,DFWI)
      SWAVGI=SWIPF+(1.0-FWPI)/DFWI
     ENDIF
    ENDIF
    RETURN
    END

    SUBROUTINE CALC1(R1,RI,RR1,SWAVG1,DFW1)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE CONSTANTS NECESSARY FOR
C EVALUATING THE RIGHT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL EQUATION
C (LAYER 1).
C
    COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
   $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
    COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
   $          SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
    COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
   $           SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
   $           AINFI2, SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
    IF(ABS(FR-1.0).GT.0.0001) THEN
     CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHK11,SHK12,SW1PF)
     CALL SHOCK2(AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SHK21,SHK22,SW1K)
     CALL SWLMT(AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWCT1,SWCT2,SWCT)
     IF(SW1I.GT.SWCT) THEN
       PRINT *,'*****************************WARNING*****************************'
```

```
        PRINT *,'******                                                  *******'
        PRINT *,'****** THE INITIAL SATURATION OF LAYER 1 IS             *******'
        PRINT *,'****** GREATER THAN THE CRITICAL SATURATION,            *******'
        PRINT *,'****** AN APPROXIMATE ESTIMATE OF THE DEGREE            *******'
        PRINT *,'****** OF PENETRATION IS ATTEMPTED BY                   *******'
        PRINT *,'****** RESETTING SWII TO (1-SOR).                       *******'
        PRINT *,'******                                                  *******'
        PRINT *,'**********************WARNING*********************************'
      SW1I=1.0-SOR
      ENDIF
     ENDIF
     IF(ABS(SW1I-(1.0-SOR)).LT.0.0001) THEN
      RR1=1.0
      R1=1.0
      IF( IFLAG.EQ.1 ) THEN
C ----CALCULATE THE FRONTAL SATURATIONS AND THE VELOCITY RATIO OF
C    OIL BANK AND GELANT FRONT WHEN THE LAYER IS WATERED-OUT
C    (COREFLOOD CASES).----
       IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
        XD1=1.0
        RETURN
       ENDIF
       XD1=1.0/RI
      ENDIF
     ELSE
      IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
C ----CALCULATE THE FRONTAL SATURATIONS, SWAVG AND THE VELOCITY
C    RATIO OF OIL BANK AND GELANT FRONT WHEN FR=1.0.----
      R1=0.0
      IF( IFLAG.EQ.1 ) THEN
C ----SET XD1=1.0 FOR COREFLOOD CASES WHEN FR=1.0.----
       XD1=1.0
      ENDIF
      CALL INF(AMO,AINF1,AINF2,SW1INF)
      IF( SW1I .LT. SW1INF ) THEN
       CALL SHOCK(AMO,SW1I,SHK21,SHK22,SW1F)
       CALL FW(AMO,SW1F,FW1F)
       CALL DFDS(AMO,SW1F,DFW1)
       CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHK11,SHK12,SW1PF)
       CALL FW(AMO,SW1I,FW1I)
       CALL FW(AMOP,SW1PF,FWP1)
       RR1=(FW1F-FW1I)*SW1PF/(FWP1*(SW1F-SW1I))
       SWAVG1=(SW1F+(1.0-FW1F)/DFW1)-SWR
      ELSE
       CALL FW(AMO,SW1I,FW1I)
       CALL DFDS(AMO,SW1I,DFW1)
       CALL FWKRW(AMO,SW1I,FKR1)
       CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHK11,SHK12,SW1PF)
       CALL FW(AMOP,SW1PF,FWP1)
       RR1=DFW1*SW1PF/FWP1
       IF(SW1I.GT.SW1PF) THEN
        RR1=1.0
```

```
      SWAVG1=SW1I+(1.0-FW1I)/DFW1
     ELSE
      SWAVG1=(SW1I+(1.0-FW1I)/DFW1)-SWR
     ENDIF
    ENDIF
   ELSE
C ----CALCULATE THE FRONTAL SATURATIONS, SWAVG AND THE VELOCITY
C    RATIO OF OI , BANK AND GELANT FRONT WHEN FR>1.0.----
    RR1=1.0
    CALL SHOCK1(AMOP,SHK11,SHK12,SW1PF)
    CALL SHOCK2(AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SHK21,SHK22,SW1K)
    CALL FW(AMO,SW1K,FW1K)
    CALL FW(AMO,SW1I,FW1I)
    CALL FW(AMOP,SW1PF,FWP1)
    R1=(FW1K-FW1I)*SW1PF/(FWP1*(SW1K-SW1I))
     IF( IFLAG.EQ.1 ) THEN
      XD1=1.0/R1
     ENDIF
    CALL DFDS(AMOP,SW1PF,DFW1)
    SWAVG1=SW1PF+(1.0-FWP1)/DFW1
   ENDIF
  ENDIF
  RETURN
  END

  SUBROUTINE DFDS(XMO,XSW,DFW)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE VALUE OF FIRST DERIVATIVE OF A
C WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW FUNCTION.
C
  COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
 $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
  S=(XSW-SWR)/(1.0-SWR-SOR)
  DFW=(ANW*XMO*S**(ANW-1)*(1.0-S)**ANO+ANO*XMO*S**ANW*
 $   (1.0-S)**(ANO-1))/((XMO*S**ANW+(1.0-S)**ANO)**2.0*
 $   (1.0-SWR-SOR))
  RETURN
  END

  SUBROUTINE D2FDS2(XMO,XSW,DDFW)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE VALUE OF SECOND DERIVATIVE OF A
C WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW FUNCTION.
C
  COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
 $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
  S=(XSW-SWR)/(1.0-SWR-SOR)
  DDFW=((XMO*S**ANW+(1.0-S)**ANO)*(ANW*(ANW-1)*XMO*
 $    S**(ANW-2)*(1.0-S)**ANO-ANO*(ANO-1)*XMO*S**ANW*
 $    (1.0-S)**(ANO-2))-2*(ANW*XMO*S**(ANW-1)*(1.0-S)**ANO+
 $    ANO*XMO*S**ANW*(1.0-S)**(ANO-1))*(ANW*XMO*S**(ANW-1)
 $    -ANO*(1.0-S)**(ANO-1)))/((XMO*S**ANW+(1.0-S)**ANO)
```

```
     $     **3.0*(1.0-SWR-SOR)**2.0)
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE FW(XMO,XSW,F)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
     $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
      S=(XSW-SWR)/(1.0-SWR-SOR)
      F=XMO*S**ANW/(XMO*S**ANW+(1.0-S)**ANO)
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE FWKRW(XMO,XSW,FKR)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE FUNCTION FW/AKRW.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
     $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
      S=(XSW-SWR)/(1.0-SWR-SOR)
      FKR=XMO/((XMO*S**ANW+(1.0-S)**ANO)*AKRWO)
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE INF(XMO,S1,S2,RT)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES SECANT METHOD TO CALCULATE THE WATER
C SATURATION AT THE INFLECTION POINT OF A WATER FRACTIONAL FLOW
C CURVE.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
     $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
      EPS=0.0000!
      ITER=1
      SOLD=S2
      S=S1
   10 CALL D2FDS2(XMO,S,FX)
      CALL D2FDS2(XMO,SOLD,FXOLD)
      SNEW=S-FX*(S-SOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF(  (ABS(S-SNEW).LT.EPS)
     $     .OR. (ITER.GT.30)  ) GO TO 20
      SOLD=S
      S=SNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
      PRINT *,'  SWINF DOES NOT CONVERGE.  '
      STOP
      ELSE
      RT=SNEW
```

```
      ENDIF
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE INPUT
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE READS THE NECESSARY INFORMATION FOR SUBSEQUENT
C CALCULATIONS.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
     $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
      COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
     $          SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
      COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
     $          SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
     $          AINFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
      PRINT *, 'INPUT SOR,SWR'
      READ(*,*) SOR,SWR
      PRINT *, 'INPUT SW1I,SWII'
      READ(*,*) SW1I,SWII
      PRINT *, 'INPUT KRWO,KROO'
      READ(*,*) AKRWO,AKROO
      PRINT *, 'INPUT ANW,ANO'
      READ(*,*) ANW,ANO
      PRINT *, 'INPUT PHI1,PHII'
      READ(*,*) PHI1,PHII
      PRINT *, 'INPUT K1,KI'
      READ(*,*) AK1,AKI
      PRINT *, 'INPUT MUW,MUO,MUP'
      READ(*,*) AMUW,AMUO,AMUP
      PRINT *, 'INPUT IFLAG; IFLAG=1--COREFLOOD, IFLAG=2--5-SPOT'
      READ(*,*) IFLAG
      IF(IFLAG.EQ.2) THEN
       PRINT *, 'INPUT XF,XP1,XPM,RE'
       READ(*,*) XF,XP1,XPM,RE
      ELSE
       PRINT *, 'INPUT XLT'
       READ(*,*) XLT
C ----LET XPM=XLT FOR COREFLOOD CASES.----
       XPM=XLT
      ENDIF
      PRINT *, 'INPUT SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12'
      READ(*,*) SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12
      PRINT *, 'INPUT SHK21,SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22'
      READ(*,*) SHK21,SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22
      PRINT *, 'INPUT AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,AINFI2'
      READ(*,*) AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,AINFI2
      PRINT *, 'INPUT SWCT1,SWCT2'
      READ(*,*) SWCT1,SWCT2
      PRINT *, 'INPUT NO. OF INTERVALS'
      READ(*,*) NI,NO
      RETURN
```

```
      END

      SUBROUTINE OUTPUT(ITER,ROOT)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE PRINTS RESULTS OF THE CALCULATIONS.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
     $       XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
      COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
     $          SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
      WRITE(*,100)
      WRITE(*,101) SOR,SWR
      WRITE(*,102) SW1I,SWII
      WRITE(*,103) AKRWO,AKROO
      WRITE(*,104) ANW,ANO
      WRITE(*,105) PHI1,PHII
      WRITE(*,106) AK1,AKI
      WRITE(*,107) AMUW,AMUO,AMUP
      WRITE(*,108)
      WRITE(*,109) SW1PF,SWIPF
      WRITE(*,110) SW1K,SWIK
      WRITE(*,111) SW1F,SWIF
      WRITE(*,112) SW1INF,SWIINF
      WRITE(*,113) SWCT
      WRITE(*,114) ITER
      WRITE(*,115) ROOT
  100 FORMAT(2X,'          ***** INPUT DATA *****'/)
  101 FORMAT(2X,'SOR   = ',F10.5,2X,'SWR   = ',F10.5)
  102 FORMAT(2X,'SW1I  = ',F10.5,2X,'SWII  = ',F10.5)
  103 FORMAT(2X,'KRWO  = ',F10.5,2X,'KROO  = ',F10.5)
  104 FORMAT(2X,'ANW   = ',F10.5,2X,'ANO   = ',F10.5)
  105 FORMAT(2X,'PHI1  = ',F10.5,2X,'PHII  = ',F10.5)
  106 FORMAT(2X,'K1    = ',F10.5,2X,'KI    = ',F10.5)
  107 FORMAT(2X,'MUW   = ',F10.5,2X,'MUO   = ',F10.5,2X,
     $     'MUP = ',F10.5)
  108 FORMAT(2X,'          **********************'//)
  109 FORMAT(2X,'SW1PF  = ',F10.5,2X,'SWIPF   = ',F10.5/)
  110 FORMAT(2X,'SW1K   = ',F10.5,2X,'SWIK    = ',F10.5/)
  111 FORMAT(2X,'SW1F   = ',F10.5,2X,'SWIF    = ',F10.5/)
  112 FORMAT(2X,'SW1INF = ',F10.5,2X,'SWIINF  = ',F10.5/)
  113 FORMAT(2X,'SWCT   = ',F10.5/)
  114 FORMAT(2X,'AFTER ',I3,' ITERATIONS'/)
  115 FORMAT(2X,'DP     = ',F10.5)
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE RECALC(PSI1,PSII,R1,RI,RR1,RRI,SWAVG1,SWAVGI,
     $              DFW1,DFWI)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE RECALCULATES THE DEGREE OF PENETRATION
C WHEN THE GELANT FRONT OR THE OIL BANK IN LAYER I PROPAGATES
C BEYOND THE OUTLET OF THE CORE (COREFLOOD CASES) OR RPM
```

```
C (FIELD CASES) BY REPOSITIONING THE GELANT FRONT OR THE OIL
C BANK IN LAYER I AT THE OUTLET OF THE CORE OR RPM AND SOLVING
C FOR THE POSITION OF THE GELANT FRONT IN LAYER 1.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
     $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
      COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
     $          SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
      COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
     $          SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
     $          AINFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
C ----REPOSITION THE GELANT FRONT OR THE OIL BANK IN LAYER I----
      IF(IFLAG.EQ.1) THEN
       IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
        XDI=1.0
       ELSE
        XDI=1.0/RI
       ENDIF
      ELSE
       IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
        XDI=XDPM
       ELSE
        XDI=XDPM/RI
       ENDIF
      ENDIF
C ----CALCULATE THE LEFT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL
C     EQUATION (LAYER I)----
      CALL ALHSF(XDI,RI,PSII,SWAVGI,DFWI,ALHS)
C ----USE SECANT METHOD TO SOLVE FOR THE DEGREE OF PENETRATION
C     OF GELANTS INTO LAYER 1----
      EPS=1.0E-07
      ITER=1
      X=0.0001
      XOLD=0.5
C ----EVALUATE THE RIGHT-HAND-SIDE OF THE THEORETICAL
C     EQUATION (LAYER 1)----
   10 XD1=X
      CALL RHSF(R1,PSI1,SWAVG1,DFW1,RHS)
      FX=ALHS-RHS
      XD1=XOLD
      CALL RHSF(R1,PSI1,SWAVG1,DFW1,RHSO)
      FXOLD=ALHS-RHSO
      XNEW=X-FX*(X-XOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF( (ABS(X-XNEW) .LT. EPS)
     $    .OR. (ITER.GT.30)    ) GO TO 20
      XOLD=X
      X=XNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
       PRINT *,'****************WARNING***************************'
       PRINT *,'   DP DOES NOT CONVERGE AFTER 30 ITERATIONS.'
```

```
      PRINT *,'****************WARNING***************************'
     ELSE
      ROOT=XNEW
     ENDIF
     DP=(XDI/RRI)/(ROOT/RR1)
C ----OUTPUT RESULTS OF THE CALCULATIONS----
     CALL OUTPUT(ITER,DP)
     RETURN
     END

     SUBROUTINE RHSF(R1,PSI1,SWAVG1,DFW,RHS)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE RIGHT-HAND-SIDE OF THE
C THEORETICAL EQUATION. TRAPEZOIDAL RULE IS USED TO EVALUATE THE
C INTEGRATIONS NUMERICALLY.
C
     COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
    $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
     COMMON/FLUD/ FR,AMUW,AMUO,AMUP,AMO,AMOP,SW1PF,SWIPF,SW1F,
    $           SWIF,SW1K,SWIK,SW1I,SWII,SW1INF,SWIINF,SWCT
     COMMON/CONST/ NI,NO,SHK11,SHK12,SHKI11,SHKI12,SHK21,
    $            SHK22,SHKI21,SHKI22,AINF1,AINF2,AINFI1,
    $            AINFI2,SWCT1,SWCT2,IFLAG
     IF(ABS(SW1I-(1.0-SOR)).LT.0.0001) THEN
C ----THERE IS AN ANALYTICAL SOLUTION AVAILABLE WHEN THE LAYER IS
C     WATERED-OUT.----
      RHSC=PHI1*AKI*(1.0-SOR)/(PHII*AK1*AKRWO)
      RHS=RHSC*((FR-1.0)*0.5*XD1**2.0+(PSI1+1.0)*
    $    XD1*XDPM)
     ELSE
      RHSC=PHI1*AKI*SWAVG1/(PHII*AK1)
      IF(ABS(FR-1.0).LT.0.0001) THEN
C ----THERE IS NO OIL BANK WHEN FR=1.0.----
       CALL FWKRW(AMO,SW1I,FKR12)
       FKR11=FKR12
       IF(SW1I.LT.SW1INF) THEN
        SW1PFC=SW1F
       ELSE
        IF(SW1I.GT.SW1PF) THEN
         SW1PFC=SW1I
        ELSE
         SW1PFC=SW1I
        ENDIF
       ENDIF
     ELSE
C ----CALCULATE FW/KRW FOR BOTH OIL BANK AND INITIAL CONDITION
C     WHEN FR>1.0.----
      CALL FWKRW(AMO,SW1K,FKR11)
      CALL FWKRW(AMO,SW1I,FKR12)
      SW1PFC=SW1PF
     ENDIF
C----USE TRAPEZOIDAL RULE TO EVALUATE THE INTEGRATIONS
```

```
C   NUMERICALLY.----
      H=XD1/NO
      SUM=0.0
      DO 100 I=1,NO-1
      T=I*H
      TD=T/DFW
      CALL TRAPEZ(0.0,T,SW1PFC,NI,AMOP,TD,AR1)
      IF(R1.LT.0.0001) THEN
       R1T=0.0
      ELSE
       R1T=R1*T
      ENDIF
      RHS=(AR1*FR+FKR11*(R1T-T)+FKR12*(XDPM
     $    -R1T+PSI1*XDPM))*RHSC
      SUM=SUM+RHS
  100 CONTINUE
      TD=XD1/DFW
      CALL TRAPEZ(0.0,XD1,SW1PFC,NI,AMOP,TD,AR1)
      IF(R1.LT.0.0001) THEN
       R1RD1=0.0
      ELSE
       R1RD1=R1*XD1
      ENDIF
      RHSB=(AR1*FR+FKR11*(R1RD1-XD1)+FKR12*(XDPM
     $    -R1RD1+PSI1*XDPM))*RHSC
      RHSA=(FKR12*(XDPM
     $    +PSI1*XDPM))*RHSC
      RHS=(H/2.0)*(RHSB+2.0*SUM+RHSA)
      ENDIF
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE SECANT(XMO,TD,X,S1,S2,RT)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES SECANT METHOD TO SOLVE FOR THE WATER
C SATURATION PROFILE.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
     $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
      EPS=0.0001
      ITER=1
      SOLD=S2
      S=S1
   10 CALL XDS(S,XMO,X,TD,FX)
      CALL XDS(SOLD,XMO,X,TD,FXOLD)
      SNEW=S-FX*(S-SOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF(  (ABS(S-SNEW).LT.EPS)
     $    .OR. (ITER.GT.100)  ) GO TO 20
      SOLD=S
      S=SNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
```

```
 20 IF(ITER.GT.100) THEN
    PRINT *,' SECANT METHOD DOES NOT CONVERGE.'
    STOP
   ELSE
    RT=SNEW*(1.0-SWR-SOR)+SWR
   ENDIF
   RETURN
   END

   SUBROUTINE SHOCK(XMO,SWI,S1,S2,XSWPF)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES SECANT METHOD TO CALCULATES THE FRONTAL
C SATURATION OF WATER WHEN FR=1.0.
C
   COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
  $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
   EPS=0.000001
   ITER=1
   SWOLD=S2
   SW=S1
   CALL FW(XMO,SWI,XFWI)
 10 CALL DFDS(XMO,SW,DFW)
   CALL FW(XMO,SW,XFW)
   FX=DFW*(SW-SWI)-(XFW-XFWI)
   CALL DFDS(XMO,SWOLD,DFW)
   CALL FW(XMO,SWOLD,XFW)
   FXOLD=DFW*(SWOLD-SWI)-(XFW-XFWI)
   SWNEW=SW-FX*(SW-SWOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
   IF( (ABS(SW-SWNEW).LT.EPS)
  $    .OR. (ITER.GT.30)  ) GO TO 20
   SWOLD=SW
   SW=SWNEW
   ITER=ITER+1
   GO TO 10
 20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
    PRINT *,' SHOCK DOES NOT CONVERGE.'
    STOP
   ELSE
    XSWPF=SWNEW
   ENDIF
   RETURN
   END

   SUBROUTINE SHOCK1(XMOP,S1,S2,XSWPF)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES SECANT METHOD TO CALCULATE THE FRONTAL
C SATURATIONS OF GELANTS.
C
   COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
  $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
   EPS=0.000001
   ITER=1
```

```
      SWOLD=S2
      SW=S1
   10 CALL DFDS(XMOP,SW,DFW)
      CALL FW(XMOP,SW,XFW)
      FX=DFW*SW-XFW
      CALL DFDS(XMOP,SWOLD,DFW)
      CALL FW(XMOP,SWOLD,XFW)
      FXOLD=DFW*SWOLD-XFW
      SWNEW=SW-FX*(SW-SWOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF(  (ABS(SW-SWNEW).LT.EPS)
     $     .OR. (ITER.GT.30)  ) GO TO 20
      SWOLD=SW
      SW=SWNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
       PRINT *,' SHOCK1 DOES NOT CONVERGE'
       STOP
      ELSE
       XSWPF=SWNEW
      ENDIF
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE SHOCK2(XMO,XMOP,XSWPF,S1,S2,XSWK)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES SECANT METHOD TO CALCULATE THE FRONTAL
C SATURATIONS OF OIL BANKS.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
     $         XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
      CALL FW(XMOP,XSWPF,FWP)
      FWPS=FWP/XSWPF
      EPS=0.00001
      ITER=1
      SWOLD=S2
      SW=S1
   10 CALL FW(XMO,SW,XFW)
      FX=XFW/SW-FWPS
      CALL FW(XMO,SWOLD,XFW)
      FXOLD=XFW/SWOLD-FWPS
      SWNEW=SW-FX*(SW-SWOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF(  (ABS(SW-SWNEW).LT.EPS)
     $     .OR. (ITER.GT.30)  ) GO TO 20
      SWOLD=SW
      SW=SWNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
       PRINT *,' SHOCK2 DOES NOT CONVERGE.'
       STOP
      ELSE
```

```
      XSWK=SWNEW
     ENDIF
     RETURN
     END

     SUBROUTINE TRAPEZ(A,B,SWPF,N,XMO,TD,R)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES TRAPEZOIDAL RULE TO EVALUATE INTEGRATIONS
C NUMERICALLY.
C
     DOUBLE PRECISION SUM
     COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
    $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
     H=(B-A)/N
     SUM=0.0
     DO 10 I=1,N-1
     X=A+I*H
C
C ----SOLVE FOR SATURATION PROFILE USING SECANT METHOD----
     CALL SECANT(XMO,TD,X,SWPF,1.0,SW)
C
C ----CALCULATE FW/AKRW AT THE SW OBTAINED FROM PREVIOUS STEP----
     CALL FWKRW(XMO,SW,F)
C
     SUM=SUM+F
   10 CONTINUE
C
C ----SOLVE FOR SATURATION PROFILE USING SECANT METHOD----
     CALL SECANT(XMO,TD,A,SWPF,1.0,SW)
C
C ----CALCULATE FW/AKRW AT THE SW OBTAINED FROM PREVIOUS STEP----
     CALL FWKRW(XMO,SW,FA)
C
C ----SOLVE FOR SATURATION PROFILE USING SECANT METHOD----
     CALL SECANT(XMO,TD,B,SWPF,1.0,SW)
C
C ----CALCULATE FW/AKRW AT THE SW OBTAINED FROM PREVIOUS STEP----
     CALL FWKRW(XMO,SW,FB)
     R=(H/2)*(FA+2.0*SUM+FB)
     RETURN
     END

     SUBROUTINE SWLMT(XMO,XMOP,XSWPF,S1,S2,XSWCT)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE USES SECANT METHOD TO EVALUATE THE CRITICAL
C WATER SATURATION.
C
     COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
    $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
     EPS=0.00001
     ITER=1
     SWOLD=S2
```

```
      SW=S1
      CALL FW(XMOP,XSWPF,XFWP)
   10 CALL FW(XMO,SW,XFW)
      FX=XFW/SW-XFWP/XSWPF
      CALL FW(XMO,SWOLD,XFW)
      FXOLD=XFW/SWOLD-XFWP/XSWPF
      SWNEW=SW-FX*(SW-SWOLD)/(FX-FXOLD)
      IF( (ABS(SW-SWNEW).LT.EPS)
     $    .OR. (ITER.GT.30)  ) GO TO 20
      SWOLD=SW
      SW=SWNEW
      ITER=ITER+1
      GO TO 10
   20 IF(ITER.GT.30) THEN
       PRINT *,' SWCT DOES NOT CONVERGE.'
       STOP
      ELSE
       XSWCT=SWNEW
      ENDIF
      RETURN
      END

      SUBROUTINE XDS(S,XMO,X,TD,FS)
C
C THIS SUBROUTINE CALCULATES THE FUNCTION FX=XD-DFW/DSW*TD FOR
C SUBROUTINE SECANT.
C
      COMMON/RK/ SOR,SWR,AKRWO,AKROO,PHI1,PHII,AK1,AKI,XD1,
     $        XDPM,RE,XF,XLT,XP1,XPM,ANO,ANW
      FS=(ANW*XMO*S**(ANW-1)*(1-S)**ANO+ANO*XMO*S**ANW*
     $   (1.0-S)**(ANO-1))*TD-X*(XMO*S**ANW+(1.0-S)**ANO)**2.0*
     $   (1.0-SWR-SOR)
      RETURN
      END
```

APPENDIX H

FORMULATIONS FOR NUMERICAL MODEL

In this appendix, the two-phase flow equation used in the simulator is briefly described. The finite difference formulations of the equation, both in linear and radial cases, are derived.

Two-Phase Flow Equation

In the one-dimension linear case after combining the continuity and the Darcy equations, the flow equations for both phases are

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\rho_w \lambda_w\left(\frac{\partial P_w}{\partial x}\right)\right] + q_w = \frac{\partial(\rho_w S_w \phi)}{\partial t} \tag{H-1}$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\rho_n \lambda_n\left(\frac{\partial P_n}{\partial x}\right)\right] + q_n = \frac{\partial(\rho_n S_n \phi)}{\partial t} \tag{H-2}$$

(assuming the gravity forces acting on the system are negligible). The variables, x and t, are space and time coordinates, respectively. The variable, ρ, is the density of the fluid, P is the pressure, S is the saturation and ϕ is the porosity of the rock, and q is the mass flow rate per unit volume. The subscripts, w and n, denote the wetting and nonwetting phases, respectively. The mobility, λ, is defined as

$$\lambda(S_w) = \frac{k k_r}{\mu} \tag{H-3}$$

which is the ratio of effective permeability to the viscosity of fluid.

Adding Eqs. H-1 and H-2 and making some rearrangements, one obtains

$$\frac{1}{\rho_w}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\rho_w \lambda_w\left(\frac{\partial P_w}{\partial x}\right)\right] + \frac{1}{\rho_n}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\rho_n \lambda_n\left(\frac{\partial P_n}{\partial x}\right)\right] = -Q_t + \frac{1}{\rho_w}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\rho_w \lambda_w\left(\frac{\partial P_c}{\partial x}\right)\right] + \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial t} - \phi S_w C_w \frac{\partial P_c}{\partial t} + (\phi S_w C_w + \phi S_n C_n)\frac{\partial P_n}{\partial t} \tag{H-4}$$

where Q_t is total volumetric flow rate, C is compressibility of the fluid, and P_c is capillary pressure:

$$Q_t = \frac{q_n}{\rho_n} + \frac{q_w}{\rho_w} \tag{H-5}$$

$$C = \frac{d\rho}{dP} \cdot \frac{1}{\rho} \tag{H-6}$$

$$P_c = P_w - P_n \tag{H-7}$$

By assuming 1) P_c is constant; 2) ϕ is constant; and 3) fluids are incompressible, Eq. H-4 becomes

$$\frac{1}{\rho_w}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\rho_w\lambda_w(\frac{\partial P_n}{\partial x})\right]+\frac{1}{\rho_n}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\rho_n\lambda_n(\frac{\partial P_n}{\partial x})\right]=-Q_t \tag{H-8}$$

or in general form:

$$\frac{1}{\rho_w}\nabla\cdot\left[\rho_w\lambda_w\nabla P_n\right]+\frac{1}{\rho_n}\nabla\cdot\left[\rho_n\lambda_n\nabla P_n\right]=-Q_t \tag{H-9}$$

which is the basic equation for the finite difference formulations.

Numerical Approximation

In both linear and radial cases, layers are discretized to m finite sections. For a regular node, i, as shown in Fig. H-1, Eq. H-9 can be approximated as:

a. Linear Case:

$$\begin{aligned}&\left\{\frac{1}{\rho_w}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\rho_w\lambda_w(\frac{\partial P_n}{\partial x})\right]\right\}_i\\&=\left(\frac{1}{\rho_w}\right)_i\left[(\rho_w\lambda_w)_{i+1/2}\frac{P_{n,i+1}-P_{n,i}}{(\Delta x)^2}-(\rho_w\lambda_w)_{i-1/2}\frac{P_{n,i}-P_{n,i-1}}{(\Delta x)^2}\right]\end{aligned} \tag{H-10}$$

$$\begin{aligned}&\left\{\frac{1}{\rho_n}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\rho_n\lambda_n(\frac{\partial P_n}{\partial x})\right]\right\}_i\\&=\left(\frac{1}{\rho_n}\right)_i\left[(\rho_n\lambda_n)_{i+1/2}\frac{P_{n,i+1}-P_{n,i}}{(\Delta x)^2}-(\rho_n\lambda_n)_{i-1/2}\frac{P_{n,i}-P_{n,i-1}}{(\Delta x)^2}\right]\end{aligned} \tag{H-11}$$

b. Radial Case:

$$\begin{aligned}&\left\{\frac{1}{\rho_w}\left(\frac{1}{r}\right)\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left[\rho_w\lambda_w(r\frac{\partial P_w}{\partial r})\right]\right\}_i=\left\{\frac{4}{\rho_w}\frac{\partial}{\partial r^*}\left[r^*\rho_w\lambda_w(\frac{\partial P_w}{\partial r^*})\right]\right\}_i\\&=\left(\frac{4}{\rho_w}\right)\left(\frac{1}{r^*_{i+1/2}-r^*_{i-1/2}}\right)\left[(\rho_w\lambda_w)_{i+1/2}r^*_{i+1/2}\frac{P_{n,i+1}-P_{n,i}}{r^*_{i+1}-r^*_i}\right.\\&\qquad\left.-(\rho_w\lambda_w)_{i-1/2}r^*_{i-1/2}\frac{P_{n,i}-P_{n,i-1}}{r^*_i-r^*_{i-1}}\right]\end{aligned} \tag{H-12}$$

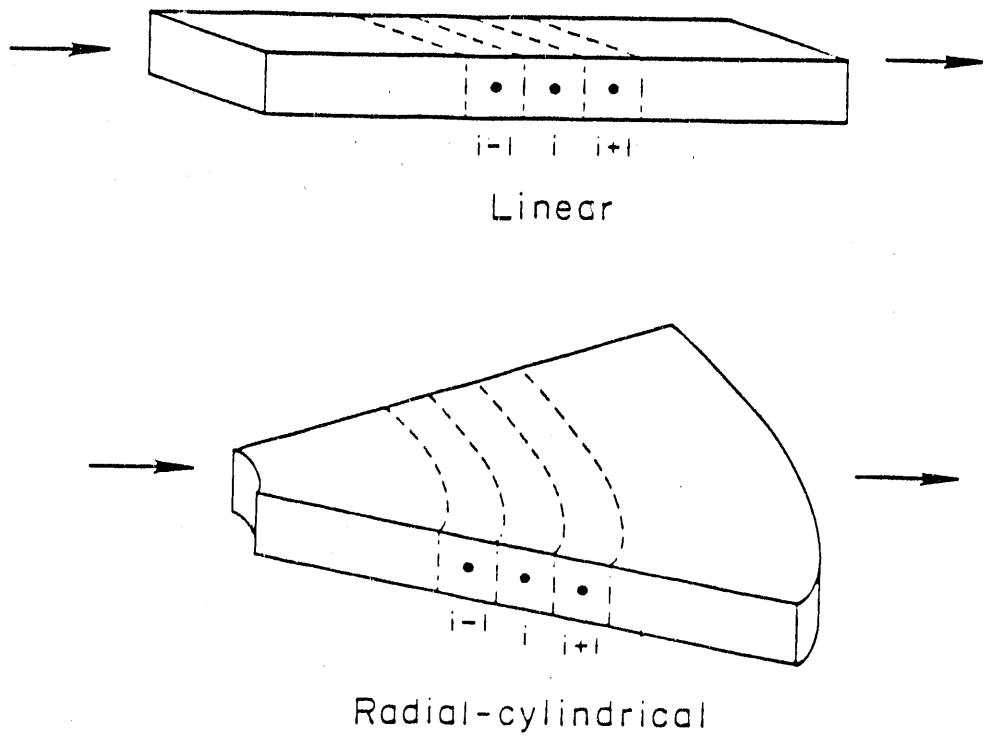


Fig. H-1. Grid-Point Distribution in Space.

$$\left\{\frac{1}{\rho_n}\left(\frac{1}{r}\right)\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left[\rho_n\lambda_n(r\frac{\partial P_n}{\partial r})\right]\right\}_i = \left\{\frac{4}{\rho_n}\frac{\partial}{\partial r^*}\left[r^*\rho_n\lambda_n(\frac{\partial P_n}{\partial r^*})\right]\right\}_i$$
$$= \left(\frac{4}{\rho_n}\right)\left(\frac{1}{r^*_{i+1/2} - r^*_{i-1/2}}\right)\left[(\rho_n\lambda_n)_{i+1/2}r^*_{i+1/2}\frac{P_{n,i+1} - P_{n,i}}{r^*_{i+1} - r^*_i}\right.$$
$$\left. - (\rho_n\lambda_n)_{i-1/2}r^*_{i-1/2}\frac{P_{n,i} - P_{n,i-1}}{r^*_i - r^*_{i-1}}\right] \tag{H-13}$$

where

$$r^*_{i+1/2} = \frac{r^2_{i+1} - r^2_i}{ln(r^2_{i+1}/r^2_i)}; \qquad r^*_{i-1/2} = \frac{r^2_i - r^2_{i-1}}{ln(r^2_i/r^2_{i-1})} \tag{H-14}$$

$$r^*_i = r^2_i \tag{H-15}$$

To avoid instabilities, the upstream weighting method is used. The midpoint mobilities, $\lambda_{i+½}$ and $\lambda_{i-½}$, are replaced by λ_{i+1} and λ_i, the mobilities at their upstream nodes. Since an iterative solving method is used, the two-point upstream weighting on the mobilities is not necessary. The reason for using r^2 instead of r in the radial case is to ensure the material balance. For example, the volume of a block cannot be discretized directly from the partial differential form:

$$(2\pi r dr \cdot h)_i = 2\pi r_i(r_{i+1/2} - r_{i-1/2}) \cdot h \neq \pi(r^2_{i+1/2} - r^2_{i-1/2}) \cdot h = \pi \cdot dr^2 \tag{H-16}$$

Throughout this study, the constant pressure boundary was applied. One can simply replace the boundary node (points 1 and n) equations by $P_1 = P_a$ and $P_n = P_b$ where the values of P_a and P_b are given.

The final matrix form is

$$a^k_{ij}P^k_{n,i} = b_i \tag{H-17}$$

where

$$a^k_{ij,i\neq j} = Factor_{i-1/2} \cdot \frac{\lambda^k_{w,j} + \lambda^k_{n,j}}{(\Delta x)^2} \quad if\ j = i-1 \tag{H-18}$$

$$a^k_{ij,i\neq j} = Factor_{i+1/2} \cdot \frac{\lambda^k_{w,j-1} + \lambda^k_{n,j-1}}{(\Delta x)^2} \quad if\ j = i+1 \tag{H-19}$$

$$a^k_{ii} = -a^k_{i,i+1} - a^k_{i,i-1} \tag{H-20}$$

where

$$For\ Radial\ Case: \quad Factor_{i+1/2} = 2\pi \frac{r_{i+1} - r_i}{ln(r_{i+1}/r_i)} \cdot \Delta r \tag{H-21}$$

$$For\ Linear\ Case: \quad Factor_{i+1/2} = 1.0 \tag{H-22}$$

At boundary nodes, $a_{ii} = 1$, $a_{ij,i \neq j} = 0$, and $b_i = P_i$. The k is an iterative index. Since λ^k is a function of saturation, S_w, the mobility, λ, should have an average value between two given time levels, $\lambda = f(\overline{S}_{wi})$.

IMPES Procedure

As shown in Fig. H-2, from the known saturations at time level m, the final matrix can be constructed from which a set of intermediate values of $P^k_{n,i}$ is obtained. The saturations at time level m + 1 can be calculated by the discretized forms of Eqs. H-1 and H-2. If the saturation change in any node is greater than 0.1, the time step is reduced and the P_n calculation is repeated until the values of $P^k_{n,i}$ are converged. To reduce the calculation time, the program has an automatic adjustment for selecting an optimal time step.

It should be noted, in the radial case, that the equivalent and discretized equation of Eq. H-1 is

$$\begin{aligned} 4\pi r^*_{i+1/2}\lambda_{w,i}\frac{P_{w,i+1} - P_{w,i}}{r_{i+1} - r_i} - 4\pi r^*_{i-1/2}\lambda_{w,i-1}\frac{P_{w,i} - P_{w,i-1}}{r_i - r_{i-1}} \\ = \pi(r^*_{i+1/2} - r^*_{i-1/2})\left[\phi\frac{S^{m+1}_w - S^m_w}{\Delta t} - \frac{q_w}{\rho_w}\right] \end{aligned} \tag{H-23}$$

where the saturation at time level m + 1, S^{m+1}_w, can be calculated explicitly if the pressure profile is solved.

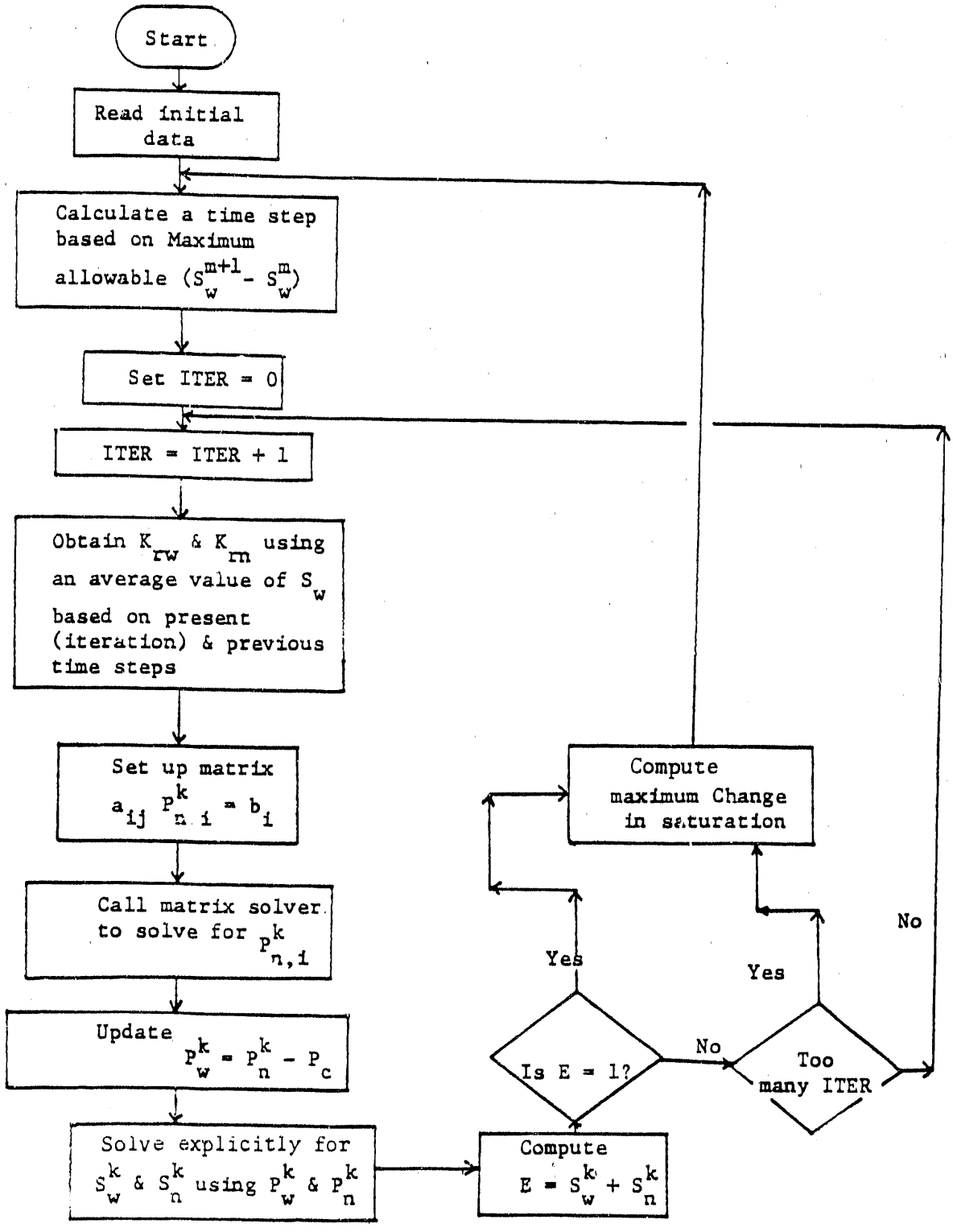


Fig. H-2. Flow Chart of IMPES Method.

END

DATE FILMED

06 / 05 / 91